Indiana State Department of Health

Tuberculosis Control and Prevention Manual 2003

Gregory A. Wilson, M.D.
State Health Commissioner

Joseph E. Kernan
Governor

Table of Contents

1. Introduction

Evidence of tuberculosis in humans dates back to at least 8,000 B.C., and has been documented in prehistoric skeletal remains in Germany. The disease has also been found in ancient Egyptian mummies. Tuberculosis has been known by such names as "phthisis" (from the Greek word meaning "decay"), "consumption" and "white plague." For centuries, TB was thought to be inherited, because it tended to occur mainly in families who lived in crowded dwellings. In 1865, a French surgeon named Jean-Antoine Villemin proved that TB was contagious, and in 1882 the German scientist Robert Koch discovered the causative organism, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

As social and economic conditions began to improve in Europe and North America in the late 19th century, tuberculosis rates began to decline in the late 1800s and early 1900s. In the 1930s public health experts began to speculate about the possibility of elimination of this horrible disease. The introduction of anti microbial drugs for TB treatment began in the late 1940s, and the resulting early successes let to a decrease in both TB-related deaths and the number of newly reported cases.

Tuberculosis has been overshadowed by newly emerging infectious diseases and the threat of bioterrorism, but it still remains an important public health problem in Indiana. Although the rate of new cases in the state has declined since the early 1950s, the number of cases has not declined during every single year. New problems in the prevention and control of the disease remain or are emerging. A large pool of latent TB infection remains among the elderly and persons with HIV infection, as well as immigrants, refugees, and visitors from countries where TB is common. It will become increasingly difficult to maintain proficiency among those responsible for TB control as frequency of the diseases continues to be less common and experienced practitioners leave the work force.

The elimination of tuberculosis in Indiana will require increased vigilance and continued cooperative efforts of the state and local health departments, private physicians, health facilities, laboratories, volunteer agencies, and social organizations.

2. Epidemiology of Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis continues to be one of the deadliest diseases in the world, with 8 million new cases and 3 million deaths reported worldwide each year. Approximately 95 percent of TB cases occur in developing countries where there are few resources to ensure adequate treatment and where HIV infection is common. It continues to be a leading cause of death from infectious diseases, and it is the leading cause of death among AIDS patients worldwide.

Once the scourge of mankind, TB was no longer considered a problem in the U.S. as new cases declined rapidly from 1958 to 1985. The decline was due to the development of effective anti-tuberculosis drugs, a national public health emphasis on TB control, and improvements in living conditions. It was thought at the time that TB could be eliminated as a major public health threat.

As TB rates continued to decline, funding for TB control and prevention activities was reduced. Funding was totally eliminated from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention budget in 1972. From 1985-1992, there was a 20 percent increase in the number of new cases due to complacency and the demise of TB control programs across the country in the 1970s and 1980s. The AIDS epidemic and dramatic increases in the number of cases in persons born in countries where TB is common further complicated the situation. This increase in new cases peaked in 1992, and has declined steadily since then. The decline has been attributed to a renewed emphasis on TB control efforts to promptly identify patients with TB, initiate appropriate and effective treatment regimens, and ensure completion of therapy.

Tuberculosis in Indiana tends to occur mostly in certain socioeconomic groups: 1) the elderly, many of whom were infected years ago when TB was common, 2) foreign-born persons from countries where TB is common, and 3) members of socially disadvantaged groups with limited access to health care and who live and socialize in environments where transmission typically occurs.

Indiana was spared the increase in new TB cases that affected the U.S. as a whole during the 1985-92 time period. Although the number of new cases continues to decline, outbreaks have occurred. TB continues to be reported in roughly half the counties, with a growing foreign-born population making up a larger percentage of the cases. New cases occur predominately in the state's most populous counties. Cases are reported each year that are resistant to isoniazid, although the incidence of multi-drug resistant disease has been very low.

3. Bacteriology, Transmission, and Pathogenesis

Bacteriology

Tuberculosis is a communicable disease caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, also known historically as the tubercle bacillus. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is one of five species that constitute the *M Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, or MTB complex. The others are *M. bovis*, *M. africanum*, *M. canettii*, and *M. microti*. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is by far the most common pathogen. *Mycobacterium bovis* can be transmitted from diseased cattle to humans by the respiratory route as well as by the consumption of unpasteurized milk. It can also be transmitted from person-to-person. Although tuberculosis has largely been eradicated among cattle herds in the U.S., it still occurs occasionally in developing countries, with occasional transmission to humans. *Mycobacterium africanum* is rarely found outside of northwestern Africa. *Mycobacterium canettii* is a new addition to the MTB complex that was first describe in 1997. *Mycobacterium microti* causes disease in voles, shrews, and wood mice. It has only recently been implicated in causing human disease.

Mycobacterium tuberculosis is an aerobic, non-motile, non-spore forming bacterium with a mycolic acid cell wall. It is a thin rod (i.e., bacillus), 2-5 microns long, which is very difficult to stain with the usual methods. It is classified as gram-positive, although it is more often visualized as transparent "ghost" forms. Once stained using the carbolfuchsin (Ziehl-Neelson or Kinyoun) or auramine-rhodamine (fluorescence) methods, it resists decolorization with acid-alcohol solutions, hence the name "acid-fast" bacillus, or "AFB." After counter-staining, they appear as straight or slightly curved small red or yellow rods on a uniform background, depending on the staining and microscopic examination method used.

Mycobacterium tuberculosis is a slow-growing microbe that replicates approximately every 24 hours (compared to every 20 minutes for *Escherichia coli*). It grows on solid media as rough-textured, buff-colored colonies that appear after 3-6 weeks. Growth in liquid media, such as BACTEC™ 460 or 960, typically occurs after 7-14 days. Identification of the culture is most commonly made using nucleic acid probes or high-pressure liquid chromatography (HPLC). Nucleic acid amplification tests, such as the AMPLIFIED™ Mycobacterium Tuberculosis Direct (MTD) and Amplicor®, can detect MTB complex RNA or DNA (depending on the test) directly from respiratory secretions in approximately 48 hours. Cultures are still necessary for performing drug susceptibility testing.

Transmission

Tuberculosis is an airborne disease that is transmitted when tubercle bacilli are expelled into the air when someone with TB disease in the lung or elsewhere in the airway coughs, sneezes, or performs some other forceful expiratory action such as singing or loud talking. The bacilli are attached to droplet nuclei; which are the dried residue of the expired respiratory secretions. Particles 1-5 microns in diameter can remain airborne for several

hours. The larger particles fall to the surface. Transmission may occur if another person inhales these droplet nuclei.

The probability of transmission occurring depends on four factors: (1) the infectiousness of the person with TB, (2) the environment in which the exposure occurred, (3) the duration of the exposure, and (4) the virulence of the organism. The presence of acid-fast bacilli (AFB) in the sputum or cavities in the lungs greatly increases the infectiousness of that person. The absence of AFB in the sputum of an untreated TB patient decreases, but does not eliminate infectiousness.

The most effective control measures for TB transmission are to isolate the patient immediately and to begin effective anti-TB chemotherapy. Infectiousness usually declines rapidly once treatment is started, as long as the patient adheres to the treatment regimen. However, persons with multi-drug resistant TB are often infectious for longer periods, and thereby have the potential to transmit TB to more people.

Those who are at the highest risk for becoming infected with *M. tuberculosis* are close contacts, i.e., those who have prolonged, intense contact to an infectious case in which they share the same air space. Close contacts are not limited to family members. They can be coworkers, friends, or members of social networks.

Pathogenesis

When droplet nuclei are inhaled, the larger ones become lodged in the upper respiratory tract, where infection is unlikely to develop. The smaller ones reach the alveoli of the lungs and are ingested by alveolar macrophages. The majority are destroyed or inhibited, but a few remain viable inside the macrophages until the cell dies and they are released. Bacilli can spread by way of the blood stream and lymphatic system to other areas of the body. Areas where disease is most likely to develop include the apices of the lung, the brain, bones, and kidneys.

An immune response develops as macrophages in the blood are attracted by extracellular bacilli. Most of the bacilli are killed, resulting in the formation of a granuloma. At this stage, the person has TB infection, which can be detected by a positive tuberculin skin test, or by the presence of interferon-γ in whole blood. It usually takes 2-10 weeks for this response to develop because *M. tuberculosis* does not produce toxins. In the majority of people with a cell-mediated immune system that is intact, this immune response kills most of the bacilli and halts the replication of the rest, preventing further spread. People with TB infection but without disease are considered to have latent TB infection (LTBI). They have no signs or symptoms of TB and cannot transmit the disease to others.

In some people, the TB bacilli can overcome the immune system and continue to multiply, resulting in the progression from TB infection to TB disease. The process can occur soon after infection without first going into a latent phase (primary tuberculosis), or at some point later in life (reactivation tuberculosis). Primary tuberculosis occurs most commonly in young children < 4 years of age, and persons with severe immunosuppres-

sive conditions, such as HIV infection. Unless they are treated for LTBI, approximately 5% of infected persons will develop active disease within the first two years of becoming infected; the remaining 5% will develop disease at some point later in life.

It is difficult to determine if and when someone with TB infection will develop active disease. However, the presence of certain medical conditions increases the risk of progression to active disease. Some studies have suggested that the risk for progression to active disease is anywhere from 3 times greater (as with diabetes mellitus) to more than 100 times greater (as with HIV infection).

Conditions that increase the risk of progression to active disease for a person with TB infection are:

- HIV infection
- Recent infection with *M. tuberculosis* (within the last 2 years)
- Substance abuse, especially injection drug use
- Chest x-ray findings suggestive of previous TB in a person who received no treatment or was inadequately treated for disease in the past
- Diabetes mellitus
- Silicosis
- Prolonged corticosteroid therapy (≥ 15 mg/day of prednisone or its equivalent for ≥ 1 month)
- Other immunosuppressive therapy
- Cancer of the head and neck
- Hematologic and reticuloendothelial diseases such as leukemia and Hodgkin's Disease
- End-stage renal disease
- Intestinal bypass or gastrectomy
- Chronic malabsorption syndromes
- 10% or more below ideal body weight

4. Diagnosing TB Infection

The tuberculin skin test is used to detect infection with *M. tuberculosis*. It is the "gold standard" that remains in use today, although newer technologies using whole blood have recently been approved by the Federal Food and Drug Administration. Tuberculin is a purified protein derivative (PPD) of *M. tuberculosis.* Ideally, everyone who is infected would have a "positive test" and everyone who is not infected would have a "negative test." Unfortunately, the test is not perfect. All mycobacteria are genetically very closely related to one another. Cross-reaction with atypical mycobacteria can occur for this reason.

The intradermal (Mantoux) technique is the standard method of administration. Multipuncture skin tests are rarely used today and are not recommended due to the inability to control the amount of tuberculin that is injected, their low specificity, and the difficulty in interpreting the results.

Administering the Tuberculin Skin Test

- Wipe the rubber stopper on the vial with a sterile alcohol wipe.
- Draw up 0.1 ml of PPD tuberculin containing 5 tuberculin units (5TU) into a tuberculin syringe with a 26 or 27-gauge needle.
- Select a site on the volar surface of the forearm, about 4 inches below the bend in the elbow (the site is not important; the forearm is used for convenience).
- Clean the site with alcohol.
- Insert the needle, bevel up, and inject the tuberculin intradermally into the superficial layer of the skin, producing a wheal 6-10 mm in diameter.
- If the tuberculin is injected subcutaneously (i.e., no wheal is formed), or if the incorrect dose is injected, repeat the test at a site at least 2 inches away.
- Instruct the patient not to scratch the site; do not place dressings over it.
- Do not re-cap, bend, or break the needle; do not remove the needle from the syringe.
- Follow your institutional procedures for infection control.
- Store tuberculin in the refrigerator (35^{o}-46^{o} F).
- Keep tuberculin vials away from light when not in use.
- Because oxidation and degradation may reduce potency, the manufacturers recommend that opened vials be discarded after one month of use.

- Because of the risk of contamination, the practice of pre-filling syringes is not recommended.

- Vaccination with live virus vaccines may cause the skin test to be falsely negative in a person who is actually infected. Administer the skin test either before or at the same time as the vaccines, or 4-6 weeks afterwards.

Reading the Tuberculin Skin Test

- Read the reaction at 48-72 hours, measuring **across** the forearm, not up and down.

- Measure only the area of **induration**, which is the raised, palpable, **hardened** area.

- Do not measure redness or edema. These findings alone are clinically insignificant and do not constitute a positive reaction. Large, soft edematous reactions without induration can occur and are often erroneously interpreted as a positive reaction. These reactions should not be confused with induration.

- Record the reading in millimeters (not centimeters), not simply as "positive" or "negative."

- If no induration is present, record the result as "0 mm."

Induration from the injected tuberculin is the result of a delayed hypersensitivity reaction. T-cells sensitized by prior infection are recruited to the skin test site where they release lymphokines. Induration is induced through local vasodilatation, edema, fibrin deposition, and recruitment of other inflammatory cells into the area. The reaction typically begins about 6 hours after the injection is placed. Maximum induration occurs at 48-72 hours, and then subsides over the course of a few days. Immediate reactions that disappear by 24 hours can sometimes occur, but are due to unusual sensitivity to the tuberculin or its constituents, and should not be confused with true delayed hypersensitivity reactions.

Reading the skin test should always be done by a trained health care worker, never by the patient or a parent. In rare instances, a positive reaction may take longer than 72 hours to develop. If that occurs, measure and record that reaction. If a patient fails to show up on time for a reading, a "positive" result can usually be read up to a week after the test is placed. Any patient who returns for a reading after 72 hours with a result that would be classified as negative should be re-tested. **Note**: if the reaction causes severe inflammation or necrosis, it may be advisable not to re-test. There should be medical documentation of this type of reaction. Symptom screening for these individuals is recommended if they are part of a regular TB screening program. Periodic chest x-rays are needed only if symptoms compatible with TB are present.

Interpretation of Skin Test Results

Tuberculin skin test reactions are classified as positive according to the following criteria:

≥ 5 mm of induration is positive for:

- Recent close contacts to an infectious TB case
- HIV-infected patients
- Radiographic findings consistent with old healed TB
- Patients who have had organ transplants or have other immunosuppressive conditions (e.g., receiving the equivalent of ≥ 15 mg/day of prednisone for ≥ 1 month)
- Patients with TB disease

≥ 10 mm of induration is positive for:

- Recent arrivals from countries with a high burden of TB (i.e., immigrants, refugees, foreign visitors), specifically Latin America, Africa, Asia, and Eastern Europe
- Injection drug users
- Residents and employees of high-risk congregate settings, i.e., health care facilities, correctional facilities, homeless shelters, etc., that have cases of infectious TB among their staff or residents during the current or previous year
- Children > 4 years of age
- Mycobacteriology laboratory personnel
- Persons with the following high-risk medical conditions:
  - Substance abuse, including alcohol
  - Diabetes mellitus
  - End-stage renal disease
  - Silicosis
  - Recent (within the last 2 years) increase of ≥ 10 mm of induration of a TB skin test
  - Head and neck cancer
  - Intestinal bypass surgery or gastrectomy
  - Low body weight (10% or more below ideal weight)
  - Hematologic and reticuloendothelial diseases, such as leukemia and Hodgkin's Disease
  - Chronic malabsorption syndromes

≥ 15 mm of induration is positive for persons with no risk factors

Factors that May Cause False-Positive and False-Negative Reactions to the Tuberculin Skin Test

False-Positive

- Infection with atypical mycobacteria
- BCG vaccination
- Improper interpretation of the reaction (confusing erythema or edema with induration)
- Inaccurate measurements

False-Negative

- Overwhelming TB disease
- Viral illnesses
- Live virus vaccines given before the TB skin test
- Anergy (e.g. due to HIV infection or immunosuppressive drug therapy)
- Very young age (< 6 months old), or advanced age
- Recent TB infection
- Failure to inject the correct dose
- Improperly stored or outdated skin test antigen

Two-Step Testing

Two-step skin testing is used to establish a reliable base line for persons who have not been tested within the past year **and** who are going to be re-tested periodically. In some people with latent TB infection, delayed-type hypersensitivity reactions can wane over time and with increasing age. When they are skin-tested many years later, they may have a negative reaction, but they become re-sensitized to the tuberculin. When the test is repeated in the future, a positive reaction results. These "boosted" reactions can be misinterpreted as a new infection when they are usually the result of an old infection.

The booster phenomenon can occur at any age, but is most commonly seen in people beyond the age range of 55-60. Boosted reactions are maximal when there is a 1-5 week interval between the first and second tests, and is slightly less frequent beyond 60 days, but can occur as long as 2 years after the first test. They are also seen in persons with atypical mycobacterial infections and BCG vaccination.

Two-step testing reduces the likelihood that a boosted reaction will be misinterpreted as a new infection. It should be used only for the initial skin test, and administered in the following manner:

- If the first test is positive, consider the person infected.

- If the first test is negative, give a second test 1-3 weeks later.

- If the second test is positive, consider the person infected. This would be considered an old "boosted" response rather than a new infection.

- If the second test is negative, consider the person not infected.

New Methods for Detecting TB Infection

QuantiFERON®-TB (Cellestis Ltd., Carnegie, Victoria, Australia) is a new test that has been recently approved by the FDA. It detects TB infection by measuring interferon-γ in heparinized whole blood. It is not in widespread use at this time. Presently, there are second-generation tests under development from Cellestis as well as other manufacturers.

Anergy Testing

In patients who are immunosuppressed, delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) reactions, such as those seen with tuberculin, may decrease or disappear. This condition is known as anergy, and may be caused by many factors, such as HIV infection, viral infections, severe febrile illnesses, live virus vaccines, or the use of corticosteroids or other immunosuppressive drugs. Approximately 15-25% of patients with TB disease have negative TB skin tests at the time of diagnosis.

Anergy is detected by using the Mantoux intradermal technique to administer at least two other DTH antigens, such as mumps and candida. A person who does not react to any of these antigens would be considered to be anergic. On the other hand, a tuberculin skin test can be considered to be truly negative if the patient reacts to the other antigens. The lack of standardization and outcome data limit the overall effectiveness of anergy testing. While such testing may have some usefulness as an epidemiological tool, its use in TB screening programs for HIV-positive persons is no longer recommended. DTH reactions can occur, even when reaction to PPD is lost. This means that (1) a negative response to a TB skin test placed at the same time as a positive anergy panel does not necessarily mean the absence of TB infection; (2) a lack of response to one or more DTH antigens does not always mean an inability to respond to PPD; and (3) a valid demonstration of anergy does not predict infection.

BCG Vaccine

BCG (the bacillus of Calmette and Guérin) is a vaccine for tuberculosis that was developed in France from isolates of *Mycobacterium bovis* and first used in 1921. It is widely used as the primary method of TB control in countries with a high burden of the disease. Approximately 100 million children worldwide receive BCG annually.

Generally, interpretation of the tuberculin skin test results in BCG recipients is the same as for those who have not received it. Reactivity following vaccination may not occur in some persons. The size of the TST reaction depends on a number of factors, including age at the time BCG is administered, nutritional and immunologic status, the number of doses received, and the quality of the strain of BCG that is used. A BCG immunization given a few months or more after birth causes a larger reaction than when given immediately after birth.

BCG has not been integrated into the overall TB prevention strategy in the U.S. because its effectiveness in preventing infectious forms of TB is uncertain. It's efficacy in protecting children from developing disseminated, bone and joint, and meningeal forms of TB is variable. It has not been shown to prevent the development of either pulmonary TB disease or TB infection. BCG usually, but not always, causes some degree of a positive reaction to the tuberculin skin test, thereby making it virtually impossible to tell if the induration is due to TB infection or BCG. Skin test positivity due to BCG wanes over time.

Since BCG is used in countries with high burdens of tuberculosis, a tuberculin skin test that is ≥ 10 mm of induration for a person with a history of BCG should be considered indicative of TB infection, and treatment should be provided. Since the majority of foreign-born patients with TB disease also have a history of BCG vaccination, all foreign-born persons should receive a tuberculin skin test as part of the TB screening process, regardless of whether or not they have had BCG. Children with a positive TST should receive a radiographic evaluation regardless of BCG status. In certain circumstances regarding children, such as recent immunization within the past year, multiple BCG immunizations, or immigration from a country with a low burden of TB, treatment for latent TB infection may not be indicated.

5. Diagnosis and Treatment of TB Disease

Common Systemic Symptoms:

- Fever (found in up to 80% of all patients)
- Weight loss
- Fatigue
- Loss of appetite

Site-specific Symptoms:

Pulmonary

- Cough, initially sporadic and non-productive, but becomes persistent and productive
- Shortness of breath
- Hemoptysis (minimal to extensive; usually a sign of advanced disease)
- Chest pain (usually due to pleuritic involvement)
- Chest radiograph shows predominantly upper lobe involvement; cavitation is common in adults
- Radiographic features associated with TB disease in HIV-infected patients include diffuse infiltrates, normal-appearing parenchyma, and lymphadenopathy

Pleural

- Pleuritic chest pain
- Shortness of breath
- Effusions are usually unilateral
- Pleural fluid is usually exudative with lymphocytosis
- AFB smears of pleural fluid are frequently negative; 50% of cultures are positive
- Pleural biopsy is more sensitive, with cultures positive 75-90 % of the time

Lymphatic

- Most common site of extrapulmonary disease
- Usually presents as a painless swelling, most commonly in the neck
- Any nodes can be involved
- Diagnosed by microscopic examination and culture of aspirated material or the excised node

Central Nervous System

- May present as meningitis or parenchymal brain or spinal cord lesions (tuberculomas)
- Tuberculomas are visible as round or ovoid lesions on CT scan and MRI
- Headache, altered mental status, nausea and vomiting are common
- Cerebrospinal fluid is usually AFB smear-negative; cultures are negative in as many as 50% of cases

Bone and Joint

- Most commonly effects the spine and the weight-bearing joints (hips and knees)
- Insidious onset of joint pain and swelling
- X-rays show destruction of bone and cartilage

Genitourinary

- Flank pain
- Hematuria
- Recurrent urinary tract infections
- Pyuria

Abdominal

- Abdominal pain and swelling
- Abdominal tenderness
- "Doughy" abdomen (rare)
- Ascites

Diagnosis

Medical History and Physical Examination

The signs and symptoms of TB are non-specific, and in low morbidity areas such as Indiana and most of the mid-West, these symptoms are often the result of other infectious disease processes. However, TB should be suspected in persons with these symptoms, especially when the patient

- has a tuberculin skin test that is ≥ 5 mm of induration,
- was born in a country where TB is common,
- is a contact to a case of infectious TB, or
- has other social, demographic, or occupational risk factors for exposure to TB.

Between 15-20% of all TB cases are exclusively extra-pulmonary. Additional symptoms will vary depending on the site, but tuberculosis should be considered in the differential diagnosis of ill persons who are at high risk for tuberculosis, i.e., immigrants from high-prevalence countries, persons with recent TB exposure, immunosuppressed patients, and certain socio-economic groups such as the homeless, substance abusers, and economically disadvantaged racial or ethnic groups.

A physical examination, while an integral part of the evaluation, will often reveal no abnormal physical findings until the later stages of the disease, when fever, cachexia, and findings of pulmonary involvement may be detected.

HIV testing should be performed on all patients who are suspected of having TB disease, especially those who are in the 25-44 year age group.

Tuberculin Skin Test

A tuberculin skin test should be included as part of the evaluation of all patients suspected of having TB disease. Although it does not diagnose disease, the skin test is a valuable epidemiological tool. A positive result in a patient with clinical and radiographic findings that are suggestive of TB provides increased support for a diagnosis of tuberculosis, particularly for patients with known risk factors for exposure. At the same time, a negative test result does not exclude the diagnosis of tuberculosis. Causes of false negative results have been discussed previously. On the average, 15-25% of patients with tuberculosis will have a negative tuberculin skin test at the time of diagnosis, although nearly all will convert their tests to positive after several weeks of treatment and resolution of symptoms.

Radiographic Examinations

The posterior-anterior and lateral view of the chest is the standard radiograph needed for detection and description of chest abnormalities. Chest radiographs should also be performed on all patients suspected of having extrapulmonary TB in order to rule out pulmonary involvement. Computed tomagraphy (CT) scans may be helpful in some cases, such as providing more detail in the detection of cavities, intrathoracic lymphadenopathy, and miliary disease.

The chest radiograph is almost always abnormal in non-immunocompromised patients with active pulmonary tuberculosis. Approximately 10-15% of those with HIV infection may appear normal.

Abnormalities suggestive of active disease may vary in shape and size and can occur anywhere, but are usually seen in the apical or posterior segments of the upper lobe, or the superior segment of the lower lobe. Infiltrates are common. Cavities may be thin or thick-walled, and are usually accompanied by a surrounding infiltrate. Abnormalities on chest radiographs are suggestive of, but not diagnostic for, tuberculosis.

Specimen Collection

Collect all specimens in an aseptic manner using the appropriate container. The laboratory form enclosed with the container must be filled out completely. If the patient is on anti-TB drug therapy, indicate which drugs are being taken. If therapy has not been initiated, check "none." **Do not let the patient fill these forms out**. Except for blood, refrigerate the specimens if they cannot be sent to the laboratory right away.

Sputum

Sputum should be collected for:

- All patients (adults and older children) suspected of having pulmonary or laryngeal tuberculosis

- Patients suspected of having extra-pulmonary TB but who are coughing or who have an abnormal chest x-ray

- Patients being evaluated for a positive TB skin test who are coughing or who have an abnormal chest x-ray

Prior to initiating chemotherapy, collect 3 consecutive sputum samples 8-24 hours apart. Do not pool the specimens. Specimens should be collected in either a well-ventilated area or a sputum collection booth. Health care workers collecting the sputum, regardless of the setting, must observe the appropriate infection control precautions. Collection of early morning specimens is preferred because of the overnight accumulation of secretions; however, specimens may be collected at any time for patients who have a cough that is readily productive. Specimens can often be obtained after a meal for patients who otherwise have difficulty producing an adequate specimen.

Collect sputum in a sterile container for processing and examination. The ISDH mycobacteriology laboratory has special containers for this purpose. Sputum should be collected under direct observation. This is to insure that the patient is being properly coached and is giving a good coughing effort, as well as insuring that uncooperative patients are producing their own sputum for examination.

Instruct the patient not to rinse his or her mouth out. Tap water frequently contains saprophytic mycobacteria that can interfere with smear and culture results. Instruct the patient to breathe deeply and cough from deep down in the lungs. They should be instructed that saliva and other secretions from the upper respiratory tract are not sputum and are not acceptable specimens. For patients unable to bring up sputum, deep coughing may be induced by inhalation of an aerosol of warm, hypertonic (5%-15%) saline. Sputum collected in this manner should be labeled "Induced Sputum."

Bronchial Washings

Bronchoscopy can be performed if the patient cannot cough up sputum. Bronchial washings, brushings, and biopsy specimens may be obtained. Collect at least 5 ml in a sterile container. Avoid contaminating the bronchoscope with tap water.

Gastric Aspirates

Gastric aspirates are sometimes helpful in establishing a laboratory diagnosis in young children who typically do not cough up sputum, and for adults who are unable to cough.

Gastric aspirates should be obtained with a nasogastric tube upon awakening and prior to ambulation or feeding. Specimens from three aspirates, collected 24 hours apart, should be submitted unless a stained smear of the first aspirate is positive. Collect as much as possible (10-15 ml) in a sterile container.

Other Body Fluids (pleural, pericardial, peritoneal, synovial, etc.)

Disinfect the site. Collect as much fluid as possible (10-15 ml) in a sterile container. It may be necessary to add heparin.

Tissue

Aseptically collect 1.0 g, if possible. Do not use swabs. Do not wrap in gauze, freeze, or add any type of fixative or preservative. If the specimen is being shipped by mail or courier, add only enough sterile saline to prevent drying.

Cerebrospinal Fluid

Send the maximum volume obtained, preferably > 2 ml.

Urine

Collect the first morning-voided specimen on 3 consecutive days, either clean-catch or catheterized. Do not pool the specimens or collect from the catheter bag. Collect at least 40 ml, if possible. Use appropriate leak-proof containers; never send urine cups through the mail.

Blood

Collect 5-10 ml in a serum-plasma separator tube (yellow top). Heparin may be used. No EDTA. Disinfect the site as for a routine blood culture. Do not refrigerate.

Important: the degree of infectiousness is determined by the presence of AFB in the sputum, not in bronchial washings, tracheal aspirates, or other pulmonary specimens. While the diagnostic value of respiratory specimens obtained from bronchoscopy or biopsies is significant, the presence of AFB in specimens other than sputum is not particularly useful for determining infectiousness or how soon and to what extent a contact investigation should be done. Therefore, regardless of the decision to perform a bronchoscopy or other diagnostic procedure, sputum should still be collected at the time the diagnostic evaluation is performed.

Other Pre-treatment Baseline Testing

- Complete blood count with platelets

- Hepatic enzymes (ALT, AST, and bilirubin)
- Serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen
- Serum uric acid (for pyrazinamide use)
- Visual acuity and color vision testing (for ethambutol use)
- Audiometry (if streptomycin is being used)
- CD4+ lymphocyte count for HIV-infected patients
- Hepatitis B and C panel (for HIV +, injection drug use, foreign birth in Africa or Asia)

Children should have baseline measurements of liver function if they have any of the following conditions:

- Concurrent or recent liver disease
- High daily dose INH (>10 mg/kg/day) in combination with rifampin, pyrazinamide, or both
- Hepatobiliary disease
- Meningitis or disseminated disease

Treatment

The initial treatment phase for tuberculosis should consist of all 4 first-line drugs: isoniazid (INH), rifampin (RIF), pyrazinamide (PZA), and ethambutol (EMB). Streptomycin (SM) is no longer recommended as a substitute for EMB because of increased worldwide occurrence of resistance to SM. EMB should be used with caution in children who are too young to have their visual acuity monitored (typically those < 5 years of age). It may be used at 15 mg/kg for children with proven or suspected disease that is resistant to either INH or RIF.

The initial use of a 4-drug regimen is to prevent the development of drug resistance. EMB is included in the initial phase for that purpose, particularly to prevent the emergence of rifampin resistance if there is unrecognized initial resistance to INH. Foreign-born persons from high-burden countries where drug resistance rates are higher are making up an increasing percentage of the state's TB cases. Persons with radiographic evidence of old healed TB who were inadequately treated or whose treatment history cannot be verified, are also at increased risk for drug resistance. Six-month short-course regimens are not possible without PZA. For these reasons, the 4-drug regimen should not be deviated from unless there are medical contraindications.

All 4 drugs should be used during the first 8 weeks of treatment. PZA should be discontinued after 8 weeks. There is no added benefit to continuing PZA beyond 2 months when the organism is susceptible to both INH and RIF. EMB should be discontinued once drug susceptibility tests show that the organism is susceptible to both INH and RIF. If susceptibility to INH and RIF are demonstrated, the continuation phase should consist of INH and RIF for an additional 18 weeks.

Directly observed therapy (DOT) should be used for all TB patients regardless of the site of disease. It is the standard of care and the best practice for TB treatment. In DOT, a trained health care worker observes the patient swallow each dose of medication.

The recommended drug dosages and regimens are shown in appendices B, C, and D, respectively. The total number of doses is based on the standard 6-month (26 weeks) regimen. Completion of treatment is based on the ingestion of the required number of doses, and not merely the length of treatment. **Doses should not be divided**.

The duration of treatment may vary depending upon the severity of disease, response to therapy, and the presence of drug resistance. Patients with drug-susceptible pulmonary disease and no cavities visible on the initial chest x-ray can be successfully treated in 6 months.

However, patients with cavitary disease **and** who take longer than 2 months to convert their sputum cultures to negative should have the continuation phase extended from 4 to 7 months, and receive a minimum of 9 months (39 weeks) of therapy. Clinical studies have shown that these patients have a significantly higher relapse rate (21%) when treated for only 6 months.

For patients with either cavitation on the initial chest x-ray or positive sputum cultures after two months of treatment (but not both), the relapse rate is 5-6%. For these patients, the decision to extend the continuation phase should be made on an individual basis. Patients with neither risk factor had a relapse rate of only 2%. In order to minimize the risk of relapse as much as possible, ISDH recommends extending the continuation phase by an additional 3 months for patients with **either** risk factor.

Monitoring Response to Therapy

For patients with culture positive pulmonary TB, the most effective way to monitor response to therapy is by quantitative analysis of AFB in the sputum until cultures become negative:

- For patients whose pre-treatment sputum was positive for acid-fast bacilli, specimens should be collected every two weeks until the first set of 3 specimens is negative for acid-fast bacilli upon direct microscopy. For patients who need to return to work or school, or be released from hospital isolation and returned to a congregate setting (general patient floor, nursing home, jail or prison, etc.), sputum should be collected weekly until they are negative for acid fast bacilli.

- Once smears are negative for AFB, or for patients whose pre-treatment sputum was smear-negative, specimens should be collected **at least** monthly until two consecutive sputum specimens are no longer growing *M. tuberculosis*. Sputum should also be collected at the end of the 2-month initial treatment phase. Patients whose sputum is still culture-positive at this point should have the continuation phase extended from 4 months to 7 months.

- Once culture conversion is documented, collect specimens monthly and at the end of treatment, as long as the patient is able to produce sputum.

- If pre-treatment sputum was not collected, collect sputum specimens monthly (adolescents and adults only).

- For patients with negative sputum cultures before treatment, the best indicators of clinical response to therapy are the chest x-ray and clinical evaluation. The intervals between chest x-rays will vary, but usually do not need to be done more often than every 3 months. If the chest x-ray does not improve after 3 months of therapy, the abnormalities may be due to previous (not current) TB or another process.

- Patients whose symptoms are not improving or who do not convert their sputum cultures to negative after 4 months of therapy are considered to be treatment failures and should be re-evaluated for non-adherence to the drug regimen and the development of drug resistance.

- Routine follow-up after therapy is completed is generally not necessary for patients who have a satisfactory and prompt bacteriologic response to a 6- or 9-month course of therapy containing both isoniazid and rifampin. Patients whose organisms were fully susceptible to the drugs being used should be instructed to promptly report the development of any TB symptoms, particularly prolonged cough, fever, and weight loss. For patients with organisms resistant to either isoniazid, rifampin, or both, follow-up evaluations must be individualized.

Monitoring for Adverse Reactions

Adverse reactions to TB drugs are relatively uncommon, but may be severe in some patients. Monitoring for adverse drug reactions must be individualized for each patient, taking into account the drugs being used, and their risk factors for adverse reactions, such as age, alcohol use, and pre-existing liver disease. They should be seen at least monthly and questioned about symptoms associated with the common reactions associated with the drugs they are taking (refer to the section on individual TB drugs for specific adverse reactions). Patients receiving INH, RIF, or PZA should be instructed to stop taking medications and immediately report any symptoms suggestive of hepatitis (i.e., persistently dark urine, vomiting, loss of appetite, nausea, jaundice, abdominal tenderness unexplained temperature elevation lasting longer than 3 days).

In addition to the baseline laboratory tests that were mentioned previously in this section, liver function tests (ALT, AST, and bilirubin) should be performed monthly for patients who:

- Have concurrent or recent liver or hepatobiliary disease
- Are pregnant or within the 6 weeks postpartum period
- Have clinical evidence of hepatotoxicity
- Are malnourished or underweight
- Are $\geq$ 50 years of age

If the patient has no evidence of pre-existing liver disease, pre-treatment liver function tests are normal, and does not meet the criteria listed above, repeat liver function tests are not required routinely. Treatment should be stopped and liver function tests performed immediately if fever, malaise, vomiting, jaundice or unexplained deterioration occurs, or if liver enzymes are $\geq$ 5 times the upper limits of normal. Modest elevations of AST and ALT are not uncommon in tuberculosis patients before or immediately after introduction of therapy.

If liver enzymes rise to $\geq$ 5 times the upper limits of normal, or if symptoms of hepatitis develop, all drugs should be stopped. When liver enzymes have nearly returned to normal, introduce the drugs one at a time at one-week intervals in the following order: RIF, INH, and PZA. Measure liver enzymes prior to starting each subsequent drug to help determine which one is responsible for the increased levels. This procedure is discussed in more detail on page 44 of the ATS treatment guidelines at the end of this manual.

Interruptions in Treatment

There is no single "best" way to manage interruptions in treatment. The recommendations given here were adopted from the American Thoracic Society and the New York City Department of Health. If treatment is interrupted during the initial phase (first 8 weeks), one of two actions is necessary, depending on how long the interruption is. If the interruption was less than 14 days, continue treatment until the required number doses have been taken. If the total number of doses cannot be completed within 3 months, or if the interruption was $\geq$ 14 days, restart treatment from the beginning. If the interruption occurred during the continuation phase, the issue becomes a little more complicated depending on what percentage of the doses have been taken, how long the lapse in therapy was, and the patient's sputum culture status at the time the lapse occurred. For more detailed information, refer to page 40 of the American Thoracic Society treatment guidelines at the end of the manual.

Treatment and Management of TB in Special Situations

More detailed information of treatment of TB disease in special situations is found in the American Thoracic Society (ATS) TB treatment guidelines at the end of this manual. The section on treatment of TB in children is adopted in part from the Indiana State Department of Health TB Medical Advisory Board recommendations.

Treatment of Extra-pulmonary TB

Most cases of extra-pulmonary TB in adults and children can be treated successfully using the same 6-9 month regimen used for pulmonary disease. However, the optimal length of therapy for TB meningitis has not been established, but many experts recommend 9-12 months. Several studies have shown that bone and joint TB can be treated in 6-9 months, but some experts recommend treatment for 12 months. For disseminated TB in children, the American Academy of Pediatrics recommends 9 months of treatment; 6 months is recommended for adults.

Treatment of Drug-resistant TB

When resistance only to INH is documented in an initial 4-drug regimen (INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB), discontinue the INH and continue with the 3 remaining drugs for the remainder of the 6-9 month regimen.

Regimens without RIF cannot be completed in less than 12 months. If resistance is documented only to RIF, or if RIF cannot be used, a 12-month regimen consisting of INH, EMB, PZA, and a fluoroquinolone (e.g., levofloxacin) should be used.

Patients with disease that is resistant to both INH and RIF (multi-drug resistant, or MDR TB) present a great challenge. Treatment of MDR TB should not be undertaken without expert consultation. The drug regimen should include at least 3 drugs that the organism is susceptible to. Regimens typically consist of:

- PZA and EMB plus
- A fluoroquinolone (e.g., levofloxacin) plus
- An injectable agent (e.g., amikacin, streptomycin)

Treatment should continue until culture conversion is documented, followed by at least 12 months of 2-drug therapy. Often, a total of 18-24 months of treatment is given empirically. It is currently recommended that HIV-positive patients with MDR TB be treated for 24 months beyond culture conversion.

For disease that is resistant to all first-line drugs, refer to the ATS TB treatment guidelines.

Treatment of TB in Patients With HIV Infection

Management of TB patients who are co-infected with HIV should always be done in consultation with physicians who are experienced in the management of both diseases. In general, treatment regimens for HIV-positive patients who are not receiving anti-retroviral therapy are the same as for those who are HIV-negative, except that twice-weekly therapy is contraindicated if the patient's CD4+ lymphocyte count is < 100 cells/mm^3. This is due to the increased risk of relapse with the development of rifamycin resistance.

Rifampin should not be used in patients who are being treated with most protease inhibitors (PIs) or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) because RIF induces the production of cytochrome P-450 isoenzymes (CYP450), which can reduce the therapeutic levels of these drugs. In addition, the NNRTIs and PIs induce or inhibit CYP450, which can affect therapeutic rifamycin levels. Rifabutin interacts to a lesser extent, and should be used in place of rifampin when the patient is taking most drug combinations containing PIs or NNRTIs.

Treatment of TB in Pregnant Women

Pregnant women must begin treatment as soon as TB is suspected. The initial regimen should consist of isoniazid, rifampin, and ethambutol. Pyrazinamide should not be used routinely because of inadequate teratogenicity data. The aminoglycosides (e.g., streptomycin, kanamycin, and amikacin), capreomycin, and the fluoroquinolones (e.g., levofloxacin, moxifloxacin and gatifloxacin) are contraindicated for all pregnant women because of adverse effects on the fetus.

Treatment of TB in Patients With Liver Disease

Expert consultation should be sought when treating patients with unstable or advanced liver disease. The likelihood of drug-induced hepatitis is potentially greater, and tends to be more serious and even life threatening in patients with borderline hepatic function. Detailed information and suggested drug regimens are given in the ATS treatment guidelines.

Treatment of TB in Patients With Renal Insufficiency and End-stage Renal Disease

Tuberculosis treatment can be complicated in patients with impaired renal function. Many first and second-line TB drugs are excreted by the kidneys, which requires changes in both dosage and frequency of administration. Drugs should be given after dialysis to prevent premature removal of drugs such as PZA. Serum drug concentrations should be monitored to avoid toxicity in patients who are taking EMB or cycloserine. Refer to the ATS treatment guidelines for more detailed information.

Special Considerations for TB in Children

Diagnosis

TB in children, particularly those < 4 years of age, is almost always the result of recent close contact with an adult with infectious TB. Obtaining a bacteriological diagnosis may be very difficult. If a child's clinical picture is consistent with TB, and there is known contact with a culture-confirmed adult case of tuberculosis, aggressive diagnostic procedures to obtain sputum may not be indicated. The local health department can provide the susceptibility data on the adult source case, and treatment decisions can be based on this information.

Children who are contacts to adults or older children with infectious tuberculosis should have a tuberculin skin test placed and a PA and lateral chest x-ray. Children who are not contacts but who have a positive tuberculin skin test should also receive a chest x-ray. Radiographic abnormalities suggestive of pediatric TB disease include:

- Adenopathy
- Infiltrate or air space disease in any lobe
- Pleural disease
- Scarring and atelectasis
- Military pattern

A more aggressive diagnostic work-up should be considered when TB is suspected in children without a known source case, or when disseminated or extra-pulmonary disease is suspected. Diagnostic options in the American Academy of Pediatrics *Red Book* include: isolation of tubercle bacilli by culture from early morning gastric aspirates; from sputum, pleural fluid, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), urine, or other body fluids; or biopsy material. In a young child (or when the cough is nonproductive or absent), the best culture material for the diagnosis of pulmonary tuberculosis is an early morning gastric aspirate. Gastric aspirates should be obtained with a nasogastric tube upon awakening the child and prior to ambulation or feeding. The NG tube should be placed the night before to prevent vomiting or swallowing which stimulates the stomach to empty prior to obtaining the specimen. Specimens from three aspirates, collected 24 hours apart, should be submitted unless a stained smear of the first aspirate is positive. Regardless of the results of the AFB smears (which are rarely positive), each specimen should be cultured.

Hospitalization

Hospitalization of young children with tuberculosis is indicated when a diagnostic work-up (e.g., gastric aspirates x 3) must be performed, when disseminated disease is suspected or confirmed, if the child is not clinically stable, or if the child fails to respond to therapy.

Hospitalization should be strongly considered in any child less than one year of age with active TB until disseminated disease can be excluded conclusively. The practitioner must carefully consider the child's clinical status and make an individual decision on whether or not to hospitalize.

Treatment

Indiana has a variable INH-resistance rate. Multi-drug resistant TB (resistant to both isoniazid and rifampin) is rare. Until susceptibility results are available, three or four-drug therapy is recommended, with INH, RIF, and PZA. EMB should be added as the fourth drug for children who are old enough to have their color vision monitored. It should be added to the regimen if the child has risk factors for drug resistance. The EMB may be dropped as soon as the tuberculosis isolate (from the child or adult source case) is known to be susceptible. INH is available in liquid form in a concentration of 10mg/ml, but commonly causes diarrhea and GI upset and is poorly tolerated by many children. INH tablets should be crushed and mixed with a small amount of food. Its stability is poor when mixed with sugary liquids such as juices or sodas. For cases in which drug susceptibilities are not available because an isolate cannot be obtained, the state or the local health department can assist the practitioner in the choice of drug regimen, based on local susceptibility patterns and the case history. More detailed treatment recommendations are available from the American Academy of Pediatrics *Red Book*, or the Indiana State Department of Health TB Medical Advisory Board.

Intermittent therapy using thrice-weekly dosing is not recommended for children.

Contacts of Patients with Tuberculosis

Children who are HIV infected or who are household contacts under the age of four should receive a tuberculin skin test and chest x-ray, and be given isoniazid preventive therapy, even if the skin test is negative. The skin test should be repeated three months after contact is broken with the active case. If the second skin test is negative, isoniazid can be discontinued.

6. Case Management Activities

General Activities

Case management is an essential component of a multi-faceted, patient-centered approach to TB treatment, and is the legal responsibility of the local health department. This process also includes private physicians, hospitals, and laboratories, as well as the use of directly observed therapy, incentives, and enablers. Case management duties include:

- Reviewing reports and clinical records, and coordinating follow-up activities with the referring physician, hospital, or health facility
- Interviewing the patient and ensuring that he or she is being isolated, if necessary, and that a contact investigation is initiated
- Forwarding reports to the Indiana State Department of Health (ISDH)
- Ensuring that the patient is on an appropriate drug regimen and is on directly observed therapy
- Monitoring the patient's clinical progress by making monthly visits as well as by contacting the physician on a regular basis to check on his or her progress, report adverse drug reactions or other problems, and identify any changes in the treatment plan
- Monitoring response to therapy, and ensuring that sputum specimens from patients with pulmonary disease are collected in accordance with established guidelines
- Sending monthly progress reports to ISDH
- Coordinating with ISDH and other local health departments when patients leave or enter their jurisdiction
- Providing patient and family education
- Conducting a thorough contact investigation and submitting the report to ISDH
- Ensuring completion of treatment for contacts, including those who are being followed by their private physician

Reporting Requirements

State laws and communicable disease reporting rules requires that all confirmed and suspected cases of TB disease must be reported to the local health department by physicians, hospital administers, and laboratories. Local health departments are required to forward all reporting information to the Indiana State Department Health. Information is to include:

- State reporting forms
- Copies of laboratory and radiographic reports
- Copies of appropriate medical evaluation reports, e.g., progress reports, history and physical reports, and hospital discharge summaries
- Autopsy reports and death certificates, if applicable

Protecting Patient Confidentiality

Confidentiality involves the protection of information revealed during encounters with the patient, including verbal, written, and electronic communication. Health care workers must keep patient information in confidence and only divulge it with the written consent of the patient, except as required by state laws and administrative rules. IC-16-41-8-1 deals with confidentiality as it pertains to patients with communicable diseases, and specifies under what conditions confidentiality may be broken, as well as release of information to third parties. The privacy and confidentiality provisions of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) **do not** supersede Indiana laws concerning the reporting of communicable diseases.

Confidentiality is a very important issue in TB control because the diagnosis of TB disease is potentially damaging for patients. Tuberculosis carries a stigma that is very pervasive among many cultures. A diagnosis of TB can result in the unfair loss of a job, rejection by friends, family, and co-workers, and even eviction from housing. There are some specific issues that require special attention by health care workers who work with TB patients:

- The patient has certain rights that must be respected. These include rights to privacy, autonomy, to be given information, and to give or withhold authorization of disclosures.
- State and local health departments have a responsibility to protect the public's health using certain effective TB control strategies.
- It is sometimes necessary to override certain patient rights in the interest of protecting the health and safety of the public (e.g., an uncooperative, infectious

patient may be quarantined until he or she is no longer infectious; reporting by hospitals, physicians, and laboratories; sharing information with other TB control programs to ensure completion of treatment).

- Great care must be taken to ensure that patient rights, especially the right to privacy, are protected so that the patient-health care worker relationship is not compromised.

Incentives and Enablers

The use of incentives and enablers, along with directly observed therapy, are strategies used to promote adherence to treatment. Incentives are interventions which will motivate the patient to adhere to the treatment plan, and include:

- Restaurant coupons
- Clothing
- Assistance in finding housing
- Books
- Food stamps
- Snacks and meals
- Cash rewards

Enablers are interventions that help the patient to more readily complete therapy. Examples include:

- Transportation vouchers or bus tokens
- Child care
- Convenient clinic hours
- Clinic personnel who speak the patient's native language
- Social service assistance

7. Latent TB Infection

Candidates for Treatment

Persons who have a positive tuberculin skin test, and have no clinical, bacteriological, or radiographic evidence of active disease are considered to have latent TB infection (LTBI). Treatment is recommended regardless of age unless there are medical contraindications.

People in the following groups are at the highest risk for progressing to active disease, and should be treated if their tuberculin skin test results are ≥ 5 mm:

- Recent contacts to a case of infectious TB
- Anyone with HIV infection
- Persons with radiographic evidence of fibrotic scarring that is consistent with old, healed TB and were not treated or were inadequately treated
- Organ transplant recipients and other immunosuppressed patients who are receiving the equivalent of ≥ 15mg/day of prednisone for ≥ 1 month

In addition to the highest-risk groups listed above, the following groups should be considered for treatment of LTBI if their tuberculin skin test is ≥ 10 mm:

- Persons born in countries with a high prevalence of TB, especially those who have arrived in the U.S. within the last 5 years
- Injection drug users
- Residents and employees of congregate settings (e.g., correctional facilities, long-term care facilities, residential treatment facilities, homeless shelters, hospitals) that are classified as high-risk for TB exposure based on the prevalence of TB in the facility
- Persons with certain medical conditions that increase the risk of progression to active disease (see "Transmission and Pathogenesis" in section 3)
- Mycobacteriology laboratory personnel
- Children < 4 years of age
- Children and adolescents exposed to adults in high-risk exposure categories

People with no known risk factors for TB who have a tuberculin skin test that is ≥ 15 mm of induration may be considered for treatment, but should be given a lower priority for prevention efforts than the high-risk groups listed above.

Treatment Regimens for Latent TB Infection

The following regimens are recommended for treating LTBI:

- Isoniazid for 9 months is the optimal regimen, regardless of age or HIV status.

- Isoniazid for 6 months: acceptable alternative for HIV-negative adults when the preferred 9-month regimen is not feasible. This regimen is not acceptable for children or for persons with fibrotic lesions visible on their chest x-ray.

- Rifampin for 4 months: acceptable alternative for adults and children if the preferred regimen cannot be used or is not feasible. The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends 6 months of treatment for children.

- Pyrazinamide and rifampin for 2 months: not recommended for general use. This is not an acceptable regimen for children. If the potential benefits significantly outweigh the demonstrated risk of severe liver injury and death associated with this regimen and the patient has no contraindications, an expert should be consulted prior to its use. Pyrazinamide dosage should not exceed 20 mg/kg/day, with a maximum daily dose of 2 g. Past or present excessive alcohol use is an absolute contraindication for this regimen. This recommendation **does not** affect the current treatment guidelines for PZA use as part of the multi-drug regimen for treatment of TB disease.

Refer to the table in appendix E for dosages for daily and intermittent therapy.

LTBI Treatment Regimens for Special Situations

- Contacts to a patient with TB resistant to isoniazid: 4 months of rifampin

- Contacts to a patient with confirmed multi-drug resistant TB:
  - Observe without treatment (if HIV-negative), or use 2 drugs to which the infecting organism is susceptible, e.g., ethambutol and a fluoroquinolone (e.g., levofloxacin), or PZA and a fluoroquinolone
  - Treat daily for 6-12 months if HIV-negative
  - Treat daily for 12 months if HIV-positive
  - Follow for 2 years regardless of treatment

- Pregnancy and breast-feeding
  - Isoniazid daily or twice-weekly for pregnant women at high risk for progression to active disease

- There is no data to support the efficacy of rifampin for 4 months in this population
- Breast feeding is not a contraindication for treatment of the mother
- The amount of isoniazid in breast milk is inadequate to treat an infected infant
- Vitamin B_6 should also be given

- Persons with radiographic findings consistent with fibrotic lesions that are thought to represent previous TB, and who have (1) a tuberculin skin test ≥ 5 mm, (2) no evidence of active disease, and (3) no history of treatment for TB, should be treated with one of the following regimens:
  - Isoniazid for 9 months
  - Rifampin (with or without INH) for 4 months

Patient Management

Before starting treatment for LTBI, conduct a medical history to obtain the following information:

- Rule out the possibility of TB disease

- Determine if the patient has been treated for LTBI or TB disease in the past. Retreatment is not necessary if an adequate course of therapy was completed.

- Determine if there are any pre-existing medical conditions that would be a contraindication for treatment or are associated with an increased risk of adverse effects of treatment

- Current and previous drug therapy

- Use of alcohol and illicit drugs

- Recommend HIV testing

Baseline laboratory testing is not routinely indicated for all patients at the start of treatment. Liver function tests (ALT, AST, and bilirubin) are recommended for the following situations:

- Baseline testing for all patients with a history of liver disease or substance abuse

- Baseline and every two weeks, plus baseline uric acid testing for patients receiving rifampin and pyrazinamide

- Baseline and monthly for pregnant and post-partum women, individuals with liver disease, or who are malnourished or underweight, have clinical evidence of hepatotoxicity, or who over 50 years of age

- Testing as deemed appropriate if the patient is taking other medications with the potential for hepatotoxicity

Patients receiving INH or RIF alone should be monitored monthly for adherence to therapy, signs and symptoms of hepatotoxicity, and signs and symptoms of active TB disease. No more than a single month's supply of medication should be given at one time. Those who are receiving RIF and PZA should be monitored every two weeks, to include liver function tests, and should not receive more than a two-week supply of medication at one time.

Anywhere from 10% to 20% of patients being treated for LTBI will experience mild, asymptomatic elevations of liver enzymes. These elevations tend to resolve, even when treatment is continued. Patients should be instructed about the signs and symptoms of hepatitis and to report any such symptoms promptly. It is not necessary to discontinue treatment unless

- ALT or AST exceed 5 times the upper limits of normal, or
- Serum bilirubin is greater than the normal range, or
- The patient is experiencing symptoms of hepatotoxicity.

8. Anti-Tuberculosis Drugs

First-line Anti-TB Drugs (Dosages are given in appendices B and C)

(Note: for more detailed information, refer to the ATS treatment guidelines at the end of this manual; also consult the PDR® or the product literature.)

Isoniazid (INH)

- Activity: highly bactericidal against intracellular and extracellular organisms; active primarily against actively dividing bacilli; interferes with mycolic acid synthesis.

- Availability: 100 mg and 300 mg scored tablets; also available as a liquid in 16-ounce bottles at 50 mg/5ml, and 1 gram vials for injection.

- Major adverse reactions: hepatitis; asymptomatic hepatic enzyme elevations; fatigue; joint pain; peripheral neuropathy (may interfere with pyridoxine metabolism).

- Contraindications: previous INH-associated liver injury; pregnancy (relative contraindication); use with caution in patients with current liver disease or renal impairment.

- Drug interactions: alcohol (↑ risk of hepatitis); increased serum levels of phenytoin (Dilantin®); decreased absorption of INH when given with antacids containing aluminum hydroxide.

- Use in pregnancy: generally safe to use, but the risk of hepatotoxicity may increase during the peripartum period.

- Other: use of INH liquid is discouraged because of unpredictable absorption, and because its high osmotic load can cause GI upset and diarrhea in some children. Monoamine (histamine/tyramine) poisoning has been reported after ingestion of foods with high monoamine content, but is rare. If flushing occurs, instruct the patient to avoid certain food and beverages, such as cheese and wine, which contain high concentration of monoamines.

Rifampin (RIF)

- Activity: highly bactericidal against intracellular and extracellular organisms; active against semi-dormant bacilli; potent sterilizing agent; inhibits DNA-dependant RNA production, blocking RNA transcription.

- Availability: 150 mg and 300 mg capsules; pharmacies can formulate the capsules into a liquid. Also available in an aqueous solution for parenteral administration.

- Major adverse reactions: hepatitis (less frequently than with INH); hepatic enzyme elevations (less frequently than with INH); GI upset; bleeding problems; rash; RIF is a potent cytochrome P450 enzyme inducer, which causes decreased serum levels of many drugs, including most protease inhibitors (PIs) and non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs); harmless red or orange discoloration of urine and tears.

- Contraindications: previous intolerance to rifampin; concurrent use with most PIs and NNRTIs.

- Drug interactions: decreased absorption of oral contraceptives, oral hypoglycemic agents, coumadin, and many other drugs; decreases the serum levels of most PI's and NNRTIs.

- Use in pregnancy: safe to use.

- Other: May cause pruritis, with or without a rash. RIF may be used with the following anti-retroviral regimens:

  - The NNRTI efavirenz and two nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs).

  - The PI ritonavir and one or more NRTIs.

  - The combination of two PIs (ritonavir and either saquinavir hard-gel or soft-gel capsules).

Rifabutin (RFB)

- Activity: a rifamycin antibiotic with properties similar to rifampin, but has lower achievable serum levels.

- Availability: 150 mg capsules.

- Major adverse reactions: similar to rifampin, but induces cytochrome P450 oxidase enzymes to a much lesser extent than rifampin; generally well tolerated.

- Contraindications: similar to rifampin, but is safe to use with most PI and NNRTI combinations.

- Drug interactions: Do not use concurrently with hard-gel saquinavir; dosage may need to be reduced when used with certain PIs and NNRTIs.

- Use in pregnancy: there are insufficient data to recommend the use of rifabutin in pregnant women.

- Other: may be used as a primary drug for patients receiving medications having unacceptable interactions with rifampin; use of RFB is indicated for the treatment of TB disease in AIDS patients who are currently on or will soon be starting anti-retroviral therapy containing most PIs or NNRTIs; twice weekly therapy is not recommended for AIDS patients.

Rifapentine (RPT)

- Activity: a new rifamycin antibiotic that has recently been approved for use by the FDA. Properties are similar to rifampin, but the serum half-life is much longer, which allows for once-weekly intermittent therapy.

- Availability: 150 mg film-coated tablet.

- Major adverse reactions: similar to rifampin; generally well tolerated.

- Contraindications: history of hypersensitivity to any of the rifamycins; not for use in patients who are HIV-positive or with advanced TB disease.

- Drug interactions: generally similar to rifampin.

- Use in pregnancy: there are insufficient data to recommend the use of rifapentine in pregnant women.

- Other: must be used with directly observed therapy.

Pyrazinamide (PZA)

- Activity: bactericidal in the acidic, intracellular environment; bacteriostatic in the extracellular environment; potent sterilizing agent; method of action is unknown.

- Availability: 500 mg scored tablets.

- Major adverse reactions: arthralgia, hepatitis, rash, GI upset, hyperuricemia, gout (rare).

- Contraindications: pre-existing gout.

- Drug interactions: none known.

- Use in pregnancy: due to insufficient teratogenicity data, PZA should not be used during pregnancy unless absolutely necessary.

- Other: perform baseline testing of serum uric acid; do not exceed 20 mg/kg/day (2 g maximum) when given with RIF for treatment of LTBI. Dosage may need to be reduced in patients with renal disease, since the kidneys excrete some of its metabolites.

Ethambutol (EMB)

- Activity: bacteriostatic; some bactericidal activity at dosages used for intermittent therapy; active against intracellular and extracellular organisms; primary use is to prevent the development of resistant mutants to other TB drugs; inhibits the transfer of mycolic acids into the cell wall.

- Availability: 400 mg scored and 100 mg unscored tablets.

- Major adverse reactions: optic neuritis (blurred vision, color blindness).

- Contraindications: generally not used in children who are too young to cooperate with vision screening, unless drug resistance is known or suspected.

- Drug interactions: none known.

- Use in pregnancy: safe to use.

- Other: perform baseline and monthly visual acuity and color vision screening; reduce dosage in renal failure.

Second-line Anti-TB Drugs

Streptomycin (SM)

- Activity: bactericidal; primarily active in the alkaline, extracellular environment; interferes with bacterial protein synthesis.

- Availability: 1g/2.5 ml ampules (400 mg/ml).

- Dose: Refer to Table 3 in the ATS treatment guidelines.

- Major adverse reactions: ototoxicity (hearing loss, vestibular dysfunction); renal toxicity.

- Contraindications: previous toxicity to streptomycin; myasthenia gravis; pregnancy; breast-feeding; ear disease.

- Drug interactions: avoid concurrent use with other nephrotoxic or neurotoxic drugs, e.g., kanamycin and gentamycin.

- Use in pregnancy: contraindicated due to the risk of fetal hearing loss.
- Other: baseline and monthly monitoring of hearing and renal function.

Cycloserine (CYC)

- Activity: bacteriostatic; interferes with mycobacterial cell wall synthesis.
- Availability: 250 mg capsules.
- Dose: Refer to Table 3 in the ATS treatment guidelines.
- Major adverse reactions: psychosis, convulsions, depression, headaches, and rash.
- Contraindications: known hypersensitivity to cycloserine; seizure disorders, depression, severe renal insufficiency; excessive concurrent alcohol use.
- Drug interactions: alcohol (increased risk of seizures); potentiates neurotoxic side effects of ethionamide.
- Use in pregnancy: cycloserine crosses the placenta. There is insufficient data regarding safety during pregnancy, so it should be used only if there are no suitable alternatives.
- Other: monitor mental status and serum drug levels.

Ethionamide (ETH)

- Activity: bacteriostatic; interferes with peptide synthesis.
- Availability: 250 mg tablets.
- Dose: Refer to Table 3 in the ATS treatment guidelines.
- Major adverse reactions: GI upset, hepatotoxicity, bloating, metallic taste, hypersensitivity.
- Contraindications: known hypersensitivity to ethionamide, pregnancy, seizure disorders, depression, severe renal insufficiency.
- Drug interactions: cycloserine (convulsions); may potentiate the adverse effects of other anti-tuberculosis drugs being administered concurrently.

- Use in pregnancy: ethionamide crosses the placenta and is teratogenic in laboratory animals. It should not be used during pregnancy.

- Other: monitor hepatic enzymes; use with caution in nursing mothers and children < 12 years of age.

***para*-Aminosalicylic acid (PAS)**

- Activity: bacteriostatic; thought to interfere with folic acid synthesis.

- Availability: in granule form, 4 g/packet.

- Dose: Refer to Table 3 in the ATS treatment guidelines.

- Major adverse reactions: GI upset, hepatotoxicity, hypersensitivity.

- Contraindications: known hypersensitivity to PAS; severe renal disease.

- Drug interactions: reduces the acetylation rate of INH; reduces absorption of vitamin $B_{12.}$

- Use in pregnancy: PAS has not been tested in humans, but has been used safely in pregnant women. It should only be used if there are no suitable alternatives.

- Other: monitor hepatic enzymes.

Capreomycin (CAP)

- Activity: polypeptide antibiotic; mechanism of action is unknown.

- Availability: 1 g vials for reconstitution with 2 ml of sterile saline or sterile water for injection.

- Dose: Refer to Table 3 in the ATS treatment guidelines.

- Major adverse reactions: auditory, vestibular and renal toxicity; hypersensitivity.

- Contraindications: known hypersensitivity to capreomycin.

- Drug interactions: peripheral neuromuscular blocking action is antagonized by neostigmine

- Use in pregnancy: avoid during pregnancy due to the risk of nephrotoxicity and fetal hearing loss.

- Other: assess hearing and vestibular function; measure electrolytes, creatinine, and BUN; dosage may be reduced to 2-3 times per week after culture conversion.

Kanamycin (KAN) and Amikacin (AM)

- Activity: aminoglycoside antibiotics; mechanism of action is unknown.
- Availability: 1 g vials.
- Dose: Refer to Table 3 in the ATS treatment guidelines.
- Major adverse reactions: auditory, vestibular and renal toxicity; hypersensitivity.
- Contraindications: known hypersensitivity to either drug.
- Drug interactions: avoid concurrent use of other nephrotoxic or ototoxic drugs.
- Use in pregnancy: avoid during pregnancy due to the risk of nephrotoxicity and fetal hearing loss.
- Other: assess hearing and vestibular function; measure electrolytes, creatinine, and BUN; dosage may be reduced to 2-3 times per week after culture conversion.

Levofloxacin (fluoroquinolone group)

- Activity: inhibits DNA gyrase.
- Availability: 250, 500, 750 mg tablets. Also available in injectable form.
- Dose: Refer to Table 3 in the ATS treatment guidelines.
- Major adverse reactions: GI upset, dizziness, hypersensitivity, headaches.
- Contraindications: known hypersensitivity to these drugs.
- Drug interactions: raises serum theophylline levels; antacids cause decreased absorption when used concurrently.
- Use in pregnancy: should not be used due to teratogenic effects.
- Other: avoid excessive exposure to sunlight; not recommended for pediatric use; not FDA-approved for TB treatment. It is more active against *M. tuberculosis* than ciprofloxacin; it is also more conducive to directly observed therapy because it can be given as a single daily dose.

9. Community TB Control

Identification and Management of Persons With Clinically Active TB

The Indiana State Department of Health (ISDH) is responsible for the oversight of TB elimination activities within the state, policy development, and technical assistance to local health departments, physicians, hospitals, and other health facilities.

In Indiana, private physicians care for TB patients and suspects, but the local health departments have the legal responsibility for ensuring that TB patients do not transmit the disease to others. The overall case management of these patients is the legal responsibility of the local health officer as stated in the Communicable Disease Reporting Rule, 410 IAC 1-2.3. A nurse in the local health department acts as the health officer's agent and performs the duties of case manager.

Contact Investigations

Contact investigations are an essential component in the control of TB in the community. In accordance with 410 IAC 1-2.3, section 106 (10-11-2000), the local health officer is legally responsible for insuring that contact investigations are conducted and that the results are forwarded to the State Department of Health. Contact investigations are performed for all cases of infectious tuberculosis in order to identify, evaluate and treat contacts with latent TB infection and active disease. Source case investigations are performed for cases of pediatric TB in order to find the adult source case. The TB case manager at the local health department initiates the contact investigation within 3 working days of receiving the report. A preliminary contact investigation report must be sent to the State Department of Health no later than 4 months after the case is reported. Final reports containing completion-of-treatment summary statistics are due one year after the source case is reported.

There are nine steps in a contact investigation:

1. **Medical record review**. The first step is to review the TB patient's medical record, and to ask the physician about the patient's infectiousness. Knowing the degree of infectiousness is important in determining which contacts are at risk. The nurse collects information about the site of disease, the patient's TB symptoms, sputum smear and culture results, chest x-ray results, and TB treatment. Determining the period of infectiousness will help focus contact investigation efforts on those persons who were exposed while the patient was infectious. Although, there is no universal, well-established method to determine the period of infectiousness, the beginning of the period can be estimated by determining the date of onset of the patient's symptoms, particularly when coughing began. The presence of acid-fast bacilli in the sputum, cavitation on the chest x-ray, hemoptysis, and laryngeal involvement are factors that increase the degree of infectiousness.

2. **Patient interview**. The health care worker conducting the investigation should explain to the patient the goals of the contact investigation and why it is important to identify all possible contacts. For example, it should be explained that an investigation is important to find contacts who may be family, friends, coworkers, etc., who have TB infection or TB disease and need treatment. It is also important to develop the patient's trust. They must be treated with dignity and respect, and be assured that all information gathered will be kept confidential. The patient should also be educated, since they often have little or no knowledge about tuberculosis. Cultural misconceptions are common, and it may take a great deal of effort to overcome them. It is therefore critical during the interview for the health care worker to first determine the patient's level of understanding about TB and then work from that basis toward developing an accurate understanding. To be certain that the patient has a good understanding, the health care worker should ask the patient what he or she has understood. The best way to illicit information during the interview is to ask open-ended questions, i.e., who, what, where, when, why, and how. Below is a sample patient interview checklist:

    - Patient's name
    - Patient's address and phone number (if any) or names of shelters, if applicable
    - Location and date of the interview
    - Household members or others present at the interview
    - Patient's symptoms
    - Approximate date that each symptom began
    - Places the patient has been since symptoms began
        - Household or residence
        - Work or school
        - Leisure, recreation, or other social activities
    - Description of the patient's daily routine
    - Other-than-daily activities
    - Other sites visited less regularly during the period of infectiousness
    - Contacts identified (organized by site)
        - Household members, especially those who share the same living or sleeping space
        - Frequent guests or visitors
        - Co-workers, school classmates

- Friends and other social contacts
- Sexual partners

3. **Field investigation**. During the field investigation the places where the patient spent time are visited. The patient should be asked to identify all of the places he or she has been since the symptoms began, especially where the most time was spent. The easiest way to do this is to go over his or her daily routine. Common places include the patient's home, work place, social settings (church, bars, clubs, etc.), shelters, and car pools.

   In general, the following places are where patients may spend most of their time:

   - Household or other primary residence
   - Work or school
   - Leisure, recreational, and other social settings

   It is extremely important that patients be questioned about all three settings, not just their residence. They may not consider some settings as important, or there may be some settings they will be reluctant to discuss because of possible involvement in illegal or socially illicit activities, or a general distrust of authority figures. It is important to develop a rapport with the patient. If they wont' reveal any information at first, try again later. They will often tell you more the better they get to know and trust you.

   The patient should be asked who their contacts are and where they can be found so that they can be notified about their possible exposure to TB and asked to come to the health department for testing. It is often necessary to go to the contacts to offer testing.

4. **Risk assessment for TB transmission**. Using information about the patient's period of infectiousness, the environmental characteristics of the places where the patient spent time, and the characteristics of the contacts' exposure, the risk of TB transmission can be assessed. Contacts who spent time with the patient during the period of infectiousness are at higher risk for exposure and infection, especially if they had close, prolonged exposure in a small or crowded, poorly ventilated area. It is necessary to visit the home, work place, school, or other settings to assist in determining the risk of transmission.

5. **Decision about priority of contacts**. To make the most efficient use of time and resources, the contact investigation should be focused on those contacts who have the greatest risk for developing TB infection or active TB disease. Contacts to patients who were sputum smear-positive or with cavitary disease are at the highest risk. High priority contacts include those in any of the following categories:

- Household contacts
- Contacts living in congregate settings
- Contacts < 4 years of age
- Contacts with medical risk factors for progression to active disease
- Contacts exposed during certain medical procedures, such as bronchoscopy or autopsy
- ≥ 8 hours in a small, poorly ventilated space
- ≥ 16 hours in a small, well ventilated space
- ≥ 24 hours in a classroom size space
- ≥ 24 hours in a large open area

Medium-priority contacts include:

- Age ≥ 4 years and < 15 years
- 4 or more hours in a small space
- 8 or more hours in a classroom size space
- 50 or more hours in a large open space

Low priority contacts are those whose exposure duration and environment criteria fall below the threshold for medium priority

6. **Evaluation of contacts**. Interviewing and evaluating contacts must be done without jeopardizing the patient's confidentiality. When talking to the contacts, the health care worker should be careful not to inadvertently reveal clues about the index patient. The following strategies can be used to protect the confidentiality of the patient when his or her contacts are interviewed:

    - Use gender-neutral language, even if it requires using bad grammar. For example, "Somebody was diagnosed with TB, and you have been identified as a contact," rather than "A woman" or "A man."
    - The index case's health care worker, place and date of diagnosis, or hospitalization should not be mentioned.

- The environment in which the exposure occurred should not be mentioned. For example, say "You have been around somebody with TB" instead of "Somebody in your school has TB."

- The dates of exposure should not be specified.

- When following up on interjurisdictional referrals, the county or state that initiated the referral should not be mentioned.

- Do not violate confidentiality, even if contacts refuse to be evaluated until they have been told the index patient's identity.

7. **Contact Identification**. Once contacts are identified and screened for TB symptoms, a tuberculin skin test is placed. If the result is negative (< 5 mm), a second test is placed and read 10 weeks after contact has been broken with the source case. If the second test is negative, consider that person uninfected. If either test is positive (≥ 5 mm), a chest x-ray should be performed, along with any other appropriate diagnostic tests if TB symptoms are present.

   If the chest x-ray is abnormal, or if symptoms of TB are present, the next step is to perform appropriate diagnostic tests to determine if the contact has active TB disease. Three sputum specimens should be collected on consecutive days and sent to the laboratory for AFB stain and culture.

8. **Treatment and follow-up for contacts**. Contacts whose tuberculin skin test is ≥ 5 mm and who have active disease ruled out should begin and complete a course of treatment for latent TB infection. Contacts who have symptoms suggestive of TB, a positive sputum smear, or chest x-ray results suggestive of TB disease should begin treatment with the standard 4-drug anti-TB regimen, isolated, and monitored closely until active disease is either confirmed or ruled out.

   There are certain high-risk groups who should be treated for LTBI even if their initial tuberculin skin test is negative because they are at high risk for progressing rapidly to active disease if they are infected. These groups include:

   - Children < 4 years of age

   - Persons with HIV infection

   - Persons with other medical risk factors for progression to active diseased, e.g. diabetes mellitus, end-stage renal disease, and leukemia

   Treatment should begin once a chest x-ray has been done to rule out active disease. If the skin test given 10 weeks after contact is broken is < 5 mm, treatment can be discontinued. However, infants with a negative skin test should continue treatment until they are 6 months old, and then have the skin test repeated. If the

second skin test is ≥ 5 mm, the entire course of treatment should be completed. The adherence of all patients receiving treatment for LTBI or active disease must be closely monitored.

9. **Decision to expand testing**. Contacts should be tested in the order of their exposure time and risk, starting with the highest priority group. This method is known as the concentric circle approach (refer to appendix F). Evidence of recent TB transmission among the high-priority contacts, such as a high rate of new infections, TB infection in a young child, a documented contact skin test conversion, or a secondary case of TB disease, determines whether to expand the investigation to the next group of contacts. Decisions about expanding contact investigations to the other-than-close contact groups should be made by the appropriate clinical and supervisory staff based on an assessment of all available information, not on political pressure. If there is no evidence of recent TB transmission, the investigation should not be expanded. If there is recent evidence of transmission, the investigation should be expanded into the next group.

10. **Evaluation of contact investigation activities**. When the investigation is completed, an evaluation should be conducted with or by a supervisor to determine the following:

    - Were an appropriate number of contacts identified?
    - Were the highest priority contacts located and tested?
    - Was the investigation performed in all settings, i.e., household or residence, work or school, and leisure or recreational environments?
    - Was the investigation expanded appropriately?
    - Were contacts completely evaluated (including a second skin test, if necessary) and given appropriate therapy?
    - How many infected contacts completed a regimen of treatment for LTBI?
    - Did all identified TB cases complete an adequate treatment regimen?

Targeted Testing of High-Risk Groups

Who Should be Screened

Targeted testing programs are an important component of community TB control. These programs serve two functions: (1) to identify persons with latent TB infection (LTBI) who are at high risk for progressing to active disease and would benefit from treatment, and (2) to find persons who have clinical TB disease and need treatment. Targeted screening allows control and prevention activities to be directed to those groups who are

more likely to have risk factors for exposure to TB or for progression to active disease if infected. Mass screening programs for groups who are at low risk are not recommended and should be discouraged.

Screening for TB and use of the tuberculin skin test should be targeted to the following groups:

- Close contacts of persons known or suspected to have TB, i.e. those sharing the same household or other enclosed environments
- Foreign-born persons, including children, who are from countries where TB is common and who have not been screened since arriving in the U.S. A history of BCG vaccination **is not** a contraindication for TB skin testing.
- Persons infected with HIV
- Persons who have certain clinical conditions known to increase the risk for disease if infection occurs
- Persons with a history of inadequately treated TB
- Persons who inject illicit drugs
- Residents and employees of high-risk congregate settings (e.g., some hospitals and nursing homes, correctional facilities, mental institutions, other long-term care facilities, residential treatment facilities, and homeless shelters)
- Health-care workers who serve high-risk clients
- Some medically underserved, low-income populations, including high-risk racial and ethnic groups
- Infants, children, and adolescents exposed to adults in high-risk categories
- Locally defined high prevalence groups (substance abusers, migrant workers, the homeless)

Who Should Not be Screened

The following are examples of groups who should not be screened routinely for TB unless one or more of the above risk factors are present:

- Children who attend school or day care centers
- Foreign-born persons living in the U.S. who have been screened previously in the U.S

- Pregnant women
- Food service workers

School-based screening programs for TB among children were started in the 1950's when infection and disease rates were higher than at the present time. Indiana statutes requiring TB screening for school employees and school children were repealed in 1979 and 1983, respectively. Generalized screening of school children as a public health measure is not a cost-effective method of detecting or preventing cases of childhood TB and should be discontinued. Such testing involves screening large numbers of low-risk children with the unavoidable side effects of large numbers of false positive results and errors in skin test interpretation.

Pre-employment TB screening of food service workers is another practice that is not recommended. Tuberculosis is not a food-borne illness, and is not transmitted by cooking or eating utensils, dishes, or other inanimate objects.

The tuberculin skin test is the most important method available to detect latent TB infection, but it is not 100% specific for *M. tuberculosis*. Whole blood tests such as QuantiFERON®-TB are not in wide use. For these reasons, it is a better test when its use is restricted to high-risk individuals. There are fewer false positives, which means less money is spent on unnecessary diagnostic evaluation and treatment.

Screening of Immigrants and Refugees

TB screening for immigrants and refugees is an important component of targeted testing programs. Over half of all TB cases in the U.S., and a substantial number of cases in Indiana occur in persons born in countries where TB is common. Most of the foreign born cases in Indiana have been in the U.S. for less than 5 years.

A medical examination is mandatory for all refugees coming to the U.S. and all applicants outside the U.S. who are applying for an immigration visa. Aliens inside the United States who apply for adjustment of their immigration status to that of permanent resident are also required to undergo a medical examination. Aliens applying for non-immigrant visas (temporary admission) may be required to undergo a medical examination at the discretion of the consular officer overseas or the immigration officer at the U.S. port of entry if there is reason to suspect that an inadmissible health-related condition exists.

Screening abroad is performed by panel physicians, who are local physicians appointed by the U.S. Department of State. Applicants with an abnormal chest x-ray suggestive of active disease are required to submit three sputum specimens for acid-fast bacilli smears. Smear-negative persons are issued a category B-1 waiver, and are cleared for entry into the U.S. Smear-positive persons are not permitted to enter the U.S. until they are treated and become smear-negative. Immigrants and refugees with chest x-rays consistent with old, healed TB and negative sputum smears are issued class B-2 waivers.

Once they are in the U.S., immigrants and refugees with class B waivers must report to their local health departments for further screening in order to make a final determination of the applicant's TB status. The medical evaluation includes the following:

- A tuberculin skin test
- A repeat chest x-ray, which can be compared with the original film
- 3 sputum smears for AFB smear and culture if the repeat chest x-ray shows abnormalities suggestive of current or previous disease
- Begin treatment with the standard 4-drug regimen if active disease is suspected
- Encourage treatment for LTBI once active disease is ruled out

Immigrants who do not enter the U.S. on medical waivers, and those classified as foreign visitors are generally not required to be screened after arrival in the U.S. However, college students born outside the U.S. and who are not citizens or residents of this country must have a TB skin test performed in the U.S. prior to enrolling. However, those groups should be included in targeted testing programs.

Medical evaluations for aliens without medical waivers are usually performed by civil surgeons, who are appointed by the Bureau of Citizenship and Immigration Services (formerly the Immigration and Naturalization Service). Civil surgeons will occasionally evaluate those with class B waivers, but their role is usually limited to evaluating refugees, and other aliens who are applying for an adjustment to their immigration status.

10. Infection Control Practices

Determining Infectiousness

Patients diagnosed with or suspected of having pulmonary or laryngeal tuberculosis are considered to be infectious if they are

1. Coughing, are undergoing cough-inducing or aerosol generating procedures (e.g., sputum induction, bronchoscopy), or have sputum smears containing acid-fast bacilli; and

2. Not receiving therapy, have just started therapy, or have a poor clinical or bacteriologic response to therapy

Hospitalized patients may be discharged to their home while they are still sputum smear-positive, provided there are no previously unexposed persons in the home and the patient is on an appropriate drug regimen. Sputum smear-positive patients who are showing clinical improvement may return to work if they work outdoors and arrangements can be made to avoid sharing indoor facilities and other enclosed spaces (e.g., motor vehicles) with others.

Patients must no longer be infectious before being released from isolation (home or hospital) and returned to a congregate setting, e.g., general hospital ward, nursing home, jail, homeless shelter, college dormitories, or school. Patients who have drug-susceptible TB are no longer considered infectious if they meet all of the following criteria:

1. They are on adequate therapy;

2. There has been a significant clinical response to therapy, particularly resolution of the cough;

3. They have had three consecutive sputum smears that are negative for AFB and were collected at least 8 hours apart, with at least one specimen being collected early in the morning.

Patients should be monitored closely for response to therapy by sputum smear examinations at regular intervals, i.e., every one to two weeks, but no less frequently than monthly. Failure of symptoms to improve after 3-4 weeks of therapy is most commonly due to non-adherence to the treatment regimen. Patients who are on directly observed therapy and are not improving should be monitored closely for drug resistance and decreased serum drug levels. Patients who self-administer their medications should be placed on DOT and monitored closely.

In patients with drug-resistant TB, infectiousness may last for several weeks or even months. Response to therapy must be closely monitored. For patients who are hospitalized, TB isolation should be maintained until infectiousness is ruled out.

With the exception of laryngeal TB, extrapulmonary TB is not infectious under normal circumstances, although rare instances of transmission from draining skin and tissue abscesses have been documented.

There is no specific length of time following the initiation of therapy that a patient is considered to be no longer infectious. Over the years, two weeks of treatment was used as an unofficial benchmark for determining how long a patient should be treated before being considered no longer infectious. However, old studies and observations that supported that statement were not carefully controlled. Other studies have shown that transmission can still occur after two weeks of treatment. While two weeks (and possibly less) is probably sufficient for a patient whose pre-treatment sputum specimens were negative for acid-fast bacilli, that presumption would probably not be valid for all AFB smear-positive patients. The fact is that it is not known at what point in time a patient is no longer infectious. Therefore, the previously mentioned criteria should be used without regard to arbitrary time frames.

Developing an Infection Control Program

An effective, comprehensive TB infection control program requires the early detection, isolation, and treatment of persons suspected of having infectious TB. Programs should be based on a careful and thorough assessment of risk for TB transmission in the setting or facility. The risk assessment is an ongoing evaluation that is based on the following:

- The number of TB patients seen or admitted each year, as well as the number of TB cases reported in the community or referral area
- The development of TB-specific patient indicators
- The identification of high-risk areas
- The availability of environmental controls and the use of personal respiratory protection
- The use of evaluation tools
- The risk classification is based upon the number of TB patients admitted or seen in the facility

There are three control measures that must be put into place to achieve program goals. They are administrative controls, engineering controls, and personal respiratory protection.

1. Administrative Controls

Administrative controls are policies, procedures, and work practices that are implemented to reduce the risk of exposing uninfected persons to infectious TB disease. Health care

facilities or other settings in which there is a risk of occupational exposure to TB must have guidelines for the prompt detection of suspected TB cases. Administrative controls include the following:

- Written policies and protocols to ensure the rapid identification, isolation, diagnostic evaluation, and treatment of persons likely to have TB
- Implementing effective work practices
- Education, training, and counseling employees about TB
- Policies for pre-employment and, if necessary, periodic screening for TB infection and disease for workers who have an occupational risk for exposure.

Tuberculin Skin Test Frequency

The frequency with which health care facility personnel are tested should be determined in accordance with the most current infection control guidelines. The risk of TB transmission in an inpatient or outpatient setting will vary according to the number of TB patients seen or admitted. Regardless of a facility's risk, all personnel who will have patient contact should receive a tuberculin skin test (TST) at the time of employment for the purposes of establishing a reliable baseline assessment, unless they have documentation of either (1) a negative TST within the last year, or (2) a previously positive TST.

Personnel who work in low-risk facilities need not undergo repeat TB skin testing unless there is exposure to a case of infectious TB. Most health facilities in Indiana are low risk and annual skin testing is generally not warranted. Those who work in greater-than-low risk facilities should be screened annually.

Immediate Patient Management

The risk of transmission will vary, depending on the setting (i.e., inpatient versus outpatient), and the prevalence of TB in the area, but the management of patients known or suspected of having TB should not vary.

In an inpatient setting, patients suspected of having TB should be placed in an isolation room with negative pressure as soon as possible. Isolated patients should be given a surgical mask to wear when they leave the room for any reason. In an outpatient setting, the patient should be isolated from other patients and also be given a surgical mask to wear and instructed to keep it on. Regardless of the setting, these masks are limited in their ability to contain expelled droplet nuclei, especially when they become wet. Therefore, the patient must also be instructed to cover their mouth and nose when coughing or sneezing. A small towel, washcloth, or handkerchief is effective in containing the expelled droplet nuclei.

Following a thorough and timely diagnostic evaluation, treatment should be started as soon as possible.

2. Engineering Controls

Engineering controls are used to prevent the spread and reduce the concentration of infectious droplet nuclei. These systems are based primarily on the use of adequate ventilation systems, which may be supplemented with high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration and ultraviolet germicidal irradiation (UVGI) in high-risk areas.

Negative-pressure isolation rooms and sputum collection booths are commonly used systems in inpatient settings. These ventilation systems are designed to produce and maintain negative pressure and to exhaust air to the outside. Negative air pressure and ventilation must be monitored and properly maintained to insure proper airflow and air exchange rates.

HEPA filters can be used in ventilation systems to remove droplet nuclei from the air. They can be installed in ventilation ducts to filter air that is going to be recirculated into the room or to other parts of the facility. The efficacy of portable HEPA filters has not been adequately evaluated. All HEPA filters must be carefully installed and meticulously maintained to insure effectiveness.

UVGI may be used as a supplement to ventilation systems. However, there are special considerations for its use:

- It is a supplement to, not a substitute for ventilation systems
- It is not a substitute for negative-pressure rooms
- It may substitute for HEPA filtration systems when air is being recirculated
- Safety, occupational exposure, and maintenance guidelines must be followed

The use of engineering controls is appropriate for outpatient settings, such as medical offices, that provide care to high-risk populations, as well as high-risk non-medical settings such as homeless shelters.

3. Personal Respiratory Protection

The third component of an infection control program is the use of personal respiratory protection. Personal respirators are designed to prevent the inhalation of infectious droplet nuclei by health care workers who work in certain high-risk settings, e.g., isolation rooms, and areas where cough-inducing procedures are performed. EMS workers who transport patients known or suspected of having infectious TB should wear a respirator. Health care workers should only use personal (particulate) respirators that are approved for use by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH). These

respirators must have the ability to filter particles 1 μm in size with a filter efficiency of ≥ 95% (i.e., filter leakage of ≤ 5%). These respirators carry the NIOSH designation of N95.

Do not confuse particulate respirators and surgical masks. Surgical masks are designed to prevent the person wearing it from expelling respiratory secretions. Particulate respirators are designed to filter the air before it is inhaled.

11. MYCOBACTERIA OTHER THAN TUBERCULOSIS

Mycobacteria other than tuberculosis (MOTT) refer to those species other than those found in the MTB complex. Also known as atypical, or non-tuberculous mycobacteria (NTM), at least 54 species of have been identified. *M. leprae*, which causes leprosy (Hansen's Disease), is the only species with a human reservoir. The rest of the atypical species are found in the soil, water, and various animal species. Many can cause disease in susceptible hosts that is indistinguishable from tuberculosis. Their prevalence and incidence are difficult to characterize because infections due to NTM rarely cause death, and, because there is no evidence to support transmission from person-to-person, reporting to state and local health departments is not required.

The pathogenesis of NTM infection is not clear, but is thought to be similar to tuberculosis. Pulmonary patients probably inhale the aerosolized organisms from infected soil, dust, or natural water supplies. Nosocomial transmission has also been documented by way of hospitals' hot water systems. In any event, disease due to NTM is occurring with greater frequency, primarily in adults with pre-existing pulmonary disease, including those who have been treated for tuberculosis. Lymphadenitis due to *M. avium* and *M. scrofulaceum* frequently occur in young children. Pulmonary and disseminated disease due to *M. avium-intracellulare* complex and *M. kansasii* occur in patients with HIV infection.

Atypical mycobacteria are classified according to colony morphology, pigment production, and rate of growth:

- Slow Growers (> 7 days)

  Group I, Photochromogens (color forms only with light)
  - *M. marinum*
  - *M. kansasii*
  - *M. szulgai* (at 25° C.)

  Group II, Scotochromogens (color forms even in the dark)
  - *M. scrofulaceum*
  - *M. szulgai* (at 37° C.)
  - *M. xenopi*
  - *M. gordonae*

  Group III, Nonphotochromogens (little or no color in either darkness or light)
  - *M. avium-intracellulare* complex
  - *M. ulcerans*
  - *M. haemophilum*
  - *M. malmöense*

- Rapid Growers (< 7 days)

  Group IV (little to no color; colonies grow within 48 hours)
  M. fortuitum-chelonae complex
  M. smegmatis

Major Species of MOTT

Mycobacterium kansasii

Infection with *M. kansasii* may confer immunity to subsequent challenge with other mycobacteria, and cross-reactions with other skin test reagents are common. *Mycobacterium kansasii* has been identified as an agent of disease in nearly all parts of the world. It has been implicated in illness throughout the United States, but the highest incidence occurs in the Southwest and Midwest. Infection is relatively rare in children, even in families with cases in adults.

Mycobacterium kansasii characteristically produces a chronic lung infection that closely resembles pulmonary tuberculosis. Symptoms tend to be somewhat milder than in tuberculosis, and they may be totally overshadowed by symptoms of underlying chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Most often disease is progressive, but in occasional patients it may remain stable for prolonged periods.

Mycobacterium marinum

Mycobacterium marinum inhabits water and marine organisms. Infection of humans follows trauma, often minor, in swimming pools, aquariums, or natural bodies of water. Infection may also follow trauma from fish spines or crustaceans. Disease is almost always confined to superficial, cooler body tissues, most often on the extremities. A spectrum of histopathologic responses has been observed that ranges from frank suppuration to granuloma formation.

Mycobacterium simiae

Mycobacterium simiae has been isolated from monkeys in captivity and in the wild. It may also be recovered from water. It is a relatively infrequent cause of pulmonary infections. Cases have occurred in both monkey handlers and in individuals having no association with these primates. Most patients have given histories of bronchopulmonary disease. The disease is very difficult to distinguish pathologically and clinically from tuberculosis or other mycobacterial lung infections.

Mycobacterium scrofulaceum

Mycobacterium scrofulaceum is a ubiquitous organism that frequently contaminates specimens, reagents, or standing water. The organisms also readily colonize respiratory secretions of well children and of adult patients with nonmycobacterial disease. *M. scrofulaceum*

is a relatively frequent cause of lymphadenitis and an occasional cause of disease in other tissues. Lymphadenitis due to this organism occurs most commonly in children aged 1-3 years.

Mycobacterium szulgai

Mycobacterium szulgai can cause pulmonary disease in patients with pre-existing COPD. It has recently been implicated in surgical wound infections, and has been isolated from hospital ice machines.

***Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare complex* (MAC)**

Microorganisms of the *M. avium* and *M. intracellulare* groups are so similar that they are considered collectively. *M. avium-intracellulare* has been isolated from soil, water, animals, and birds. These organisms can be aerosolized in significant numbers above bodies of water, which suggests that inhalation may be a route for human infection. These organisms are distributed worldwide. Accurate information on their distribution in the United States is not available since there is no mandatory reporting of nontuberculous disease. The lungs are the most common site of infection, with pre-existing bronchopulmonary disease a frequent finding.

Infection with MAC has become one of the most common complications of AIDS. The portal of entry among AIDS patients appears to be the gastrointestinal tract rather than the lungs.

Although pulmonary disease similar to that in non-AIDS patients may be seen, most patients present with a gradual onset of fever, night sweats, anorexia, weight loss, and progressive weakness. A gastrointestinal syndrome consisting of abdominal pain, diarrhea, and malabsorption associated with mycobacterial invasion of the intestinal tract has been reported.

Mycobacterium xenopi

Mycobacterium xenopi has been isolated from hot and cold water, including sources in the hospital, as well as from other environmental sources. Most infections have resembled pulmonary tuberculosis.

Mycobacterium malmöense

Most infections caused by *M. malmöense* involve the lung. Pulmonary disease is clinically and radiographically indistinguishable from tuberculosis. Pre-existing chronic lung disease is frequently present.

Mycobacterium ulcerans

M. ulcerans is a cause of chronic, cutaneous ulcers (Buruli ulcer). The organism may cause extensive ulcers, primarily on the extensor surfaces of the extremities.

Rare Pathogens

M. gordonae, M. terrae, M. asiaticum, M. gastri, M. thermo-resistible, M flavescens, M. smegmatis, and *M. paratuberculosis* are species that are occasionally isolated from clinical specimens and usually regarded as nonpathogenic commensals or environmental contaminants. All but the last-named can occasionally cause pulmonary and extrapulmonary disease in humans. Therapeutic experience is limited, but chemotherapy has appeared to be efficacious in many of these cases. These organisms can no longer be ignored, even though clinical infection is still a very rare event. Strict diagnostic criteria should be fulfilled before decisions regarding treatment are made.

Rapidly Growing Mycobacteria

M. fortuitum and *M. chelonae* are the major pathogens in this group, although closely related organisms have also been implicated in human disease. These ubiquitous organisms are recovered readily from soil, dust, and water. They have been isolated from tap water, municipal water supplies, moist areas in hospitals, aquariums, domestic animals, and marine life. Most infections are associated with trauma, surgery (particularly postoperative sternotomy infections) indwelling catheters, or injections. Pulmonary infection may be acquired by aspiration. There is no evidence to support person-to-person transmission.

Reservoirs of Mycobacteria with Relationship to Human Disease and the Environment

Species	Human Pathogen	Reservoir
M. tuberculosis	Yes	Humans
M. bovis	Yes	Humans, cattle, other mammals
M. leprae	Yes	Humans
M. kansasii	Yes	Water, cattle, swine (rarely)
M. marinum	Yes	Fish, water
M. simiae	Yes	Primates, possibly water
M. scrofulaceum	Yes	Soil, water, moist or liquid foodstuffs
M. szulgai	Yes	Unknown (probably water)
M. gordonae	Very rarely	Tap water, swimming pools, soil
M. flavescens	Very rarely	Soil, water
M. avium-intracellulare	Yes	Soil, water, swine, cattle, birds, fowl
M. xenopi	Yes	Hot water systems
M. ulcerans	Yes	Unknown
M. gastri	Very rarely	Soil, water
M. terrae	Very rarely	Soil, water
M. triviale	No	Soil, water
M. fortuitum	Yes	Soil, water, animals, marine life
M. chelonae	Yes	Soil, water, animals, marine life
M. smegmatis	Very rarely	Moist surfaces, urogenital flora

Clinical Sites of Infection with Atypical Mycobacteria

	Common Organisms	**Less Common Organisms**	
Lung	*M. avium* complex	*M. gordonae*	*M. xenopi*
	M. kansasii	*M. malmöense*	*M. fortuitum*
	M. abscessus	*M. simiae*	
		M. szulgai	
		M. smegmatis	
Skin and soft tissue	*M. marinum*	*M. avium* complex	
	M. fortuitum	*M. kansasii*	*M. ulcerans*
	M. abscessus	*M. smegmatis*	*M. haemophilum*
	M. chelonae	*M. nonchromogenicum*	
Lymph nodes	*M. avium* complex	*M. kansasii*	
	M. scrofulaceum	*M. fortuitum*	
		M. abscessus	
		M. chelonae	
		M. marinum	
Postoperative catheter-related	*M. fortuitum*	*M. chelonae*	
	M. abscessus	*M. chelonae*-like organisms	
Disseminated	*M. avium* complex	*M. xenopi*	
	M. kansasii	*M. genavense*	
	M. chelonae		
	M. abscessus		
	M. haemophilum		
Bone and joint	*M. avium* complex	*M. kansasii*	
	M. marinum	*M. chelonae*	
	M. abscessus	*M. haemophilum*	
	M. fortuitum		

12. Legal Aspects of Patient Management

The legal responsibility for ensuring the treatment and case management of TB patients rests with the local health department. Treating the patient with tuberculosis not only cures the patient, but protects the public as well. The vast majority of TB patients are cooperative and adhere to their treatment regimens. It is when patients do not adhere to the prescribed plan that they become a threat to the health and safety of the public. Indiana has laws that enable local health officials to ensure that the non-adherent patient complies with the applicable communicable disease control laws.

Before imposing restrictions, there must be either (1) a laboratory or a clinical diagnosis of pulmonary or laryngeal tuberculosis, or (2) a reasonable suspicion that an individual has tuberculosis in an infectious state. Disease in an extra-pulmonary site (except the larynx) without concurrent pulmonary involvement would not be considered a threat to the public.

If a patient is *suspected* of having TB, you must have sufficient evidence to support your suspicion that the person has TB disease. Such evidence may include

- TB symptoms in a person who is a recent close contact to a case of infectious TB
- TB disease or infection in a child, in which case the family members and other adults in contact with the child need to be evaluated
- TB symptoms accompanied by a sputum smear that is positive for acid-fast bacilli

When there is sufficient and compelling evidence that an individual may have infectious TB and poses a danger to public health, the local health officer may ask the patient to consent to testing. This testing could be a skin test, collecting sputum samples, or receiving a chest x-ray. If the patient refuses to undergo a medical examination, the local health officer may compel the testing or examination only upon a court order based on clear and convincing evidence of a serious and present health threat to others posed by the patient (see IC 16-41-6-2).

General Guidelines

- Maintain a patient file with all relevant information supporting a confirmed or suspected diagnosis of TB.
- Assess the situation first-hand, which means a visit to the home or wherever the patient may be found.
- Educate the patient and assure understanding. Be sure to repeat and reinforce your message so the patient knows what is expected.

- Attempt to gain voluntary cooperation from the patient. Use the educational approach, offer incentives or enablers, and document all interventions and patient responses.

- When a problem arises in managing a TB case or suspect, the public health nurse should advise the health officer of the patient's recalcitrant behavior and document all interventions. The key to managing any patient is documentation. Remember, if it's not documented, it wasn't done.

- If it is determined that the patient is not adhering to the treatment plan, or is refusing to cooperate, legal intervention may be necessary to assure compliance. After informing the health officer and county attorney of the situation, call the ISDH TB Control Program to report the difficulty and that more aggressive actions are being considered.

Documenting Non-compliant or Recalcitrant Behavior

Once the patient is shown to have suspected or confirmed TB, the next step is to demonstrate that the patient poses a health risk to the general public. Non-compliance means that the patient is not following the prescribed treatment plan for whatever reasons. Recalcitrance means that the patient knowingly refuses to follow the treatment plan and knowingly puts others at risk. If either situation occurs, the local health department must act to prevent further disease transmission.

A person with TB is a serious and present danger when:

- They refuse to take their medication;

- They engage repeatedly in behavior that has been demonstrated to transmit TB or that indicates a careless disregard for the safety others;

- The patient's past behavior or statements indicate that he or she will engage in behavior that transmits TB to others; or

- The patient fails to follow voluntary health restrictions to prevent disease transmission.

The public health nurse must thoroughly document all non-compliant or recalcitrant patient behavior. Key items in this summary should include, but not be limited to:

- Documentation of tuberculin skin test results, if done, as well as chest x-ray and laboratory results, including drug susceptibility tests;

- Clinical observations and symptoms;

- Contacts or evidence of transmission to contacts;

- Place and type of employment, if applicable;
- Treatment records, home visit records, and clinical progress notes, and a record of physicians' appointments;
- Social and family history;
- Interventions attempted by the nurse;
- Patient response to nurse's attempts to seek compliance;
- Anything else that demonstrates non-compliance with medical treatment.

Carefully document any statements the patient makes that would cause you to think he or she is not going to follow your instructions. For example, if the patient refused to produce a sputum sample or misses a physician's appointment, document it. Your nursing notes should also include non-verbal responses, such as a door being slammed in your face, missed appointments, or any other actions that could serve as indicators of future behavior. Document patient use of alcohol and drugs. These notes reflect the facts as you observed them, not hearsay from a third party. *In the event that court action is necessary, your nursing notes may become part of the legal record.*

This documentation must show that the patient poses a serious and present danger to health, has engaged in behavior that transmits TB to others, or that his or her behavior or past statements indicate that the patient will engage in such behavior.

Local Health Agreement

Before imposing formal health restrictions, the local health officer must meet with the patient and request that he or she voluntarily comply with the health restrictions. This request can be fairly informal at this point. An example would be a verbal or written agreement with the local health officer that the patient agrees to comply with the specified restrictions. Be sure to document this event if done verbally. Verbal agreements should be a routine part of the case management process.

A written health agreement can be issued by the county without state intervention. This agreement should be signed and dated by both the patient (and/or guardian) and the nurse or health officer. A sample health agreement is available at the end of this section.

A health agreement is used to ensure that the patient has a basic understanding of TB, as well as the importance of adhering to the prescribed treatment plan. Often, this step is sufficient to gain cooperation and compliance since the patient agrees to very specific instructions. This step is also less intimidating than other measures.

Local Health Officer's Order

The local health officer is authorized by state statutes to take whatever measures are necessary to control the spread of communicable diseases. Examples of situations for which a local health officer may issue an order to the patient include:

- The patient refuses to remain isolated until he or she is no longer infectious;
- Refusal to take medications as directed;
- Refusal to provide follow-up sputum specimens;
- Refusal of a TB suspect to comply with a medical evaluation;
- Refusal to complete a course of curative therapy.

If a patient refuses to comply with the order, the local health officer may ask the court to impose any necessary restrictions on the patient, such as home isolation. The local health officer may undertake these initiatives without state intervention.

Health Directive

A health directive (see IC 16-18-2-166) is a written statement that is presented to a patient by a designated health official (see IC 16-18-2-93) outlining the restrictive measures that the patient must comply with. The local health officer must be appointed as the designated health official by either the State Health Commissioner or the designated Assistant Commissioner.

The health directive may provide for actions that the local health officer is authorized to perform independently. However, the difference between a health directive and an order issued independently by the local health officer is that the health directive may also provide for emergency detention without a hearing. Both the designated health official and the patient sign this document and copies are provided to both parties. If the patient refuses to sign the document, make a note such as "patient refuses to sign," and the nurse and health officer sign as a witness to that refusal.

The county attorney manages the legal portion of this process based on the facts provided by the health department. The ISDH Office of Legal Affairs is available for consultation. Other county officials are notified as necessary.

A health directive would be appropriate if the patient is a flight risk, has refused orders from the local health officer, or has violated court orders.

Filing a Petition for Restrictions

This part of the process involves the court system, and is used when other measures have failed. The local health official presents the case to a judge who decides if any restrictions should be imposed on the patient. The county attorney will be the best guide through the steps.

A petition for restrictions may be filed without state supervision in accordance with IC 16-41-9-1.

A petition for restrictions is based upon a showing of clear and convincing evidence of the serious and present health threat posed by the individual.

The county attorney files an order to keep the pleadings confidential. This order ensures that the patient's name is not used in public documents.

Based on the relative threat the patient poses to public health, local health officials will determine the least restrictive, but medically necessary measures to take. Some specific medical procedures are listed in 410 IAC 1-2.3 (the Indiana Communicable Disease Reporting Rule). Some of the restrictions that the court may order include the following:

- Undergo medically necessary tests;
- Complete a course of curative therapy;
- Submit to directly observed therapy;
- Notify or appear before designated health officials to verify health status;
- Cease and desist conduct which constitutes a health threat to others;
- Be monitored by an electronic monitoring device;
- Live part-time or full-time in a supervised setting;
- Comply with any combination of the remedies considered appropriate by the local health officer.

A petition for restrictions may also require detention or isolation. If the situation warrants these measures, they may be included in this petition as well as the location where the action is to occur and for how long. Detention or isolation usually occurs in a hospital, the home, or other suitable facility.

When a petition for restrictions is filed, the patient is entitled to be represented by an attorney. A hearing date will be set and the patient will receive notice of the hearing. If the patient and the designated health official come to an agreement, the order may be carried out

without going to a hearing. If there is no agreement, the matter will proceed to a hearing. The hearing shall be closed to the public at the patient's request.

The public health nurse or local health officer may be asked to testify in court or to sign an affidavit. The information needed will depend on the seriousness of the case and what restrictions are being requested. Nursing notes and other clinical documentation may be required as evidence in court and will be subject to examination along with possible testimony. The county attorney will advise you.

Imposition of Restrictions

- The judge issues an order and the order is carried out.
- If so ordered, the county health official may be required to submit progress notes to the court, especially in cases where detention has been ordered. Follow the court order very carefully.
- If the patient is already under detention and leaves the premises, the county sheriff is notified and requested to arrest and return the patient to the place of detention. Ensure that law enforcement personnel are aware of the need to wear personal respiratory protection.
- If the patient meets the criteria for release as specified in the court order, he or she is released from the restrictions by the judge. Release from restrictions may require a hearing or an attorney's report to the judge.
- The public health nurse continues to assess the patient's compliance with the court order and medical instructions. The goal is to render the patient non-infectious and continue medications until the disease is cured.
- Continue to document how the patient responds to the restrictions as well as clinical response.

Emergency Detention

IC 16-41-9-11 provides for emergency detention should it become necessary to act very quickly in order to protect the health of the public. Imposing emergency detention is an extremely serious matter. In these instances, the court may order a health officer or law enforcement officer to take a person into custody and transport the person to an appropriate facility for observation, testing, diagnosis, care, treatment, and if necessary, temporary detention. TB detention generally occurs in a hospital equipped to manage infectious TB patients. Imposing emergency detention requires a designated health official to be appointed by ISDH.

Emergency detention is not the first step in disease control, but at times it may become necessary. You should always seek voluntary compliance from the patient before resorting

to more aggressive legal measures. This option is exercised only in cases of emergency when all other measures have failed. Because an emergency order is of very short duration by law, a regular petition for restrictions must also be filed at the time of the emergency petition or shortly thereafter.

If emergency detention is to be the course of action, or if it appears that this option should be made available to the county officials, you must:

- Contact the State TB Control Program prior to acting. You will be required to submit written documentation to support emergency detention.

- ISDH will provide a letter signed by the state health commissioner's authorized agent that designates the local health officer as the designated health official.

- A court order may be issued in an *ex parte* proceeding on an affidavit of the designated health official. An *ex parte* proceeding means that the patient does not have to be present at the hearing and the health official states what restrictions are necessary to protect public health. The affidavit must set forth the specific facts on which the order is sought and must be served on the patient immediately upon apprehension or detention.

- Once the court determines that there is probable cause of serious danger to the health of others and a risk of irreparable harm from the patient's actions, the court can immediately order any restrictions necessary to protect the public health.

- The patient must have a court hearing within 72 hours to determine if the detention should continue. These 72 hours exclude Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays.

- The patient must be served notice of the hearing at least 24 hours before the hearing is to occur. The notice must specify the time, date, and place of hearing; the grounds and underlying facts on which the emergency hold is sought; the patient's right to appear at the hearing and cross-examine witnesses; and the patient's right to court appointed counsel.

- The court may order a continuance of the emergency detention if the court finds that the patient poses an imminent health threat to others if released. However, the emergency hold may not continue longer than five (5) days unless a petition is filed to implement medically necessary procedures to protect the public's health. The hearing for the petition for restrictions must occur not more than five (5) days after the filing of the petition, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays.

Examples when emergency detention would be used include:

- A patient who is a flight risk

- Failure to comply with court-ordered restrictions

- If an infectious patient cannot be effectively isolated at home
- Threats of violence the health care personnel

Costs of Care or Treatment

If the patient cannot pay the full cost of care and other sources of public or private funding are not available, the county is responsible for the cost under IC 16-41-9-13. Even if the care, treatment, and/or detention is court-ordered, the county is still responsible for costs incurred.

Examples of Legal Documents

The next several pages contain examples of the following:

- Health agreement;
- Health directives;
- Sections of the Indiana Code that apply to communicable disease control;
- Abridged version of the Communicable Disease Reporting Rule.

(YOUR LETTERHEAD)

TUBERCULOSIS HEALTH AGREEMENT

I, _____(Patient's Name)_____, Date of Birth _____(Patient's DOB)_____ understand the serious consequences of not taking medication for tuberculosis (TB), including the spread of disease to my family, friends, and others around me. I realize that if I take only some of my medicine, the germs may become resistant and difficult, if not impossible, to treat. Therefore, I do hereby agree to be present at the ____(Local Health Department's Name or Doctor's Name)___ clinic for my appointments and to take this medication:

DAILY _____ TWICE WEEKLY _____ THREE TIMES WEEKLY

ON: MONDAY ___ TUESDAY ___ WEDNESDAY __ THURSDAY ___ FRIDAY

FOR: _____ WEEKS _____ MONTHS

I will notify this health department if I plan to move so that a referral can be made to the new county and state so that treatment can continue without interruption. If I move unexpectedly, I will go immediately to the health department in that city or state with my medicine bottles for refills.

Although it may not be possible to avoid all side effects, I will talk to the nurse if I think I may be having problems with the medication so that we can work together. This contract is a legal warning stating the medical recommendations required for the treatment of potentially communicable TB.

Patient's (or Authorized Adult's) Signature Date

Name of Authorized Adult If Not Patient Relationship

Address, City, State, Zip Code

Public Health Nurse's Name Date

SAMPLE 1

CONFIDENTIAL

HEALTH DIRECTIVE

TO: ADDRESS:

RECEIVED:

You have been diagnosed with a dangerous communicable disease (as defined under Indiana Code 16-18-2-91, 16-41-2-1, and 410 Indiana Administrative Code 1-2, 1-2(d)), namely pulmonary tuberculosis. Pursuant to the authority given to the Indiana State Health Commissioner under 16-41-7, 16-41-9, 16-18-2-93, and 16-18-2-166, I have been appointed a designated health official in this matter.

Therefore, under the foregoing authority, I hereby issue this health directive and order you to:

1. Remain in isolation (in your hospital room with the door closed) until you no longer pose a public health risk. You must follow your physician's orders regarding treatment and medication. If for any reasons your medical condition requires you to leave your room, you must wear a mask covering your mouth and nose and be escorted by hospital personnel.

2. Upon release from the hospital, you must submit sputum samples as directed by your physician or personnel of the Public Health Division. You must take your medications as ordered by your physician under the direct supervision of the Public Health Nurse.

Your failure to comply with this Directive will result in court action against you.

Issued this _____ day of the month of _____ of the year _____.

_____ _____

Designated Health Official Signature Patient Signature

SAMPLE 2

CONFIDENTIAL

HEALTH DIRECTIVE

TO: ADDRESS:

RECEIVED:

You are hereby notified that it has been determined that your behavior is a serious and present danger to the health of others in that you have reportedly engaged in behavior that has been demonstrated epidemiologically to transmit a dangerous communicable disease, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; and have engaged in behavior that indicates a careless disregard for the transmission of the disease to others. Further, your past behavior and statements indicate an imminent danger that you will continue to engage in behavior that transmits *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* to others.

Pursuant to the authority given to _____, M.D., Designated Health Official appointed by the Indiana State Health Commissioner under IC 16-18-2-93, this Health Directive is hereby issued:

You are prohibited from any act known epidemiologically to spread *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and are hereby required to comply with the following directions:

1. Collecting three early morning sputum specimens on _____, _____, and _____ using containers provided by the County Health Department each morning as directed. You must also collect further specimens as required by the County Health Department.

2. Taking your medications as ordered by your physician under the direct supervision of the public health nurse.

3. Protecting others by remaining isolated in your residence; covering your mouth and nose when communicating with any person or when you leave your residence for necessary medical care.

If sputum specimens are positive, you must comply with your physician's recommendations to be admitted to the hospital at the time recommended and arranged by the physician.

Your failure or refusal to comply with this Health Directive may result in the filing of a court action under IC 16-41-9-1 and/or IC 16-49-1-11 to obtain an order for restrictions upon you to protect the public's health.

Issued this _____ day of the month of _____ of the year _____.

_____ _____

Designated Health Official Signature Patient Signature

Indiana Communicable Disease Laws

IC 16-18-2-49
Carrier
Sec. 49. "Carrier", for purposes of IC 16-41, means a person who has:
(1) tuberculosis in a communicable stage; or
(2) another dangerous communicable disease.

IC 16-18-2-93
Designated Health Official
Sec. 93. "Designated health official", for purposes of IC 16-41, means:
(1) the state health commissioner;
(2) an assistant state health commissioner; or
(3) a person designated by the state health commissioner or assistant state health commissioner to implement IC 16-41 in a specific situation.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.1.

IC 16-18-2-166
Health directive
Sec. 166. "Health directive", for purposes of IC 16-41, means:
(1) a written statement; or
(2) in an emergency, an oral statement followed by a written statement within seventy-two (72) hours;
to a carrier issued by a designated health official under IC 16-41.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.1.

IC 16-20-1-19
Enforcement
Sec. 19. Local health officers shall enforce the health laws, ordinances, orders, rules, and regulations of the officer's own and superior boards of health.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.3.

IC 16-20-1-21
Communicable disease control; powers
Sec. 21. Each local health board has the responsibility and authority to take any action authorized by statute or rule of the state department to control communicable diseases. The board of each local health department or a designated representative may make sanitary and health inspections to carry out this chapter and IC 16-20-8.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.3.

IC 16-41-2-2
Reporting of required information
Sec. 2. Each:
(1) licensed physician;
(2) administrator of a hospital licensed under IC 16-21-2 or the administrator's representative; or

(3) director of a medical laboratory or the director's representative;
shall report to the local or state health officer designated by the state department the information required to be reported by the rules adopted under section 1 of this chapter.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-2-4
Waiver of physician-patient privilege
Sec. 4. A patient's privilege with respect to a physician under IC 34-46-3-1 is waived regarding information reported to a local or state health officer under this chapter.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24. Amended by P.L.1-1998, SEC.121.

IC 16-41-5-2
Investigations of carriers; intervention
Sec. 2. The health officer may make an investigation of each carrier of a dangerous communicable disease to determine whether the environmental conditions surrounding the carrier or the conduct of the carrier requires intervention by the health officer or designated health official to prevent the spread of disease to others.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-6-2
Informed consent; court-ordered examinations
Sec. 2. (a) As used in this section, "informed consent" means authorization for physical examination, made without undue inducement or any form of force, fraud, constraint, deceit, duress, or coercion after the following:
(1) A fair explanation of the examination, including the purpose, potential uses, limitations, and the fair meaning of the examination results.
(2) A fair explanation of the procedures to be followed, including the following:
(A) The voluntary nature of the examination.
(B) The right to withdraw consent to the examination process at any time.
(C) The right to anonymity to the extent provided by law with respect to participation in the examination and disclosure of examination results.
(D) The right to confidential treatment to the extent provided by law of information identifying the subject of the examination and the results of the examination.
(b) If the state health commissioner, the state health commissioner's legally authorized agent, or local health official has reasonable grounds to believe that an individual may have a communicable disease or other disease that is a danger to health, the state health commissioner, the state health commissioner's legally authorized agent, or local health officer may ask the individual for written informed consent to be examined to prevent the transmission of the disease to other individuals.
(c) If the individual, when requested, refuses such an examination, the state health commissioner, the state health commissioner's legally authorized agent, or local health officer may compel the examination only upon a court order based on clear and convincing evidence of a serious and present health threat to others posed by the individual.
(d) A hearing held under this section shall be held in camera at the request of the individual.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-6-3
Violations
Sec. 3. (a) Except as otherwise provided, a person who recklessly violates or fails to comply with this chapter commits a Class B misdemeanor.
(b) Each day a violation continues constitutes a separate offense.

IC 16-41-7-2
Reporting of persons posing serious and present danger or being at risk
Sec. 2. (a) A carrier is a "serious and present danger to the health of others" under the following conditions:
(1) The carrier engages repeatedly in a behavior that has been demonstrated epidemiologically (as defined by rules adopted by the state department under IC 4-22-2) to transmit a dangerous communicable disease or that indicates a careless disregard for the transmission of the disease to others.
(2) The carrier's past behavior or statements indicate an imminent danger that the carrier will engage in behavior that transmits a dangerous communicable disease to others.
(3) The carrier has failed or refused to carry out the carrier's duty to warn under section 1 of this chapter.
(b) A person who has reasonable cause to believe that a person:
(1) is a serious and present danger to the health of others as described in subsection (a);
(2) has engaged in noncompliant behavior; or
(3) is suspected of being a person at risk (as described in section 1 of this chapter);
may report that information to a health officer.
(c) A person who makes a report under subsection (b) in good faith is not subject to liability in a civil, an administrative, a disciplinary, or a criminal action.
(d) A person who knowingly or recklessly makes a false report under subsection (b) is civilly liable for actual damages suffered by a person reported on and for punitive damages.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-7-3
Notification by physician
Sec. 3. (a) A licensed physician who diagnoses, treats, or counsels a patient with a dangerous communicable disease shall inform the patient of the patient's duty under section 1 of this chapter.
(b) A physician described in subsection (a) may notify the following:
(1) A health officer if the physician has reasonable cause to believe that a patient:
(A) is a serious and present danger to the health of others as described in section 2(a) of this chapter;
(B) has engaged in noncompliant behavior; or
(C) is suspected of being a person at risk (as defined in section 1 of this chapter).
(2) A person at risk (as defined in section 1 of this chapter) or a person legally responsible for the patient if the physician:
(A) has medical verification that the patient is a carrier;
(B) knows the identity of the person at risk;
(C) has a reasonable belief of a significant risk of harm to the identified person at

risk;

(D) has reason to believe the identified person at risk has not been informed and will not be informed of the risk by the patient or another person; and

(E) has made reasonable efforts to inform the carrier of the physician's intent to make or cause the state department of health to make a disclosure to the person at risk.

(c) A physician who notifies a person at risk under this section shall do the following:

(1) Identify the dangerous communicable disease.

(2) Inform the person of available health care measures such as counseling and testing.

(d) A physician who in good faith provides notification under this section is not subject to liability in a civil, an administrative, a disciplinary, or a criminal action.

(e) A patient's privilege with respect to a physician under IC 34-46-3-1 is waived regarding:

(1) notification under subsection (b); and

(2) information provided about a patient's noncompliant behavior in an investigation or action under this chapter, IC 16-41-2, IC 16-41-3, IC 16-41-5, IC 16-41-6, IC 16-41-8, IC 16-41-9, IC 16-41-13, IC 16-41-14, and IC 16-41-16.

(f) A physician's immunity from liability under subsection (d) applies only to the provision of information reasonably calculated to protect an identified person who is at epidemiological risk of infection.

(g) A physician who notifies a person under this section is also required to satisfy the reporting requirements under IC 16-41-2-2 through IC 16-41-2-8.

As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24. Amended by P.L.1-1998, SEC.122.

IC 16-41-8-1

Confidentiality of information; violations; release of records; voluntary disclosure

Sec. 1. (a) Except as provided in subsections (d) and (e) and IC 16-41-39.4-4, a person may not disclose or be compelled to disclose medical or epidemiological information involving a communicable disease or other disease that is a danger to health (as defined under rules adopted under IC 16-41-2-1). This information may not be released or made public upon subpoena or otherwise, except under the following circumstances:

(1) Release may be made of medical or epidemiologic information for statistical purposes if done in a manner that does not identify an individual.

(2) Release may be made of medical or epidemiologic information with the written consent of all individuals identified in the information released.

(3) Release may be made of medical or epidemiologic information to the extent necessary to enforce public health laws, laws described in IC 31-37-19-4 through IC 31-37-19-6, IC 31-37-19-9 through IC 31-37-19-10, IC 31-37-19-12 through IC 31-37-19-23, IC 35-38-1-7.1, and IC 35-42-1-7, or to protect the health or life of a named party.

(b) Except as provided in subsection (a), a person responsible for recording, reporting, or maintaining information required to be reported under IC 16-41-2 who recklessly, knowingly, or intentionally discloses or fails to protect medical or epidemiologic information classified as confidential under this section commits a Class A misdemeanor.

(c) In addition to subsection (b), a public employee who violates this section is subject to discharge or other disciplinary action under the personnel rules of the agency that employs the employee.

(d) Release shall be made of the medical records concerning an individual to:

(1) the individual;

(2) a person authorized in writing by the individual to receive the medical records; or
(3) a coroner under IC 36-2-14-21.
(e) An individual may voluntarily disclose information about the individual's communicable disease.
(f) The provisions of this section regarding confidentiality apply to information obtained under IC 16-41-1 through IC 16-41-16.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24. Amended by P.L.181-1993, SEC.1; P.L.1-1997, SEC.99; P.L.28-2002, SEC.2; P.L.99-2002, SEC.7.

IC 16-41-8-2
Voluntary contact notification program information; use as evidence; release
Sec. 2. (a) Identifying information voluntarily given to the health officer or an agent of the health officer through a voluntary contact notification program may not be used as evidence in a court proceeding to determine noncompliant behavior under IC 16-41-1 through IC 16-41-16.
(b) A court may release to:
(1) an individual; or
(2) a representative designated in writing by the individual;
information or records relating to the individual's medical condition if the individual is a party in a pending action involving restriction of the individual's actions under IC 16-41-1 through IC 16-41-16. A person who obtains information under this subsection is subject to section 1 of this chapter.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-8-3
Violations
Sec. 3. (a) Except as otherwise provided, a person who recklessly violates or fails to comply with this chapter commits a Class B misdemeanor.
(b) Each day a violation continues constitutes a separate offense.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-1
Imposition of restrictions
Sec. 1. (a) If:
(1) an individual is diagnosed as having a communicable disease or other disease that is a danger to health;
(2) after being informed of the diagnosis, the state health commissioner, the state health commissioner's legally authorized agent, or the local health officer determines that the individual presents a serious and present danger to health according to rules adopted under this article; and
(3) the state health commissioner, the state health commissioner's legally authorized agent, or local health officer obtains a court order for restrictions upon the individual, which may include isolation, based upon a showing of clear and convincing evidence of the serious and present health threat to others posed by the individual;
the state health commissioner, the state health commissioner's legally authorized agent, or the local health officer shall implement the least restrictive but medically necessary procedures to protect the public's health.

(b) A hearing held under this section shall be held in camera at the request of the individual.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-2
Indigents; representation by court appointed counsel
Sec. 2. An indigent individual who is the subject of judicial proceedings under section 1 of this chapter or IC 16-41-6 is entitled to be represented by court appointed counsel.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-3
Infected students; exclusion from school
Sec. 3. (a) The local health officer may exclude from school a student who has a dangerous communicable disease that:
(1) is transmissible through normal school contacts; and
(2) poses a substantial threat to the health and safety of the school community.
(b) If the local health officer subsequently determines that a student who has been excluded from school under subsection (a) does not have a dangerous communicable disease that:
(1) is transmissible through normal school contacts; and
(2) poses a substantial threat to the health and safety of the school community;
the local health officer shall issue a certificate of health to admit or readmit the student to school.
(c) A person who objects to the determination made by the local health officer under this section may appeal to the executive board of the state department, which is the ultimate authority. IC 4-21.5 applies to proceedings under this section.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-4
Failure or refusal to follow health directives; petitions
Sec. 4. If a designated health official reasonably believes that a carrier presents a serious and present health threat (as defined in IC 16-41-7-2) by failure or refusal to comply with a health directive, the designated health official may file a petition under section 1 of this chapter.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-5
Mentally ill and dangerous or gravely disabled carriers; detention; reports
Sec. 5. (a) If a designated health official determines that a carrier has a dangerous communicable disease and has reasonable grounds to believe that the carrier is mentally ill and either dangerous or gravely disabled, the designated health official may request:
(1) immediate detention under IC 12-26-4; or
(2) emergency detention under IC 12-26-5;
for the purpose of having the carrier apprehended, detained, and examined. The designated health official may provide to the superintendent of the psychiatric hospital or center or the attending physician information about the carrier's communicable disease

status. Communications under this subsection do not constitute a breach of confidentiality.
(b) If the written report required under IC 12-26-5-5 states there is probable cause to believe the carrier is mentally ill and either dangerous or gravely disabled and requires continuing care and treatment, proceedings may continue under IC 12-26.
(c) If the written report required under IC 12-26-5-5 states there is not probable cause to believe the carrier is mentally ill and either dangerous or gravely disabled and requires continuing care and treatment, the carrier shall be referred to the designated health official who may take action under this article.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-6
Detained carriers; isolation; unauthorized absences
Sec. 6. (a) The chief medical officer of a hospital or other institutional facility may direct that a carrier detained under this article be placed apart from the others and restrained from leaving the facility. A carrier detained under this article shall observe all the rules of the facility or is subject to further action before the committing court.
(b) A carrier detained under this article who leaves a tuberculosis hospital or other institutional facility without being authorized to leave or who fails to return from an authorized leave without having been formally discharged is considered absent without leave.
(c) The sheriff of the county in which a carrier referred to in subsection (b) is found shall apprehend the carrier and return the carrier to the facility at which the carrier was being detained upon written request of the superintendent of the facility. Expenses incurred under this section are treated as expenses described in section 13 of this chapter.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-7
Voluntarily admitted carriers; unauthorized absences; prevention of health threat
Sec. 7. (a) A carrier who:
(1) poses a serious and present danger to the health of others;
(2) has been voluntarily admitted to a hospital or other facility for the treatment of tuberculosis or another dangerous communicable disease; and
(3) who leaves the facility without authorized leave or against medical advice or who fails to return from authorized leave;
shall be reported to a health officer by the facility not more than twenty-four (24) hours after discovery of the carrier's absence.
(b) If a health officer fails or refuses to institute or complete necessary legal measures to prevent a health threat (as defined in IC 16-41-7-2) by the carrier, the case shall be referred to a designated health official for appropriate action under this article.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-8
Discharge reports; release orders
Sec. 8. (a) A designated health official may file a report with the court that states that a carrier who has been detained under this article may be discharged without danger to the health or life of others.
(b) The court may enter an order of release based on information presented by the desig-

nated health official or other sources.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-9
Release of carriers from state penal institutions; advanced reports; jurisdiction of health officers
Sec. 9. (a) Not more than thirty (30) days after the proposed release from a state penal institution of a prisoner who is known to have:
(1) tuberculosis in a communicable stage; or
(2) other dangerous communicable disease;
the chief administrative officer of the penal institution shall report to the state department the name, address, age, sex, and date of release of the prisoner.
(b) The state department shall provide the information furnished the state department under subsection (a) to the health officer having jurisdiction over the prisoner's destination address.
(c) Each health officer where the prisoner may be found has jurisdiction over the released prisoner.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-10
Nonresident indigent carriers; transfer to legal residences
Sec. 10. (a) The administrator of a hospital or other facility for the treatment of tuberculosis or other dangerous communicable disease may transfer or authorize the transfer of a nonresident indigent carrier to the carrier's state or county of legal residence if the carrier is able to travel. If the carrier is unable to travel, the administrator may have the carrier hospitalized until the carrier is able to travel.
(b) Costs for the travel and hospitalization authorized by this section shall be paid by the:
(1) carrier under section 13 of this chapter; or
(2) state department if the carrier cannot pay the full cost.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-11
Emergency detention
Sec. 11. (a) To protect the health of health care personnel, emergency medical personnel, firefighters, law enforcement officers, correctional officers, or the public health in an emergency, the court may order a health officer or law enforcement officer to take a person into custody and transport the person to an appropriate emergency care or treatment facility for observation, examination, testing, diagnosis, care, treatment, and, if necessary, temporary detention.
(b) If the person described in subsection (a) is already institutionalized, the court may order the institutional facility to hold the person.
(c) Orders under this section may be issued in an ex parte proceeding on an affidavit of the designated health official. The affidavit must set forth the specific facts on which the order is sought and must be served on the person immediately on apprehension or detention. An order under this section may be executed at any time.
(d) On a determination by the court that probable cause exists to believe that:
(1) the person described in subsection (a) presents a serious and present danger to health

(as defined in IC 16-41-7-2); and
(2) irreparable harm is likely to result to others if the person is not immediately prevented from engaging in the activities that pose a serious and present danger to health;
the court shall issue an order imposing on the person the least restrictive limitations, including detention, that are necessary to eliminate the health threat.
(e) A person may not be held under this section longer than seventy-two (72) hours, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays, without a court hearing to determine if the emergency hold should continue.
(f) Notice of the hearing on the continuation of the emergency hold must be served on the person held under this section at least twenty-four (24) hours before the hearing. The notice must specify the following:
(1) The time, date, and place of the hearing.
(2) The grounds and underlying facts on which the emergency hold is sought.
(3) The person's right to appear at the hearing and to cross-examine witnesses.
(4) The person's right to court appointed counsel under section 2 of this chapter.
(g) The court may order the emergency or continued holding of a person under this section if the court finds, by clear and convincing evidence, that the person would pose an imminent health threat to others if released. However, the emergency hold may not continue longer than five (5) days unless a petition to implement medically necessary procedures to protect the public's health and the health of persons described in subsection (a) is filed under section 1 of this
chapter. If a petition is filed, the limitations imposed by the court may continue until a hearing on the petition is held under section 1 of this chapter. The hearing must occur not more than five (5) days after the filing of the petition, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-12
Refusal of admission to facilities; actions against persons and licensed facilities
Sec. 12. (a) The superintendent or the chief executive officer of the facility to which a carrier has been ordered under this chapter may decline to admit a patient if the superintendent or chief executive officer determines that there is not available adequate space, treatment staff, or treatment facilities appropriate to the needs of the patient.
(b) The state department may commence an action under IC 4-21.5-3-6 or IC 4-21.5-4 for issuance of an order of compliance and a civil penalty not to exceed one thousand dollars ($1,000) per violation per day against a person who:
(1) fails to comply with IC 16-41-1 through IC 16-41-3, IC 16-41-5 through IC 16-41-9, IC 16-41-13, IC 16-41-14, or IC 16-41-16 or a rule adopted under these chapters; or
(2) interferes with or obstructs the state department or the state department's designated agent in the performance of official duties under IC 16-41-1 through IC 16-41-3, IC 16-41-5 through IC 16-41-9, IC 16-41-13, IC 16-41-14, or IC 16-41-16 or a rule adopted under these chapters.
(c) The state department may commence an action against a facility licensed by the state department under either subsection (b) or the licensure statute for that facility, but the state department may not bring an action arising out of one (1) incident under both stat-

utes.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-13
Costs of care or treatment
Sec. 13. (a) The court shall determine what part of the cost of care or treatment ordered by the court, if any, the carrier can pay and whether there are other available sources of public or private funding responsible for payment of the carrier's care or treatment. The carrier shall provide the court documents and other information necessary to determine financial ability. If the carrier cannot pay the full cost of care and other sources of public or private funding responsible for payment of the carrier's care or treatment are not available, the county is responsible for the cost. If the carrier:
(1) provides inaccurate or misleading information; or
(2) later becomes able to pay the full cost of care;
the carrier becomes liable to the county for costs paid by the county.
(b) Except as provided in subsections (c) and (d), the costs incurred by the county under this chapter are limited to the costs incurred under section 11 of this chapter.
(c) However, subsection (b) does not relieve the county of the responsibility for the costs of a carrier who is ordered by the court under this chapter to a county facility.
(d) Costs, other than costs described in subsections (b) and (c) that are incurred by the county for care ordered by the court under this chapter, shall be reimbursed by the state under IC 16-21-7 to the extent funds have been appropriated for reimbursement.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 16-41-9-14
Violations
Sec. 14. (a) Except as otherwise provided, a person who recklessly violates or fails to comply with this chapter commits a Class B misdemeanor.
(b) Each day a violation continues constitutes a separate offense.
As added by P.L.2-1993, SEC.24.

IC 20-12-71-12b
Form of documentation; effect of noncompliance
Note: This version of section effective 10-1-2002.
Sec. 12. (a) Before matriculating in a residential campus of a postsecondary institution, each student shall provide the postsecondary institution with one (1) of the following documents:
(1)A certificate of immunity.
(2) Documentation of exemption as described in sections 13 and 14 of this chapter.
(b) Before matriculating in a residential campus of a postsecondary institution, a student that is not a citizen or resident of the United States shall provide the postsecondary institution with:
(1) medical documentation that the student has been tested for tuberculosis in the United States;
(2) the date on which the tuberculosis test was taken; and

(3) the results of the tuberculosis test.
(c) If a student fails to comply with subsection (a) or subsection (b) by the beginning of the student's second academic term, the postsecondary institution shall prohibit the student from matriculating in the campus of the postsecondary institution, where applicable, until the requirements are met.
As added by P.L.192-1993, SEC.7. Amended by P.L.152-2002, SEC.3.

Abridged version of the Communicable Disease Reporting Rule, 410 IAC 1-2.3, as it pertains to tuberculosis

Effective October 11, 2000

410 IAC 1-2.3-47 Reporting requirements for physicians and hospital administrators

Authority: IC 16-41-2-1

Affected: IC 4-22-2-37.1; IC 16-21; IC 16-41-2-8; IC 25-22.5

Sec. 47. (a) It shall be the duty of each physician licensed under IC 25-22.5, and each administrator of a hospital licensed under IC 16-21, or the administrator's representative, to report all cases, and suspected cases of the diseases listed in subsection (d). Reporting of specimen results by a laboratory to health officials does not nullify the physician's or administrator's obligations to report said case.

(b) The report required by subsection (a) shall be made to the local health officer in whose jurisdiction the patient was examined at the time the diagnosis was made or suspected. If the patient is a resident of a different jurisdiction, the local health jurisdiction receiving the report shall forward the report to the local health jurisdiction where the patient resides. If a person who is required to report is unable to make a report to the local health officer within the time mandated by this rule, a report shall be made directly to the department within the time mandated by this rule.

(c) Any reports of diseases required by subsection (a) shall include the following:

(1) The patient's:

(A) full name;
(B) street address;
(C) city;
(D) zip code;
(E) county of residence;
(F) telephone number;
(G) age or date of birth;
(H) sex; and
(I) race and ethnicity, if available.

(2) Date of onset.

(3) Diagnosis.

(4) Definitive diagnostic test results (for example, culture, IgM, serology, or Western Blot).

(5) Name, address, and telephone number of the attending physician.

(6) Other epidemiologically necessary information requested by the local health officer or the commissioner.

(7) Persons who are tested anonymously at a counseling and testing site cannot be reported using personal identifiers; rather, they are to be reported using a numeric identifier code. Age, race, sex, risk factors, and county of residence shall also be reported.

(8) Name, address, and telephone number of person completing report.

(d) The dangerous communicable diseases and conditions described in this subsection shall be reported within the time specified. Diseases or conditions that are to be reported immediately to the local health officer shall be reported by telephone or other instantaneous means of communication on first knowledge or suspicion of the diagnosis. Diseases that are to be reported within seventy-two (72) hours shall be reported to the local health officer within seventy-two (72) hours of first knowledge or suspicion of the diagnosis by telephone, electronic data transfer, other confidential means of communication, or official report forms furnished by the department. During evening, weekend, and holiday hours, those required to report should report diseases required to be immediately reported to the after-hours duty officer at the local health department. If unable to contact the after-hours duty officer locally, or one has not been designated locally, those required to report shall file their reports with the after-hours duty officer at the department at (317) 233-1325 or (317) 233-8115.

DANGEROUS COMMUNICABLE DISEASES AND CONDITIONS

Tuberculosis, cases and suspects	Withing *[sic.]* 72 hours	Sec. 106

410 IAC 1-2.3-48 Laboratories; reporting requirements

Authority: IC 16-41-2-1
Affected: IC 16-41-2-8

Sec. 48. (a) Each director, or the director's representative, of a medical laboratory in which examination of any specimen derived from the human body yields microscopic, bacteriologic, immunologic, serologic, or other evidence of infection by any of the organisms or agents listed in section 48(d) of this rule *[subsection (d)]* shall report such findings and any other epidemiologically necessary information requested by the department. HIV serologic results of tests performed anonymously in conjunction with the operation of a counseling and testing site registered with the department shall not be identified by name of patient, but by a numeric identifier code; for appropriate method to report such results, see subsection (b).

(b) The report required by subsection (a) shall, at a minimum, include the following:

(1) Name, date, results of test performed, the laboratory's normal limits for that test, and the laboratory's interpretation of the test results.

(2) Name of person and date of birth or age from whom specimen was obtained.

(3) Name, address, and telephone number of attending physician, hospital, clinic, or other specimen submitter.

(4) Name, address, and telephone number of the laboratory performing the test.

(c) This subsection does not preclude laboratories from testing specimens, which, when submitted to the laboratory, are identified by a numeric identifier code and not by name of patient. If testing of such a specimen, identified by numeric code, produces results that are required to be reported under this rule, the laboratory shall submit a report that includes the following:

(1) Numeric identifier code, date, and results of tests performed.

(2) Name and address of attending physician, hospital, clinic, or other.

(3) Name and address of the laboratory performing the test.

(d) Laboratory findings demonstrating evidence of the following infections, diseases, or conditions shall be reported at least weekly to the department:

(37) Mycobacterium tuberculosis.

(f) Laboratories shall submit all isolates of the following organisms to the department's microbiology laboratory for further evaluation:

(5) Mycobacterium tuberculosis.

410 IAC 1-2.3-49 Disease intervention measures; responsibility to investigate and implement

Authority: IC 16-41-2-1
Affected: IC 16-41-2

Sec. 49. (a) Case reports submitted to the local health department or the department may be used for epidemiological investigation or other disease intervention activities as warranted. Prior approval from a patient is not required before releasing medical or epidemiological information to the local health department or the department.

(b) Unless otherwise indicated, the local health department in the jurisdiction where the patient is a resident is responsible for performing any epidemiological investigation required and instituting control measures.

(c) Upon receiving a communicable disease report, local health officers must investigate the report within a reasonable time frame, immediately for diseases that shall be reported immediately, but usually not more than seventy-two (72) hours after the report is received for other diseases.

(d) Investigation shall include obtaining laboratory and clinical data necessary for case ascertainment. Investigation efforts should identify all potential means for disease acquisition, risk factors, and any potential public health threats posed by the case. Findings of the investigation shall be used to institute control measures to minimize or abrogate the risk of disease spread.

(e) The results of the investigation shall be documented, in writing, with a copy maintained at the local health department, and a copy forwarded to the department communicable disease section. Local health departments that do not have the necessary security to maintain complete confidentiality of HIV/AIDS patients may defer the storage of all copies to the department.

(f) The department may request and obtain epidemiological information on cases of communicable disease or diseases of public health importance, including diseases caused by drug-resistant organisms and emerging infectious diseases.

(g) Medical or epidemiological information, wherever maintained, concerning reportable cases, shall be made available to the commissioner or the commissioner's designee. *(Indiana State Department of Health; 410 IAC 1-2.3-49; filed Sep 11, 2000, 1:36 p.m.: 24 IR 342)*

410 IAC 1-2.3-106 Tuberculosis; specific control measures

Authority: IC 16-41-2-1

Affected: IC 16-41-2; IC 16-41-9

Sec. 106. The specific control measures for tuberculosis (infectious agent: Mycobacterium tuberculosis) are as follows:

(1) An investigation and case management are the responsibility of the local health officer and shall begin immediately. The local health officer shall request laboratory, radiological, and other studies as required for case ascertainment and to determine if the suspect case should be isolated as described in subdivision (5)(B). For confirmed and suspected cases of tuberculosis, a contact investigation shall be performed, identifying both household and close contacts. As used in this subdivision, "close contact" means an individual who has shared breathing air space with a tuberculosis case for prolonged periods of time in circumstance or frequency that would allow airborne transmission. Examples of close contacts are household members, co-workers, and friends. If several of the close contacts are PPD positive, then contact investigation shall be expanded to include persons who have been progressively in less contact with source or suspect.

(2) Pulmonary tuberculosis cases and suspects who are sputum-smear negative, are clinically improving, and are known to be on adequate tuberculosis chemotherapy are defined as noninfectious. All other pulmonary tuberculosis cases and suspects must be isolated until no longer infectious. In the hospital, tuberculosis cases and suspects must be isolated in accordance with the Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in Health Care Settings, as published by Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, October 28, 1994, Volume 43, No. RR-13. Prior to discharge of cases or suspects, the hospital shall notify the local health department in the jurisdiction where the tuberculosis suspect or case resides. Prior to discharge of the tuberculosis case or suspect, the local health department shall make plans, in writing, for continuation of medical follow-up, assuring adherence to therapy and isolation. Plans shall be developed in cooperation with the treating physician and the patient, and must be in accordance with this rule. For patients with confirmed or suspected pulmonary tuberculosis who do not need to be hospitalized, in-home isolation is an acceptable alternative. Contact with persons outside the home shall be prohibited unless the infected person wears a surgical mask, properly tied. Children should not be in the home while the case is considered infectious.

(3) Concurrent disinfection is required and shall include hand washing and good housekeeping practices combined with dilution of particles in the air by ventilation.

(4) Because the potential for unrecognized exposure as well as known exposure of medical personnel to tuberculosis, hospital and laboratories shall develop and follow tuberculosis prevention and control programs for their facilities as described in the Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of Mycobacterium Tuberculosis in Health Care Settings as published by Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, October 28, 1994, Volume 43, No. RR-13.

(5) For every case of pulmonary tuberculosis the local health officer must initiate a complete contact investigation within three (3) working days of the report of the case. The first step in performing the contact investigation for pulmonary cases is to estimate the degree of infectiousness and determine the infectious period. Infectiousness is generally predicted by disease in a pulmonary or respiratory (for example, endobronchial or laryngeal site), a lung cavity seen on a chest X-ray, acid fast bacilli (AFB) seen in a smear of concentrated sputum, and protracted cough. Under most circumstances, tuberculosis without a pulmonary or respiratory site is not infectious. The infectious period is defined as the period beginning with onset of symptoms (especially cough) until any of the following endpoints is attained:

(A) Contact is broken with the infectious case.

(B) Effective isolation measures are instituted for that case.

(C) The case is determined to be noninfectious by all of the following criteria:

(i) The index tuberculosis patient has three (3) negative smears for AFB taken twenty-four (24) hours apart.

(ii) Is known to be taking effective antituberculosis chemotherapy.

(iii) Is clinically improving.

The case shall be interviewed in detail to identify all contacts who shared air space during the infectious period. The list of contacts shall then be prioritized according to length and duration of contact with the case, with household contacts, and other close social or workplace contacts given highest priority. High priority shall also be assigned to exposed infants and any exposed persons who have medical conditions, for example, HIV infection, making them vulnerable to tuberculosis.

(6) All household and close contacts not known to have a previously positive tuberculin skin test or active tuberculosis, shall be tested with five (5) TU purified protein derivative (PPD) intradermally by the Mantoux method administered by an individual trained in the administration and reading of tuberculin skin tests. The skin test should be read seventy-two (72) hours later by a trained individual, and the amount of induration in millimeters shall be recorded. If any of the following conditions are met, then the contact investigation shall be progressively expanded to include contacts with lesser degrees of exposure:

(A) The prevalence of positive tuberculin skin tests (induration 5 mm) is higher in contacts tested than the prevalence in similar populations residing in the jurisdiction.

(B) A new positive tuberculin skin test is found in a young child.

(C) A documented skin test conversion is found among contacts.

(D) A secondary case of active tuberculosis is found among contacts.

When none of the criteria in this subdivision are met, further expansion of the contact investigation is not necessary.

(7) Contacts with positive tuberculin skin test results, those with symptoms, those with immunosuppressive conditions or those younger than six (6) months of age should have a chest X-ray performed to determine if they have tuberculosis disease. Those with symptoms or with an infiltrate on chest X-ray should submit a sputum sample for AFB smear, culture, and sensitivity.

(8) Contacts with suspected or confirmed active tuberculosis shall be evaluated and managed according to this section.

(9) Contacts identified through contact investigation who have a positive PPD (induration 5 mm) and a normal chest X-ray, should be offered preventive therapy, usually with isoniazid, regardless of age, unless otherwise medically contraindicated. Contacts should also be considered for treatment of latent infection with tuberculosis in any of the following situations:

(A) Evaluation of other contacts with a similar degree of exposure demonstrates a high prevalence of infection.

(B) The contact is a child or an adolescent, or the contact is immunosuppressed.

(10) Infants who are exposed to a person with infectious active tuberculosis should be evaluated with a tuberculin skin test and a chest radiograph. If the skin test result is negative and the chest radiograph is normal, the infant should be skin tested again at three (3) to four (4) months of age and at six (6) months of age. The infant should receive preventive therapy even if skin test negative. Preventive therapy may be discontinued if the infant is skin test negative at six (6) months of age, provided at least ten (10) weeks have passed since the infant was last exposed to infectious tuberculosis.

(11) The local health officer shall assure that contacts are appropriately evaluated for tuberculosis infection and that a complete course of preventive therapy is recommended for contacts with evidence of tuberculosis infection, regardless of age, unless medically contraindicated. The local health officer is responsible for recording the results of contact investigation and follow-up according to this rule and reporting the results to the department.

(12) The local health department of the jurisdiction shall actively follow every tuberculosis case and suspect where the case or suspect resides until they have completed an adequate course of tuberculosis chemotherapy as described in Treatment of Tuberculosis and Tuberculosis In Adults and Children, published in the American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine, Vol-

ume 149, pages 1359 through 1374, 1994, or until the patient is determined not to have tuberculosis. The duties of the local health department shall include the following:

(A) Requesting laboratory studies, such as AFB smear and cultures as needed for case ascertainment and for determining whether isolation is necessary.

(B) Requesting drug susceptibility testing of all initial tuberculosis isolates as needed.

(C) Assuring appropriate anti-tuberculosis medications are initiated at the appropriate dose in accordance with this subsection.

(D) Assuring that the pulmonary tuberculosis patient is isolated until confirmed to be noninfectious according to the following criteria:

(i) Three (3) consecutive sputum smears are negative for AFB taken at a minimum twenty-four (24) hours apart.

(ii) Clinical improvement is documented.

(iii) The patient is known to be on adequate anti-tuberculosis medication.

(E) Assessing that medication is taken as prescribed. Directly observed therapy is the standard of care for achieving adherence.

(F) Documenting conversion of sputum and culture to negative for AFB.

(G) Contact investigation.

(Indiana State Department of Health; 410 IAC 1-2.3-106; filed Sep 11, 2000, 1:36 p.m.: 24 IR 364)

Rules governing TB screening and skin testing are promulgated by the following state regulatory agencies:

State Department of Health

- Division of Long Term Care: nursing homes (skilled nursing facilities and intermediate care and extended care facilities), group homes for the mentally retarded and developmentally disabled.

- Division of Acute Care: hospitals, ambulatory surgical centers, hospices, rural health clinics, and home health agencies

Family and Social Services Administration

- Division of Mental Health and Addiction: mental health and residential treatment facilities

- Division of Family and Children: requires TB skin testing for day care center employees and foster parents

The State Department of Corrections has an internal policy that requires annual screening for inmates and staff having direct contact with them. There is no state rule.

210 IAC 3-1-11 contains health-screening requirements for county jail inmates. This is a State Department of Corrections rule.

Community Residential Facilities Council

- Covers group homes for the mentally retarded and developmentally disabled

- Testing for employees is covered in 431 IAC 1.1-3-3

Appendix A. Classification System for Tuberculosis

Class	Type	Description
0	No TB exposure Not infected	No history of exposure Negative reaction to tuberculin skin test
1	TB exposure No evidence of infection	History of exposure Negative reaction to tuberculin skin test
2	TB infection No disease	Positive reaction to tuberculin skin test Negative bacteriologic studies (if done) No clinical, bacteriologic, or radiographic evidence of current disease
3	TB, clinically active	*M. tuberculosis* cultured (if done) Clinical, bacteriologic, or radiographic evidence of current disease
4	TB, not clinically active	History of previous episode(s) of TB **or** Abnormal but stable radiographic findings Positive reaction to the tuberculin skin test Negative bacteriologic studies (if done) **and** No clinical or radiographic evidence of current disease
5	TB suspected	Diagnosis pending

Appendix B. Doses of First-Line Anti-tuberculosis Drugs for Adults and Children (adult dosing begins at age 15)

				Weekly		
Drug	**Preparation**		**Daily**	**1x**	**2x**	**3x**
Isoniazid	Tablets (100 mg, 300 mg); Syrup (50 mg/5 ml); Aqueous solution (100 mg/ml) for IM or IV injection	Adults (Max.)	5 mg/kg (300 mg)	15 mg/kg (900 mg)	15 mg/kg (900 mg)	15 mg/kg (900 mg)
		Children (Max.)	10-15 mg/kg (300 mg)	--	20-30 mg/kg (900 mg)	--
Rifampin	Capsule (150 mg, 300 mg). Powder may be suspended for oral administration. Aqueous solution for IV injection	Adults (Max.)	10 mg/kg (600 mg)	--	10 mg/kg (600 mg)	10 mg/kg (600 mg)
		Children (Max.)	10-20 mg/kg (600 mg)	--	10-20 mg/kg (600 mg)	--
Rifabutin	Capsule (150 mg)	Adults (Max.)	5 mg/kg (300 mg)	--	5 mg/kg (300 mg)	5 mg/kg (300 mg)
		Children	Appropriate dosing for children is unknown.			
Rifapentine	Tablet (150 mg film coated)	Adults (Max.)	--	10 mg/kg (continuation phase) (600 mg)	--	--
		Children	The drug is not approved for use in children.			
Pyrazinamide	Tablet (500 mg scored)	Adults	See Table 4	--	See Table 4	See Table 4
		Children (Max.)	15-30 mg/kg (2 g)	--	50 mg/kg (4 g)	--
Ethambutol	Tablet (100 mg; 400 mg)	Adults	See Table 5	--	See Table 5	See Table 5
		Children (Max.)	15-20 mg/kg (1.0 g)	--	50 mg/kg (4 g)	--

For dosages of second-line drugs refer to The American Thoracic Society treatment guidelines

Appendix C.
Suggested Pyrazinamide and Ethambutol Doses, Using Whole Tablets, For Adults Weighing 40-90 Kg

Pyrazinamide Doses	Weight (Kg) †		
	40-55	56-75	76-90
Daily	1000 mg	1500 mg	2000 mg‡
(mg/kg)	(18.2-25.0)	(20.0-26.8)	(22.2-26.3)
Thrice Weekly	1500 mg	2500 mg	3000‡
(mg/kg)	(27.3-37.5)	(33.3-44.6)	(33.3-39.5)
Twice Weekly	2000 mg	3000 mg	4000‡
(mg/kg)	(36.4-50.0)	(40.0-53.6)	(44.4-52.6)

Ethambutol Doses	Weight (Kg) †		
	40-55	56-75	76-90
Daily	800 mg	1200 mg	1600 mg‡
(mg/kg)	(14.5-20.0)	(16.0-21.4)	(17.8-21.1)
Thrice Weekly	1200 mg	2000 mg	2400‡
(mg/kg)	(21.8-30.0)	(26.7-35.7)	(26.7-31.6)
Twice Weekly	2000 mg	2800 mg	4000‡
(mg/kg)	(36.4-50.0)	(37.3-50.0)	(44.4-52.6)

† Based on estimated lean body weight.

‡ Maximum dose regardless of weight.

Appendix D. Recommended Treatment Regimens For TB Disease

The preferred regimen in Indiana is the ”Denver Regimen” and is shown as “Option 1” in the table below. A more detailed treatment table can be found in the American Thoracic Society treatment guidelines at the end of this manual.

Completion of treatment is defined by the total number of doses ingested as well as the duration of treatment. **Note**: twice-weekly therapy is contraindicated for HIV-infected patients with CD4+ lymphocyte counts < 100 cells/mm^3. Doses for anti-tuberculosis medications are shown in appendices B and C.

Table 2

Initial Phase		**Continuation Phase**	
Drugs	Interval and Duration (total number of doses)	Drugs	Interval and Duration (total number of doses)
Option 1 (preferred) INH RIF PZA EMB	Daily DOT for 2 weeks (14 doses), and then twice weekly DOT for six weeks (12 doses)	INH RIF	Twice weekly DOT for 18 weeks (36 doses) (62 total doses over 26 weeks)
Option 2 INH RIF PZA EMB	3 times weekly DOT for 8 weeks (24 doses)	INH RIF	3 times weekly DOT for 18 weeks (54 doses) (78 total doses over 26 weeks)
Option 3 INH RIF PZA EMB	Daily for 8 weeks (56 doses)	INH RIF	Daily for 18 weeks (126 doses: 182 total over 26 weeks)

Daily dosing for 5 rather than 7 days per week is an option for the daily portion of treatment options 1 and 2, but should only be used if dosing 7 days per week is not feasible. DOT must be used with this option.

INH, rifampin and pyrazinamide should be continued for the entire first two months. Ethambutol may be discontinued after the drug susceptibility test shows that the patient's organism is susceptible to both INH and RIF.

Appendix E. Recommended Treatment Regimens for Latent TB Infection

Drug	Interval and Duration	Adult Dosage (max)	Criteria for Completion	Comments
INH	Daily for 9 months	5 mg/kg (300 mg)	270 doses within 12 months	Preferred regimen for all persons regardless of age or HIV status. For HIV-infected patients, PIs, NRTIs, and NNRTIs may be safely co-administered with INH. DOT must be used with twice-weekly dosing.
	Twice weekly for 9 months	15 mg/kg (900 mg)	76 doses within 12 months	
INH	Daily for 6 months	5 mg/kg (300 mg)	180 doses within 9 months	Offer only if preferred or alternate regimens are not feasible. Not indicated for patients with HIV infection or fibrotic lesions on chest x-ray. Not indicated for children. DOT must be used for twice-weekly dosing.
	Twice weekly for 6 months	15 mg/kg (900 mg)	52 doses within 9 months	
RIF	Daily for 4 months*	10 mg/kg (600 mg)	120 doses within 6 months	May use for contacts to INH-resistant, RIF susceptible TB For persons who cannot tolerate INH or PZA. Not recommended for twice-weekly dosing.
RIF plus PZA	Daily for 2 months	RIF 10 mg/kg (600 mg) PZA 15-20 mg/kg (2.0 g)	60 doses within 3 months	Not recommended for general use. Not for use in children. May be used for carefully selected high-risk patients who are unlikely to complete the preferred regimens if the benefits significantly outweigh the risk of severe liver injury. Past or present excessive ETOH use is an absolute contraindication.
	Twice weekly for 2 months	RIF 10 mg/kg (600 mg) PZA 50 mg/kg (4.0 g)	16 doses within 3 months	

*The American Academy of Pediatrics currently recommends that children receiving RIF should be treated for 6 months

Standard adult dosages: INH = 300 mg daily; RIF = 600 mg daily

Pediatric dosages: INH daily: 10-15 mg/kg, 300mg max; INH twice weekly: 20-30 mg/kg, 900 mg max.
RIF (daily only): 10-20 mg/kg, 600 mg max.

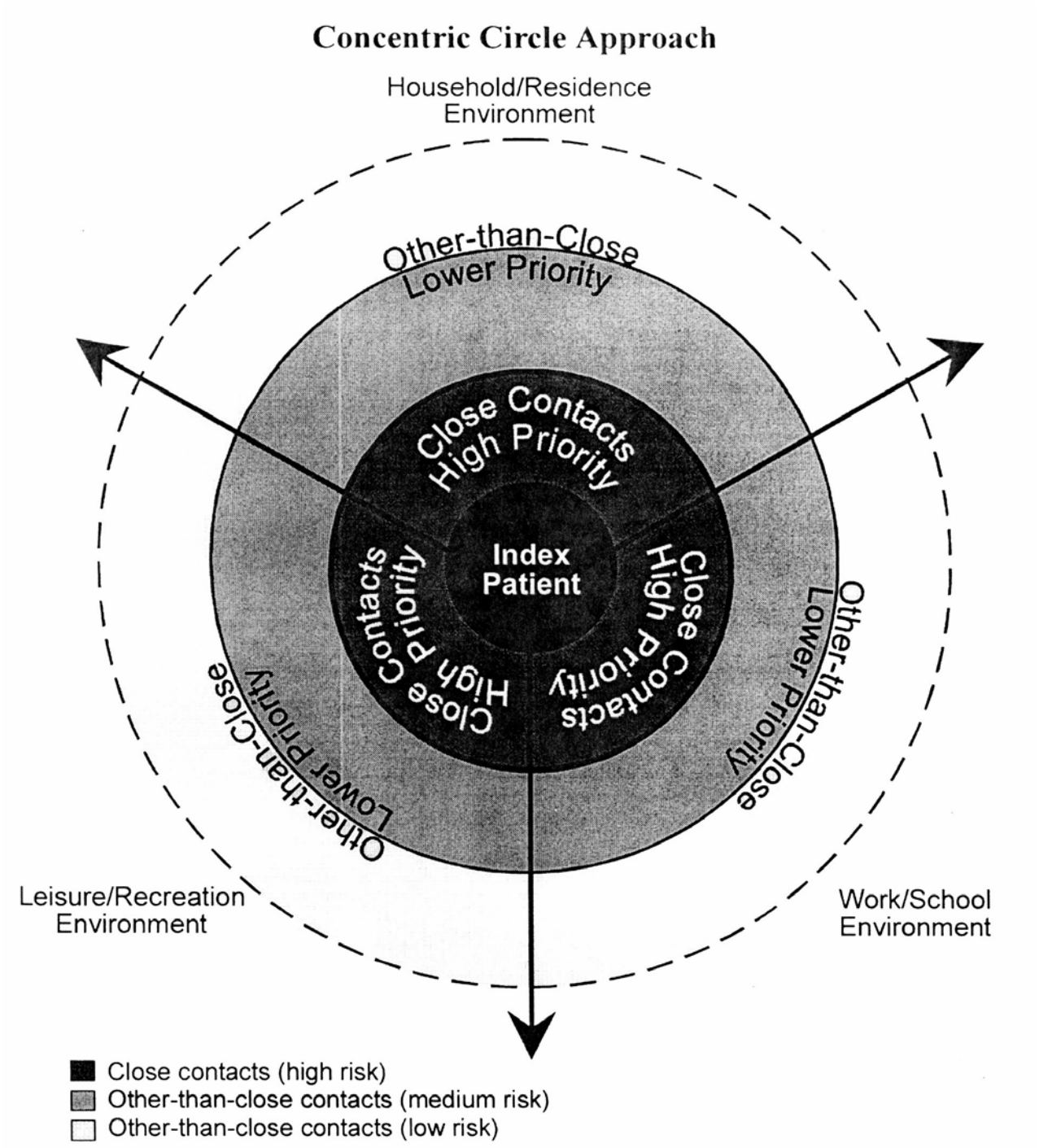
Liquid INH should be avoided due to cramping and diarrhea that can be caused by its high osmotic load. Try crushing the tablet and mixing it with food or liquid.

Abbreviations: INH = isoniazid, RIF = rifampin, PZA = pyrazinamide, NRTIs = nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, NNRTIs = non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, PIs = protease inhibitors; DOT = directly observed therapy

Pregnancy: INH regimens are preferred for pregnant women. For HIV + pregnant women, consult an expert.

Pyridoxine (Vitamin B_6) may be given with INH to prevent peripheral neuropathy in susceptible adult patients. Adult dose is 50 mg/day. It should be used for exclusively breast-fed babies, children with poor diets, or adolescents and any children who report symptoms of peripheral neuropathy.

Appendix F


Concentric Circle Approach
Household/Residence Environment
Other-than-Close Lower Priority
Close Contacts High Priority
Index Patient
Close Contacts High Priority
Close High Contacts Priority
Other-than-Close Lower Priority
Other-than-Close Lower Priority
Leisure/Recreation Environment
Work/School Environment
Close contacts (high risk)
Other-than-close contacts (medium risk)
Other-than-close contacts (low risk)

Appendix G: **Tuberculosis Medication Policy**

Purpose: The Indiana State Department of Health provides drugs to TB patients and suspects through a state-funded program for patients who reside in Indiana, with the exception of Marion and Allen Counties, which have their own drug program. The same program also will provide drugs for the treatment of latent TB infection (LTBI). Persons incarcerated in state or federal prisons are not eligible.

Drugs will not be provided for: (1) the treatment of patients diagnosed with clinical conditions caused by mycobacteria other than tuberculosis, including disease caused by BCG vaccine or bladder instillation solutions; (2) most patients who do not meet the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) clinical case verification criteria for active TB, or (3) patients seeking treatment for LTBI whose tuberculin skin test reaction does not meet the established criteria for what is positive based on the patient's risk factors.

.

Procedure: Drug requests will only be accepted from the local health departments. Prescriptions must be **signed** by a practitioner who has prescription writing authority. Verbal or telephone orders that have not been countersigned will not be accepted.

When requesting drugs for TB patients and suspects, follow these steps:

1. Submit the following forms to the ISDH TB Control Program:

   - ✓ Use **only** State Form 14058, "Report of Tuberculosis"
   - ✓ State Form 48085, "Request for TB Drugs"
   - ✓ A copy of the prescriptions

2. For TB suspects, a maximum 3-month supply will be sent. If the patient is subsequently confirmed to have active TB disease, the remaining drugs are to be ordered using the same procedure outlined in step 1. If the patient is an out-of-area resident who is in your jurisdiction temporarily, order only what you need.

3. For patients already confirmed to have TB disease, drugs will be shipped in increments of 6-month supplies, unless the attending physician specifies a longer treatment period for conditions that are routinely treated longer than 6 months, i.e., 9 months for cavitary pulmonary disease, or 9-12 months for meningeal or bone and joint TB.

When requesting drugs for patients being treated for LTBI, follow these steps:

1. Submit the following forms to the ISDH TB Control Program:

   - ✓ Use **only** State Form 49894, "Report of Treatment for Latent TB Infection"
   - ✓ State Form 48085, "Request for TB Drugs"
   - ✓ A copy of the prescriptions

2. Treatment regimens for LTBI are on the back of State Form 49894.

3. As long as appropriate follow-up can be assured, drugs should be ordered for the entire treatment period. If the patient is going to be in your jurisdiction for only a brief period, it may be prudent not to begin treatment, but to refer him or her to their new local health department for treatment.

Other important information:

✓ ISDH will fax the drug request to Pharmaceutical Corporation of America (PCA), who then ships the order to the local health department via UPS. Keep a copy of your paperwork for your records. Do not write patient names or notes on the order form.

✓ Check your math. Do not order in amounts that exceed the number of refills on the prescription; i.e., if the physician orders 5 refills of INH, you cannot order 9 bottles. Make sure the prescriptions are properly written before sending to ISDH.

✓ Amounts requested that exceed what should have been ordered will automatically be adjusted. For example, PZA and ethambutol that are ordered for more than a two-month supply will be adjusted to conform to the number of tablets per day for 60 doses, unless the patient has drug resistance.

✓ Check your order upon receipt to insure that it is correct. Notify PCA if there are any discrepancies. Also notify PCA if your shipment does not arrive.

✓ Do not put labels on the bottles until they are dispensed. Patients are to receive no more than a 30-day supply at one time, since monitoring for side effects is an essential part of the treatment plan.

✓ Alternate first-line drugs (rifabutin and rifapentine) and all second-line drugs are special-order items and are not routinely stocked by PCA due to their high cost and infrequent use. These drugs may be requested if they are medically necessary, such as rifabutin instead of rifampin for an HIV-positive patient who is on anti-retroviral therapy, or levofloxacin for multi-drug resistant TB.

✓ Unless they can be used immediately, unopened, unused drugs must be returned to PCA so that they can be placed back into the supply system. Return all expired drugs and opened, unused drugs to PCA so that ISDH can get a credit to its account. Coordinate all returns with PCA.

GLOSSARY

Acid-fast bacilli (AFB) – rod-shaped bacteria that retain dyes even when washed with an acid-alcohol solution. Acid-fast organisms that are not mycobacteria are rare, but can be seen on smear and can cause disease similar to TB, e.g., *Nocardia* sp. and *Tsukamurella* (*Rhodococcus*) sp.

AFB isolation precautions - infection control procedures that should be applied when persons with known or suspected infectious tuberculosis are hospitalized or residing in other inpatient facilities. These precautions include the use of a private room with negative pressure in relation to surrounding areas, at least six air changes per hour, and exhaust of air from the room directly to the outside. Not the same as "respiratory isolation" which calls for a private room, but does not require negative pressure and exhaust of room air to the outside.

Acquired drug resistance - resistance to one or more antituberculosis drugs that develops while a patient is on therapy. It is almost always the result of either erratic compliance in patients who self-administer their medications, or an inadequate regimen prescribed by the physician.

Adherence - refers to the patient's compliance with all aspects of the treatment regimen as prescribed by the medical provider.

Adverse drug reaction - as defined by the FDA, a reaction that is noxious, unintended, and occurs at doses normally used for prophylaxis, diagnosis, or treatment of disease. Periodic monitoring of tuberculosis patients under treatment can help detect any drug reactions that occur, even though their occurrence may be rare.

Aerosol - as used in tuberculosis control activities, refers to the infectious droplet nuclei that are expelled from a person and transmitted to other people.

AFB - abbreviation for acid-fast bacillus.

Air changes - air flow quantity to a space measured in terms of room volume, i.e., volume of air delivered plus room volume. Usually expressed as number of air changes per hour.

ALT - alanine aminotransferase. An intracellular enzyme involved in amino acid and carbohydrate metabolism. It is present in high concentrations in muscle, liver, and brain. An increased amount of ALT indicates damage in these tissues. INH, RIF, and PZA can cause elevations of ALT. It is most heavily concentrated in the liver. Also known as serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase.

Alveoli - the small air sacs that lie at the end of the bronchial tree in the lungs; the site of gas exchange in the lungs, and the site where TB infection usually begins.

Anergy - inability of an infected person to react to skin test antigens because of defects in the immune system.

Anorexia - loss of appetite. A symptom frequently seen in many illnesses, including tuberculosis.

Antigen - that portion or product of a biologic agent capable of stimulating formation of specific antibodies.

Apex (pl. apices) - an anatomical term designating the top of an organ or other body part, such as the lung.

AST – aspartate aminotransferase. An intracellular enzyme involved in amino acid and carbohydrate metabolism. It is present in high concentrations in muscle, liver, and brain. An increased amount of ALT indicates damage in these tissues. INH, RIF, and PZA can cause elevations of ALT. It is also known as serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase.

Attenuated - refers to the weakened ability of microorganisms to cause disease. For example, BCG is a vaccine derived from an attenuated strain of *M. bovis*.

Atypical mycobacteria - one of several terms used to refer to mycobacteria other than the human or bovine strain of *M. tuberculosis*. Many of these can cause disease identical to tuberculosis. *Mycobacterium leprae* is the only atypical species with a human reservoir.

BACTEC™ 460 - radiometric liquid culture medium used to detect early growth of mycobacteria. It provides for rapid growth (7-15 days) and rapid drug susceptibility testing (6-14 days).

Bactericidal – the capability of an agent to kill 99% to 99.9% of the target population upon contact. Isoniazid and rifampin are the two most potent bactericidal anti-TB drugs (see bacteriostatic).

Bacteriological specimen - refers to any body fluid, secretion, or tissue sent to the laboratory where smears and cultures for acid fast bacilli will be performed. The specimen may consist of sputum, urine, spinal fluid, material obtained at biopsy, etc.

Bacteriostatic – the capability of an agent to limit the proliferation of the target population to the extent that there are 99% fewer microbes in the exposed than in the control population after a defined period of growth. Drugs such as ethambutol (EMB) and para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS) are primarily bacteriostatic (see bactericidal).

BCG (Bacillus of Calmette and Guérin) - vaccine against tuberculosis made from attenuated and purified strains of *M. bovis* and widely used in many parts of the world. It is of uncertain efficacy and is not used for TB control in the U.S.

Bilirubin – orange or yellow-colored pigment in bile. The accumulation of bilirubin in the blood causes jaundice, and is an indicator of excessive red blood cell destruction or liver injury.

Booster phenomenon - seen when an individual with infection does not react to tuberculin because the body's cell responses to tuberculin have gradually waned over the years. An initial tuberculin test may stimulate (boost) the immune system so that the next test will be positive. Although the booster phenomenon can occur at any age, it is most frequent among persons over age 55.

Bovine tuberculosis - an illness of cattle caused by *M. bovis*, an organism that can also cause disease in humans. It may be transmitted by contaminated unpasteurized milk. It is now rarely seen in this country because the reservoir of infected cattle has been practically eliminated (see *Mycobacterium bovis*).

Bronchi - the large hollow branches of the pulmonary tree that connect the trachea to the smaller air passages.

Bronchoscopy - procedure for examining the respiratory tract by inserting an instrument (bronchoscope) through the mouth or nose and into the lung. Diagnostic specimens can be obtained during bronchoscopy.

Calcification - term used in x-ray reports to denote a deposition of calcium in tissue.

Capreomycin (CM or CAP) - an injectable anti-TB drug related to streptomycin (SM).

Caseation - a form of necrosis in which the tissue is changed into a dry, amorphous mass resembling cheese.

Cavity - a hole in the lung resulting from destruction of pulmonary tissue. May be caused by tuberculosis, but also by other pulmonary infections, cancer of the lung, etc. Tuberculosis patients with cavities in their lungs are more infectious than patients without cavities.

Chemotherapy - treatment of infection or disease by means of oral or injectable drugs.

Chest X-ray, apical lordotic view – a special x-ray film taken to better visualize the apices (upper portions) of the lungs which are often affected by tuberculosis but which may be obscured by the clavicles (collar bones) in a standard view.

Chest X-ray, lateral view - an x-ray film taken from the side of the chest.

Class A – medical classification used by the Division of Quarantine and defined as an alien with an abnormal chest radiograph suggestive of active TB and one or more sputum smears that are positive for acid-fast bacilli.

Class B-1 – medical classification used by the Division of Quarantine and defined as an alien with an abnormal chest radiograph suggestive of active TB and sputum smears that are negative for acid-fast bacilli on 3 consecutive days.

Class B-2 – medical classification used by the Division of Quarantine and defined as an alien with an abnormal chest radiograph suggestive of old healed TB that is not clinically active, e.g., fibrosis, scarring, or pleural thickening. Sputum is not collected prior to immigration.

Clinical Case Definition – in the absence of a culture that is positive for M. tuberculosis complex, and after a diagnostic process has been completed, all of the following criteria must be present for a patient to be considered as a clinical case of TB:

- Evidence of TB infection based on a positive tuberculin skin test

And

- One of the following:
    1. Signs and symptoms compatible with current TB disease, such as an abnormal, unstable (worsening or improving) chest radiograph, or
    2. Clinical evidence of current disease (e.g., fever, night sweats, cough, weight loss, hemoptysis)

And

- Current treatment with two or more anti-TB drugs

Cluster - a closely grouped series of events or cases of disease or other health-related phenomena with well-defined distribution patterns, in relation to time or place or both.

Compliance - refers to the willingness and/or ability of patients to maintain their share of responsibility for their treatment by taking medications as prescribed and keeping necessary appointments.

Consolidation – solidification of an area of the lung due to pathological engorgement of the tissues as occurs in tuberculosis or pneumonia.

Consumption - a term used for tuberculosis prior to the 20th century.

Contact - an individual who has shared the same air space with a person with infectious tuberculosis for a sufficient amount of time so that there is a probability that transmission of tuberculosis has occurred.

Contamination - in tuberculosis, objects contaminated with tubercle bacilli (see "Fomites") are very rarely associated with transmission. Air contaminated with infectious droplet nuclei is almost always the vehicle implicated in the spread of infection. May also refer to sputum specimens from which no bacteria can be cultured because of overgrowth (contamination) by other more rapidly growing bacteria.

Conversion – an increase in the induration of a person's TB skin test that is ≥ 10 mm within the last two years.

Culture - the process of growing bacteria in the laboratory so that organisms can be identified.

Cycloserine (CS) - a seldom-used second-line oral anti-TB drug.

DNA Probe – laboratory method used to identify the mycobacterial species that is growing in a culture. This test should not be confused with direct nucleic acid amplification tests that are performed directly on the specimen.

Directly observed therapy (DOT) – procedure by which each dose of medication is ingested under the supervision of a health care worker or other responsible person.

Disseminated tuberculosis – TB disease at two or more non-contiguous sites, or the isolation of MTB from the blood or bone marrow.

Droplet nuclei - the microscopic airborne particles of aerosolized secretions that can carry tubercle bacilli to the alveoli of susceptible individuals.

Drug susceptibility tests - laboratory tests that determine if the tubercle bacilli cultured from a patient can or cannot be killed by various anti-TB drugs.

Dyspnea - difficult or labored breathing.

Endemic - the presence of a disease or infectious agent within a given geographical area or among a specific population; refers to the normal prevalence of a given disease.

Epidemic – the occurrence of an illness which is clearly in excess of normal expectancy and derived from a common or a propagated source, and occurring in a particular community or region.

Erythema - in skin testing, it refers to the area of redness around the injection site. It is clinically insignificant and is not measured when the tuberculin test is read.

Ethambutol (EMB) – a first-line oral anti-TB drug used during the initial treatment phase to prevent the development of resistance to other first-line drugs.

Ethionamide (ETA) - a second-line oral anti-TB drug.

Exposure - the opportunity of a susceptible host to acquire an infection by either a direct or indirect mode of transmission.

Extrapulmonary - refers to tuberculosis at a site other than the lungs. In the United States, about 15 percent of reported cases involve extrapulmonary sites, such as the kidney, pleura, lymph nodes, etc.

Fluorochrome stain - a technique for staining a clinical specimen with dyes that fluoresce when viewed through a special microscope fitted with an ultra-violet lamp. AFB appear as bright yellow rods on an inky black background.

Fomites - linens, books, dishes or other inanimate objects used or touched by a patient. They are not involved in the transmission of tuberculosis.

Gastric washing - procedure sometimes used to obtain mycobacteria for culture when a patient cannot produce adequate sputum. A tube inserted into the stomach is used to recover any bacilli that may have been coughed up and then swallowed.

Ghon complex – a term used in describing x-ray findings resulting from a healed first infection with tubercle bacilli. It consists of hilar node calcification and usually a calcified area in the peripheral parenchyma.

Hemoptysis - coughing up blood. Sometimes seen in tuberculosis as well as other pulmonary conditions. May range from slightly blood-tinged sputum to massive bleeding in severe and advanced cases.

HEPA (High-Efficiency Particulate Air) filter - specialized filter that is capable of removing 99.97% of particles 0.3 microns in diameter.

Hepatitis - inflammation of the liver. Anti-TB drugs most likely to cause hepatitis are INH, PZA, and RIF, in that order.

Hilum - the "root" of the lung at the level of the 4^{th} and 5^{th} dorsal vertebrae, where the main bronchi, lymph nodes, blood vessels connect.

Hippocrates - a physician of ancient Greece and the first to describe phthisis, the illness we now call tuberculosis.

Host – organisms capable of being infected by a specific agent.

HPLC – high-pressure liquid chromatograph. A laboratory apparatus that is used for species identification of mycobacterial cultures. Unlike nucleic acid probes, HPLC will identify not only all mycobacteria, but can detect non-mycobacterial acid-fast organisms such as *Nocardia* sp. and *Tsukamurella* (*Rhodococcus*) sp. HPLC cannot perform species differentiation of MTB complex.

Human immunodeficiency virus or HIV Infection - infection with the retrovirus that causes Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS). It is the most important risk factor for progression from TB infection to active TB.

Immunosuppressed - persons with severe cellular immunosuppression (e.g., HIV-infected or organ transplant on immunosuppressive therapy). These patients are at increased risk for developing TB once infected.

Incubation period - the interval between infection of a susceptible host by a microbial agent and the onset of clinical signs and symptoms of disease.

Index case - the first case brought to the attention of health authorities, which becomes the focus for an initial contact investigation.

Induced sputum - sputum obtained from a patient unable to cough up a sputum specimen spontaneously. The patient inhales a mist of saline, which stimulates a cough from deep within the lungs.

Induration - the area of raised, firm palpable swelling that surrounds the site of injection of tuberculin. The diameter of the indurated area is measured 48-72 hours after the injection and is recorded in millimeters.

Infiltrate – pathologic fluid deposition into the lung tissue as occurs with tuberculosis and pneumonia.

Infection - condition in which virulent organisms, such as *M. tuberculosis*, are able to multiply within the body and cause a response from the host's immune defenses. Infection may or may not lead to clinical disease.

Intermittent therapy – TB therapy given on an other-than-daily basis, usually twice-weekly. Administration is directly supervised by a health worker.

Intradermal – injections given within the layers of the skin.

Isoniazid (INH) – a first-line oral bactericidal drug used alone for treatment of latent TB infection and in combination with other drugs in the treatment of TB disease.

Jaundice - syndrome caused by hyperbililrubinemia and deposition of bile pigment under the skin and mucus membranes, resulting in a yellow appearance of the patient, particularly the sclerae of the eyes.

Kanamycin (KM) - injectable second-line anti-TB drug related to streptomycin (SM).

Kinyoun stain – a method of staining an AFB smear for microscopic examination. The specimen is stained with red carbol-fuchsin dye and is allowed to air-dry. After rinsing with an acid-alcohol solution, it is counterstained with malachite green. AFB show up as red rods on a green background when viewed under the microscope's oil immersion lens.

Koch, Robert - German scientist and physician who discovered the tubercle bacillus in 1882.

Latent TB infection - condition in which tubercle bacilli are present in an individual, without producing disease. The infected individual, although having a positive tuberculin skin test reaction, has no TB symptoms and has a chest x-ray that is free of abnormalities that suggest active disease.

Lowenstein-Jensen (LJ) medium - a solid culture media used to grow mycobacteria. The large test tubes with the surface of the media slanted upwards at an angle are also referred to as "slant tubes."

Lymph nodes - small nodules of specialized immune cells located throughout the body. Those in the chest may be involved early in tuberculosis when bacilli are carried there by the lymphatics. Nodes elsewhere in the body may also be affected later.

Lympho-hematogenous - refers to spread of tubercle bacilli from the initial site of infection in the lungs by way of the lymphatic system and bloodstream to other parts of the body.

Malaise - a vague feeling of general discomfort associated with illness.

Mantoux technique - a tuberculin test given by injecting a measured amount of tuberculin solution into the dermis (second layer of the skin) with a needle and syringe. It is the "gold standard" for diagnosing TB infection.

MGIT – mycobacterium growth indicator tube. The liquid culture media fluoresces when there is mycobacterial growth. The BACTEC™ MGIT 960™ is one such system.

Micron - a metric unit of length. One micron = 1/1000 millimeter (approximately 25,000 microns to the inch).

Middlebrook 7H-10 - another type of solid mycobacteria culture medium. Also used for performing drug susceptibility tests.

Miliary – a form of disseminated tuberculosis in which the chest x-ray shows multiple nodular lesions throughout the lungs. These lesions are so named because they are similar in appearance to scattered millet seeds. Disease is usually present in other parts of the body as well, with symptoms being consistent with disease at those sites, e.g., splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, abdominal pain, bone or joint pain, or CNS symptoms.

MOTT - acronym for Mycobacteria Other than Tuberculosis.

MTB complex – several species of mycobacteria that cause TB disease in humans. They cannot be differentiated from one another without using special biochemical or DNA sequencing tests, which is why many laboratories identify the organism simply as *M. tuberculosis*, or MTB complex. By far the most common species is *M. tuberculosis*. The others are *M. bovis*, *M. africanum*, *M. canettii*, and *M. microti.*

Multiple puncture tests - tuberculin tests, such as Tine™ and Applitest™, in which an unmeasured amount of tuberculin is introduced into the skin by means of an array of sharp prongs.

Mycobacterium - the genus to which *M. tuberculosis* and all other mycobacteria belong (e.g., *M. xenopi, M. kansasii*).

Mycobacterium bovis - species of mycobacteria closely related to *M. tuberculosis*. Earlier in the century, frequently caused disease in cattle and humans, especially children who drank unpasteurized milk from infected cows. Airborne spread to humans and other animals can also occur. The vaccine BCG is derived from *M. bovis*. (see Bovine Tuberculosis).

Mycobacterium tuberculosis - the bacterium that causes tuberculosis, abbreviated as *M. tuberculosis*, or simply MTB.

Negative pressure - a term used to describe the relative air pressure difference between the inside and outside of special isolation rooms. Air will flow from the higher pressure area outside the room into the lower pressure area inside.

Niacin test - an important biochemical test performed by the laboratory on a culture of mycobacteria. A "positive" niacin test almost always identifies *M. tuberculosis*. The test is used to differentiate between *M. tuberculosis* and *M. bovis*.

Nonphotochromogens - certain atypical mycobacteria, the colonies of which develop little or no pigmentation when grown in either the light or the dark (e.g. *M. avium-intracellulare* complex).

Nontuberculous mycobacteria – a common, but technically inaccurate term sometimes used to describe other species of mycobacteria that are found in the environment. Many can cause disease in humans with symptoms that are identical to tuberculosis, including tubercle formation, but is not transmitted from person-to person. Sometimes called "atypical" mycobacteria, or "mycobacteria other than tuberculosis" (MOTT).

Nucleic acid amplification test – laboratory test that detects the presence of MTB RNA or DNA (depending on the type of test kit used) directly from sputum or other processed pulmonary secretions. For example, the AMPLIFIED™ Mycobacterium Tuberculosis Direct (MTD) Test manufactured by GEN-PROBE amplifies ribosomal RNA and is the only test of this type that is currently approved by the FDA to be used on AFB smear-negative specimens. Cultures must still be done, since these tests do not tell whether the bacilli are viable or not, and because drug susceptibility testing can only be performed with positive cultures.

Old tuberculin (OT) - tuberculin prepared from heat-sterilized cultures of tubercle bacilli filtered and concentrated to a fraction of the original volume; used until the development of purified protein derivative (PPD).

Outbreak - a localized as opposed to a generalized epidemic. Cases of disease occurring in a community, region, or particular population at a rate clearly in excess of that which is normally expected.

Para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS) - an oral second-line anti-TB drug no longer widely used.

Parenchymal - pertaining to the functional elements of an organ, such as the lung, as distinguished from the framework.

Pathogenicity - the ability to cause disease.

Pathogenesis - the natural evolution of a disease process in the body without intervention (i.e., without treatment); refers to the steps that lead from transmission to clinical disease.

Photochromogens - atypical mycobacteria that form yellow to orange-pigmented colonies when exposed to light (e.g. *M. kansasii*).

Pigment - chemical substance made by some mycobacteria that gives a color to colonies grown in the laboratory. Presence or absence of pigment aids helps use in identification of particular species.

Pleura - the serous membrane enveloping the lungs and lining the internal surface of the thoracic cavity.

Primary drug resistance - drug-resistance that existed prior to the beginning of treatment.

Primary tuberculosis – condition in which a person progresses from the initial infection directly to active disease without entering a latent period. Most commonly seen in very young children, AIDS patients, and other persons who are severely immunosuppressed.

Pulmonary - referring to the lungs. Most tuberculosis cases in the United States (85 percent) are pulmonary.

Purified protein derivative (PPD) - tuberculin that is purified from culture filtrates of the human strain of *M. tuberculosis*. The standard tuberculin skin test uses 5TU of PPD.

Pyrazinamide (PZA) - a first-line oral anti-TB drug. It is used during the initial treatment phase and enables 6-month treatment regimens.

Radiometric methods – liquid culture method, such as the BACTEC™ 460 system, in which the medium contains palmitic acid labeled with carbon-14 (^{14}C). Multiplying mycobacteria give off $^{14}CO_2$, which is measured by the detection equipment.

Rapid growers - certain species of atypical mycobacteria that can produce visible colonies when cultured in the laboratory as soon as 48 hours or as little as one week (e.g., *M. fortuitum, M. smegmatis*).

Rate - a measure of the frequency with which a specified event occurs in a particular population at a certain instant or during a particular period.

Reactivation – process by which active TB disease develops from a previous infection.

Recirculation - ventilation system where the air from an area is returned to the same area instead of being exhausted to the outside and replaced with fresh air.

Relapse – reoccurrence of active disease in a person who has completed an appropriate course of therapy and had negative cultures at the time treatment was completed.

Resistance - refers to the ability of some strains of bacteria (including *M. tuberculosis*) to grow and multiply even in the presence of certain drugs that normally kill them. (Such strains are referred to as "drug resistant strains.")

RFLP – restriction fragment length polymorphism. A sophisticated method of genotyping, or "DNA fingerprinting" strains of *M. tuberculosis* to track patterns of transmission.

Rifampin (RIF) - an oral first-line anti-TB drug which, when used along with isoniazid (INH), provides the basis for short-course therapy.

Roentgen, Wilhelm - German physician and scientist who discovered x-rays in 1895. Often, the term "roentgen" is used as a measure of radiation.

Runyon, E.H. - Noted microbiologist who characterized the laboratory aspects of mycobacteria which lead to the taxonomic groupings of the mycobacteria into Runyon groups.

Sanatorium - hospital where tuberculosis patients were treated with bed rest and fresh air prior to discovery of antituberculous drugs. All sanatoria in Indiana are now closed.

Sarcoidosis - a chronic disease with unknown cause and that may affect the lungs, as well as other parts of the body. The appearance of sarcoidosis on x-ray films may occasionally mimic those seen in tuberculosis.

Scotochromogens - atypical mycobacteria that form yellow to orange-pigmented colonies when grown in the dark (e.g. *M. xenopi*).

Second-line drugs - refers to anti-TB drugs used for the treatment of multi-drug resistant cases. Examples are cycloserine (CS), ethionamide (ETH), and capreomycin (CAP).

SGOT - serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase. See AST.

SGPT - serum glutamic-pyruvic transaminase. See ALT.

Short-course chemotherapy - therapy based on the combination of the isoniazid (INH) and rifampin (RIF), and pyrazinamide (PZA) that allows therapy for most patients to be completed in 6-9 months.

Side effect - an undesirable secondary effect of a drug.

Smear (AFB Smear) - a laboratory technique for visualizing mycobacteria under the microscope. Smear results are usually available within a few days and correlate strongly with infectiousness, especially in untreated patients. A diagnosis cannot be made from examining the slide.

Source case - an infectious individual who has transmitted tubercle bacilli to another person or persons.

Species - identifiable type of organisms that predictable reproduces its own kind. In biology, a category of classification for living organisms.

Specimen - any body fluid, secretion, or tissue sent to the laboratory where smears and cultures for tubercle bacilli will be performed. The specimen may consist of sputum, urine, spinal fluid, material obtained at biopsy, etc.

Sputum - material coughed up from deep within the lungs. If a patient has a pulmonary infection, an examination of the sputum (by smear and culture) can indicate what organism is responsible for the infection.

Sputum smear-positive - AFB are visible after staining and then viewed under a microscope. Individuals with sputum smear-positive for AFB are considered more infectious than those with smear-negative sputum.

Streptomycin (SM) – the first drug used to treat TB in 1947. It is available only in injectable form, and is no longer a first-line agent.

Surveillance - activities related to finding cases, guiding them into the health care system, and maintaining records on such cases for the purposes of identifying high-risk groups and trends in morbidity and mortality. Includes activities related to identifying and maintaining records on persons with tuberculosis infection as well, to identify candidates for preventive therapy and, in institutional settings, identify the quality of infection control practices.

Susceptible - refers to bacteria that can be killed by the drugs used against them. Also refers to uninfected persons who are susceptible to infection.

Suspect - a person whose medical history, symptoms, and possible exposure to a source of infection suggest that he or she may have, or be developing, TB disease.

Tine test – multi-puncture TB skin test consisting of a stainless steel disc, with four tines or prongs, two millimeters long, attached to a plastic handle. The tines have been dip-dried with old tuberculin. Its use is no longer recommended.

Transmission - the process in which the infectious organism is passed from person to person. The direct (contact or droplet spread) or indirect (vector borne, vehicle borne, air borne) transfer of an infectious agent from a reservoir to a susceptible host.

Treatment failure – continued or recurrent positive cultures after 4 months of treatment in patients in whom medication ingestion was assured.

Trudeau, Edward - American physician who, after having recovered from tuberculosis, helped launch the sanatorium movement in this country before the turn of the century.

Tubercle - a small nodule; a lesion consisting of a collection of lymphocytes and epithelioid cells.

Tubercle bacilli - term often used to refer to the *M. tuberculosis* and to *M. bovis.*

Tuberculin skin test - a method to determine whether a person has TB infection. A small dose of tuberculin antigen is injected just beneath the surface of the skin and the area is examined 48-72 hours after the injection. A positive reaction is measured according to the size of the induration. The classification for positive reactions depends on the patient's medical history and various risk factors.

Tuberculoma - a tumor-like mass resulting from enlargement of a caseous tubercle. They are often revealed on MRI and CT scans of the brain in patients with TB disease of the central nervous system.

Tuberculosis - disease caused by organisms in the M. tuberculosis (MTB) complex in which tuberculosis infection has progressed so that the individual typically has signs and symptoms of illness, such as an abnormal x-ray film, a "positive" bacteriologic examination (smear and/or culture), as well as a "positive" tuberculin reaction. Individuals with disease may be infectious.

Tuberculosis case - an individual with clinically active tuberculosis.

Tuberculosis suspect - an individual likely to have clinically active tuberculosis, based on any combination of TB symptoms, abnormal chest x-ray, AFB smear and tuberculin skin test results, and risk factors for TB exposure.

Tween 80 - a detergent added by the manufacturer into the diluent to reduce the adsorption of tuberculin protein by glass and plastics.

Two-step skin testing - a procedure used among people who receive tuberculin skin tests periodically (such as health care workers) to reduce the likelihood of mistaking a boosted reaction for a recent infection. If the initial tuberculin test is classified as negative, a second test is repeated 1-3 weeks later. If the reaction to the second test is positive, it probably represents an old infection, or “boosted” reaction. If the second test result remains negative, the person is classified as being uninfected.

Ultraviolet germicidal irradiation (UVGI) - a form of radiation intermediate between visible light and x-rays. UVGI is effective in killing many bacteria, including tubercle bacilli.

Vaccine - a preparation containing whole microorganisms (killed or living) or a fraction of the organisms possessing an immunizing antigen. Vaccine is employed to induce specific active immunity to an infectious agent in a host.

Ventilation - refers to the flow of air into and out of the area surrounding an infectious tuberculosis patient. If the flow is sufficient, tubercle bacilli become dispersed, and there is diminished risk of transmission of infection.

Vesiculation - the presence of or formation of a small blister or blisters at site of a tuberculin test.

Virulence - refers to the ability of a microorganism to produce disease.

Volar surface - pertaining to the palm, referring to the flexor surface of the forearm, wrist, etc.

Ziehl-Neelsen stain - a method of staining an AFB smear for microscopic examination. The specimen is stained with red carbol-fuchsin dye and is then heat-fixed. After rinsing with an acid-alcohol solution, it is counterstained with methylene blue. The bacilli show up as red rods on a dark blue background when viewed under the microscope's oil immersion lens.

References

1. Sepkowitz, Kent A. "How Contagious is Tuberculosis?" *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 1996; 23: 954-62.

2. American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infectious Diseases Society of America. "Treatment of Tuberculosis." *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 2003; 167: 603-662.

3. American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Diagnostic Standards and Classification of Tuberculosis in Adults and Children." *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 2000; 161: 1376-1395.

4. American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Targeted Testing and Treatment of Latent Tuberculosis Infection." *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 2000; 161: S221-S247.

5. Friedman, Lloyd N. *Tuberculosis: Current Concepts and Treatment*. Boca Raton: CRC Press. 1994.

6. Reichman, Lee B., and Hershfield, Earl S., ed. *Tuberculosis: A Comprehensive International Approach, Second Edition*. New York: Marcel Dekker, Inc. 2000.

7. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Core Curriculum on Tuberculosis, 4th Edition, 2000.*

8. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Self-Study Modules on Tuberculosis*, March 1995.

9. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Self-Study Modules on Tuberculosis: Contact Investigations of Tuberculosis,* October 1999.

10. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Self-Study Modules on Tuberculosis: Confidentiality in Tuberculosis Control,* October 1999.

11. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Instructions to Panel Physicians for Completing CHEST X-RAY AND CLASSIFICATION WORKSHEET (DS-3024)." From the Division of Global Migration and Quarantine web site, November 18, 2002, pp. 1-9.

12. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Update: Fatal and Severe Liver Injuries Associated With Rifampin and Pyrazinamide for Latent Tuberculosis Infection, and Revision in American Thoracic Society/CDC Recommendations—United States, 2001." MMWR 2001; 50 (34): 733-735.

13. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Notice to Readers: Acquired Rifamycin Resistance in Persons with Advanced HIV Disease Being Treated for Active Tuberculosis with Intermittent Rifamycin-Based Regimens." MMWR 1997; 46 (RR15): 1-10.

14. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Update: Adverse Event Data and Revised American Thoracic Society Recommendations Against the Use of Rifampin and Pyrazinamide for Treatment of Latent Tuberculosis Infection-United States, 2003." MMWR 2003; 52 (31): 735-739.

15. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health Facilities, 1994." MMWR 1994; 43 (RR-13).

16. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Anergy Skin Testing and Preventive Therapy for HIV-Infected Persons: Revised Recommendations." MMWR 1997; 46 (RR-15).

17. Iseman, Michael D. *A Clinician's Guide to Tuberculosis*. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams, & Wilkins. 2000.

18. Institute of Medicine. *Ending Neglect: The Elimination of Tuberculosis in the United States.* 2000.

19. Schlossberg, David, ed.: *Tuberculosis*, Second Edition. New York: Springer-Verlag, Inc. 1988.

20. Pfyffer, Gaby E., et. al., "*Mycobacterium canettii*, the Smooth Variant of *M. tuberculosis*, Isolated from a Swiss Patient Exposed in Africa." *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, October-December 1998; 4 (4): 1-3 (on-line edition).

21. Holmes, G.P., et. al. "A Cluster of Cases of *Mycobacterium szulgai* keratitis That Occurred After Laser-Assisted Keratomileusis." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* April 15, 2002; 34: 1039-1046.

22. Letter to the Editor. "*Mycobacterium microti*: More Widespread than Previously Thought." *Journal of Clinical Microbiology*, September 1998; 36 (9): 2793-2794.

23. Kerr, James H., M.D., and Barrett, Terry L., M.D. *Textbook of Military Medicine: Military Dermatology*, Chapter 16: "Atypical Mycobacterial Diseases" (on-line version), 391-422. August 1994.

24. Nobel, Robert C., M.D. "Infectiousness of Pulmonary Tuberculosis after Starting Chemotherapy." *American Journal of Infection Control*, 1981; 9 (6): 6-10.

25. New York City Department of Health TB Fact Sheet. "Tuberculin Skin Testing of BCG-Vaccinated Persons." November 1997.

26. Starke, Jeffrey R., M.D. "Universal Screening for Tuberculosis Infection: School's Out!" *JAMA*, August 23/30, 1995; 247 (8): 652-653.

27. Hu, Y., Coates, A.R., Mitchison, D.A. "Sterilizing Activities of Fluoroquinolones against Rifampin-Tolerant Populations of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*." *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, February 2003; 47 (2): 653-657.

28. American Academy of Pediatrics. "Tuberculosis." *2000 Red Book: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 25th Edition*. Elk Grove, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2000. 593-613.

29. Mohle-Boetani, Janet C., M.D., et. al. "School-Based Screening for Tuberculosis Infection: A Cost-Benefit Analysis." *JAMA*, August 23/30, 1995; 247 (8): 613-619

30. Huebner, Robin E., et. al. "The Tuberculin Skin Test." *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 1993; 17: 968-975.

31. Indiana State Department of Health TB Medical Advisory Board Statement. "TB Disease in Children." 2000.

32. Indiana State Department of Health TB Medical Advisory Board Statement. "Guidelines on Management of Hepatotoxicity." 2000.

33. Indiana State Department of Health TB Medical Advisory Board Statement. "Guidelines for Tuberculin Skin Test Screening and Treatment of Latent TB Infection." 2000.

34. 2003 National TB Controllers Association. Presentation: "Contact Investigations." Zachary Taylor, M.D., M.S. June 11, 2003.

35. 2002 National TB Controllers Association. Presentation: "Infection Control Guidelines Revision." Renee Ridzon, M.D. June 18, 2002.

36. Loeffler, Ann, M.D. "Pediatric Tuberculosis: A Video Guide to Diagnosis and Treatment." Francis J. Curry National Tuberculosis Center. 2001.

37. HHS Publication (FDA) 83.8204. "The Selection of Patients for X-ray Examinations." U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, August 1983.

38. Noble, Robert C., M.D. "Infectiousness of Pulmonary Tuberculosis After Starting Chemotherapy." *American Journal of Infection Control,* February 1981; 9 (1): 6-10.

MMWR™

Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report

Recommendations and Reports June 20, 2003 / Vol. 52 / No. RR-11

Treatment of Tuberculosis

American Thoracic Society, CDC, and Infectious Diseases Society of America

INSIDE: Continuing Education Examination

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION

The *MMWR* series of publications is published by the Epidemiology Program Office, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Atlanta, GA 30333.

SUGGESTED CITATION

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Treatment of Tuberculosis, American Thoracic Society, CDC, and Infectious Diseases Society of America. MMWR 2003;52(No. RR-11):[inclusive page numbers].

CONTENTS

The following drugs, which are suggested for use in selected cases, are not approved by the Food and Drug Administration for treatment of tuberculosis: rifabutin, amikacin, kanamycin, moxifloxacin, gatifloxacin, and levofloxacin.

Michael Iseman, M.D., has indicated that he has a financial relationship with Ortho-McNeil, which manufactures Levaquin®. The remaining preparers have signed a conflict of interest disclosure form that verifies no conflict of interest.

Treatment of Tuberculosis

American Thoracic Society, CDC, and Infectious Diseases Society of America

Purpose

The recommendations in this document are intended to guide the treatment of tuberculosis in settings where mycobacterial cultures, drug susceptibility testing, radiographic facilities, and second-line drugs are routinely available. In areas where these resources are not available, the recommendations provided by the World Health Organization, the International Union against Tuberculosis, or national tuberculosis control programs should be followed.

What's New In This Document

- The responsibility for successful treatment is clearly assigned to the public health program or private provider, not to the patient.
- It is strongly recommended that the initial treatment strategy utilize patient-centered case management with an adherence plan that emphasizes direct observation of therapy.
- Recommended treatment regimens are rated according to the strength of the evidence supporting their use. Where possible, other interventions are also rated.
- Emphasis is placed on the importance of obtaining sputum cultures at the time of completion of the initial phase of treatment in order to identify patients at increased risk of relapse.
- Extended treatment is recommended for patients with drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis who have cavitation noted on the initial chest film and who have positive sputum cultures at the time 2 months of treatment is completed.
- The roles of rifabutin, rifapentine, and the fluoroquinolones are discussed and a regimen with rifapentine in a once-a-week continuation phase for selected patients is described.
- Practical aspects of therapy, including drug administration, use of fixed-dose combination preparations, monitoring and management of adverse effects, and drug interactions are discussed.

This Official Joint Statement of the American Thoracic Society, CDC, and the Infectious Diseases Society of America was approved by the ATS Board of Directors, by CDC, and by the Council of the IDSA in October 2002. This report appeared in the *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine* (2003;167:603–62) and is being reprinted as a courtesy to the American Thoracic Society, the Infectious Diseases Society of America, and the *MMWR* readership.

- Treatment completion is defined by number of doses ingested, as well as the duration of treatment administration.
- Special treatment situations, including human immunodeficiency virus infection, tuberculosis in children, extrapulmonary tuberculosis, culture-negative tuberculosis, pregnancy and breastfeeding, hepatic disease and renal disease are discussed in detail.
- The management of tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms is updated.
- These recommendations are compared with those of the WHO and the IUATLD and the DOTS strategy is described.
- The current status of research to improve treatment is reviewed.

Summary

Responsibility for Successful Treatment

The overall goals for treatment of tuberculosis are 1) to cure the individual patient, and 2) to minimize the transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* to other persons. Thus, successful treatment of tuberculosis has benefits both for the individual patient and the community in which the patient resides. For this reason the prescribing physician, be he/she in the public or private sector, is carrying out a public health function with responsibility not only for prescribing an appropriate regimen but also for successful completion of therapy. Prescribing physician responsibility for treatment completion is a fundamental principle in tuberculosis control. However, given a clear understanding of roles and responsibilities, oversight of treatment may be shared between a public health program and a private physician.

Organization and Supervision of Treatment

Treatment of patients with tuberculosis is most successful within a comprehensive framework that addresses both clinical and social issues of relevance to the patient. It is essential that treatment be tailored and supervision be based on each patient's clinical and social circumstances (patient-centered care). Patients may be managed in the private sector, by public health departments, or jointly, but in all cases the health department is ultimately responsible for ensuring that adequate, appropriate diagnostic and treatment services are available, and for monitoring the results of therapy.

It is strongly recommended that patient-centered care be the initial management strategy, regardless of the source of supervision. This strategy should always include an adherence plan that emphasizes directly observed therapy (DOT), in which patients are observed to ingest each dose of antituberculosis medications, to maximize the likelihood of completion of therapy. Programs utilizing DOT as the central element in a comprehensive, patient-centered approach to case management (enhanced DOT) have higher rates of treatment completion than less intensive strategies. Each patient's management plan should be individualized to incorporate measures that facilitate adherence to the drug regimen. Such measures may include, for example, social service support, treatment incentives and enablers, housing assistance, referral for treatment of substance abuse, and coordination of tuberculosis services with those of other providers.

Recommended Treatment Regimens

The recommended treatment regimens are, in large part, based on evidence from clinical trials and are rated on the basis of a system developed by the United States Public Health Service (USPHS) and the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA). The rating system includes a letter (A, B, C, D, or E) that indicates the strength of the recommendation and a roman numeral (I, II, or III) that indicates the quality of evidence supporting the recommendation (Table 1).

There are four recommended regimens for treating patients with tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms. Although these regimens are broadly applicable, there are modifications that should be made under specified circumstances, described subsequently. Each regimen has an initial phase of 2 months followed by a choice of several options for the continuation phase of either 4 or 7 months. The recommended regimens together with the number of doses specified by the regimen are described in Table 2. The initial phases are denoted by a number (1, 2, 3, or 4) and the continuation phases that relate to the initial phase are denoted by the number plus a letter designation (a, b, or c). Drug doses are shown in Tables 3, 4, and 5.

TABLE 1. Infectious Diseases Society of America/United States Public Health Service rating system for the strength of treatment recommendations based on quality of evidence*

Strength of the recommendation

- A. Preferred; should generally be offered
- B. Alternative; acceptable to offer
- C. Offer when preferred or alternative regimens cannot be given
- D. Should generally not be offered
- E. Should never be offered

Quality of evidence supporting the recommendation

- I. At least one properly randomized trial with clinical end points
- II. Clinical trials that either are not randomized or were conducted in other populations
- III. Expert opinion

* Reprinted by permission from Gross PA, Barrett TL, Dellinger EP, Krause PJ, Martone WJ, McGowan JE Jr, Sweet RL, Wenzel RP. Clin Infect Dis 1994;18:421.

The general approach to treatment is summarized in Figure 1. Because of the relatively high proportion of adult patients with tuberculosis caused by organisms that are resistant to isoniazid, four drugs are necessary in the initial phase for the 6-month regimen to be maximally effective. Thus, in most circumstances, the treatment regimen for all adults with previously untreated tuberculosis should consist of a 2-month initial phase of isoniazid (INH), rifampin (RIF), pyrazinamide (PZA), and ethambutol (EMB) (Table 2, Regimens 1–3). If (when) drug susceptibility test results are known and the organisms are fully susceptible, EMB need not be included. For children whose visual acuity cannot be monitored, EMB is usually not recommended except when there is an increased likelihood of the disease being caused by INH-resistant organisms (Table 6) or when the child has "adult-type" (upper lobe infiltration, cavity formation) tuberculosis. If PZA cannot be included in the initial phase of treatment, or if the isolate is resistant to PZA alone (an unusual circumstance), the initial phase should consist of INH, RIF, and EMB given daily for 2 months (Regimen 4). Examples of circumstances in which PZA may be withheld include severe liver disease, gout, and, perhaps, pregnancy. EMB should be included in the initial phase of Regimen 4 until drug susceptibility is determined.

The initial phase may be given daily throughout (Regimens 1 and 4), daily for 2 weeks and then twice weekly for 6 weeks (Regimen 2), or three times weekly throughout (Regimen 3). For patients receiving daily therapy, EMB can be discontinued as soon as the results of drug susceptibility studies demonstrate that the isolate is susceptible to INH and RIF. When the patient is receiving less than daily drug administration, expert opinion suggests that EMB can be discontinued safely in less than 2 months (i.e., when susceptibility test results are known), but there is no evidence to support this approach.

Although clinical trials have shown that the efficacy of streptomycin (SM) is approximately equal to that of EMB in the initial phase of treatment, the increasing frequency of resistance to SM globally has made the drug less useful. Thus, SM is not recommended as being interchangeable with EMB unless the organism is known to be susceptible to the drug or the patient is from a population in which SM resistance is unlikely.

The continuation phase (Table 2) of treatment is given for either 4 or 7 months. The 4-month continuation phase should be used in the large majority of patients. The 7-month

TABLE 2. Drug regimens for culture-positive pulmonary tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms

Initial phase			Continuation phase			Range of total doses (minimal duration)	Rating* (evidence)†	
Regimen	Drugs	Interval and doses‡ (minimal duration)	Regimen	Drugs	Interval and doses‡§ (minimal duration)		HIV−	HIV+
1	INH RIF PZA EMB	Seven days per week for 56 doses (8 wk) or 5 d/wk for 40 doses (8 wk)¶	1a	INH/RIF	Seven days per week for 126 doses (18 wk) or 5 d/wk for 90 doses (18 wk)¶	182–130 (26 wk)	A (I)	A (II)
			1b	INH/RIF	Twice weekly for 36 doses (18 wk)	92–76 (26 wk)	A (I)	A (II)#
			1c**	INH/RPT	Once weekly for 18 doses (18 wk)	74–58 (26 wk)	B (I)	E (I)
2	INH RIF PZA EMB	Seven days per week for 14 doses (2 wk), then twice weekly for 12 doses (6 wk) or 5 d/wk for 10 doses (2 wk),¶ then twice weekly for 12 doses (6 wk)	2a	INH/RIF	Twice weekly for 36 doses (18 wk)	62–58 (26 wk)	A (II)	B (II)#
			2b**	INH/RPT	Once weekly for 18 doses (18 wk)	44–40 (26 wk)	B (I)	E (I)
3	INH RIF PZA EMB	Three times weekly for 24 doses (8 wk)	3a	INH/RIF	Three times weekly for 54 doses (18 wk)	78 (26 wk)	B (I)	B (II)
4	INH RIF EMB	Seven days per week for 56 doses (8 wk) or 5 d/wk for 40 doses (8 wk)¶	4a	INH/RIF	Seven days per week for 217 doses (31 wk) or 5 d/wk for 155 doses (31 wk)¶	273–195 (39 wk)	C (I)	C (II)
			4b	INH/RIF	Twice weekly for 62 doses (31 wk)	118–102 (39 wk)	C (I)	C (II)

Definition of abbreviations: EMB = Ethambutol; INH = isoniazid; PZA = pyrazinamide; RIF = rifampin; RPT = rifapentine.

* Definitions of evidence ratings: A = preferred; B = acceptable alternative; C = offer when A and B cannot be given; E = should never be given.

† Definition of evidence ratings: I = randomized clinical trial; II = data from clinical trials that were not randomized or were conducted in other populations; III = expert opinion.

‡ When DOT is used, drugs may be given 5 days/week and the necessary number of doses adjusted accordingly. Although there are no studies that compare five with seven daily doses, extensive experience indicates this would be an effective practice.

§ Patients with cavitation on initial chest radiograph and positive cultures at completion of 2 months of therapy should receive a 7-month (31 week; either 217 doses [daily] or 62 doses [twice weekly]) continuation phase.

¶ Five-day-a-week administration is always given by DOT. Rating for 5 day/week regimens is AIII.

Not recommended for HIV-infected patients with $CD4^+$ cell counts <100 cells/µl.

** Options 1c and 2b should be used only in HIV-negative patients who have negative sputum smears at the time of completion of 2 months of therapy and who do not have cavitation on initial chest radiograph (see text). For patients started on this regimen and found to have a positive culture from the 2-month specimen, treatment should be extended an extra 3 months.

continuation phase is recommended only for three groups: patients with cavitary pulmonary tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms and whose sputum culture obtained at the time of completion of 2 months of treatment is positive; patients whose initial phase of treatment did not include PZA; and patients being treated with once weekly INH and rifapentine and whose sputum culture obtained at the time of completion of the initial phase is positive. The continuation phase may be given daily (Regimens 1a and 4a), two times weekly by DOT (Regimens 1b, 2a, and 4b), or three times weekly by DOT (Regimen 3a). For human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-seronegative patients with noncavitary pulmonary tuberculosis (as determined by standard chest radiography), and negative sputum smears at completion of 2 months of treatment, the continuation phase may consist of rifapentine and INH given once weekly for 4 months by DOT (Regimens 1c and 2b) (Figure 1). If the culture at completion of the initial phase of treatment is positive, the once weekly INH and rifapentine continuation phase should be extended to 7 months. All of the 6-month regimens, except the INH–rifapentine once weekly continuation phase for persons with HIV infection (Rating EI), are rated as AI or AII, or BI or BII, in both HIV-infected and uninfected patients. The once-weekly continuation phase is contraindicated (Rating EI) in patients with HIV infection because of an unacceptable rate of failure/relapse, often with rifamycin-resistant organisms. For the same reason twice weekly treatment, either as part of the initial phase (Regimen 2) or continuation phase (Regimens 1b and 2a), is not recommended for HIV-infected patients with $CD4^+$ cell counts <100 cells/µl. These patients should receive either daily (initial phase) or three times weekly (continuation phase) treatment. Regimen 4 (and 4a/4b), a 9-month regimen, is rated CI for patients without HIV infection and CII for those with HIV infection.

Deciding To Initiate Treatment

The decision to initiate combination antituberculosis chemotherapy should be based on epidemiologic information; clinical, pathological, and radiographic findings; and the results of microscopic examination of acid-fast bacilli (AFB)–stained sputum (smears) (as well as other appropriately collected diagnostic specimens) and cultures for mycobacteria. A purified protein derivative (PPD)-tuberculin skin test may be done at the time of initial evaluation, but a negative PPD-tuberculin skin test does not exclude the diagnosis of active tuberculosis. However, a positive PPD-tuberculin skin test

TABLE 3. Doses* of antituberculosis drugs for adults and children†

Drug	Preparation	Adults/children	Doses			
			Daily	11×/wk	2×/wk	3×/wk
First-line drugs						
Isoniazid	Tablets (50 mg, 100 mg, 300 mg); elixir (50 mg/5 ml); aqueous solution (100 mg/ml) for intravenous or intramuscular injection	Adults (max.) Children (max.)	5 mg/kg (300 mg) 10–15 mg/kg (300 mg)	15 mg/kg (900 mg) —	15 mg/kg (900 mg) 20–30 mg/kg (900 mg)	15 mg/kg (900 mg) —
Rifampin	Capsule (150 mg, 300 mg); powder may be suspended for oral administration; aqueous solution for intravenous injection	Adults‡ (max.) Children (max.)	10 mg/kg (600 mg) 10–20 mg/kg (600 mg)	— —	10 mg/kg (600 mg) 10–20 mg/kg (600 mg)	10 mg/kg (600 mg) —
Rifabutin	Capsule (150 mg)	Adults‡ (max.) Children	5 mg/kg (300 mg) Appropriate dosing for children is unknown	— Appropriate dosing for children is unknown	5 mg/kg (300 mg) Appropriate dosing for children is unknown	5 mg/kg (300 mg) Appropriate dosing for children is unknown
Rifapentine	Tablet (150 mg, film coated)	Adults Children	— The drug is not approved for use in children	10 mg/kg (continuation phase) (600 mg) The drug is not approved for use in children	— The drug is not approved for use in children	— The drug is not approved for use in children
Pyrazinamide	Tablet (500 mg, scored)	Adults Children (max.)	See Table 4 15–30 mg/kg (2.0 g)	— —	See Table 4 50 mg/kg (2 g)	See Table 4 —
Ethambutol	Tablet (100 mg, 400 mg)	Adults Children§ (max.)	See Table 5 15–20 mg/kg daily (1.0 g)	— —	See Table 5 50 mg/kg (2.5 g)	See Table 5 —
Second-line drugs						
Cycloserine	Capsule (250 mg)	Adults (max.) Children (max.)	10–15 mg/kg/d (1.0 g in two doses), usually 500–750 mg/d in two doses¶ 10–15 mg/kg/d (1.0 g/d)	There are no data to support intermittent administration —	There are no data to support intermittent administration —	There are no data to support intermittent administration —
Ethionamide	Tablet (250 mg)	Adults# (max.) Children (max.)	15–20 mg/kg/d (1.0 g/d), usually 500–750 mg/d in a single daily dose or two divided doses# 15–20 mg/kg/d (1.0 g/d)	There are no data to support intermittent administration There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration There are no data to support intermittent administration
Streptomycin	Aqueous solution (1-g vials) for intravenous or intramuscular administration	Adults (max.) Children (max.)	** 20–40 mg/kg/d (1 g)	** —	** 20 mg/kg	** —
Amikacin/ kanamycin	Aqueous solution (500-mg and 1-g vials) for intravenous or intramuscular administration	Adults (max.) Children (max.)	** 15–30 mg/kg/d (1 g) intravenous or intramuscular as a single daily dose	** —	** 15–30 mg/kg	** —
Capreomycin	Aqueous solution (1-g vials) for intravenous or intramuscular administration	Adults (max.) Children (max.)	** 15–30 mg/kg/d (1 g) as a single daily dose	** —	** 15–30 mg/kg	** —
p-Aminosalicylic acid (PAS)	Granules (4-g packets) can be mixed with food; tablets (500 mg) are still available in some countries, but not in the United States; a solution for intravenous administration is available in Europe	Adults Children	8–12 g/d in two or three doses 200–300 mg/kg/d in two to four divided doses (10 g)	There are no data to support intermittent administration There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration There are no data to support intermittent administration
Levofloxacin	Tablets (250 mg, 500 mg, 750 mg); aqueous solution (500-mg vials) for intravenous injection	Adults Children	500–1,000 mg daily ††	There are no data to support intermittent administration ††	There are no data to support intermittent administration ††	There are no data to support intermittent administration ††

TABLE 3. (*Continued*) Doses* of antituberculosis drugs for adults and children†

Drug	Preparation	Adults/children	Doses			
			Daily	11×/wk	2×/wk	3×/wk
Moxifloxacin	Tablets (400 mg); aqueous solution (400 mg/250 ml) for intravenous injection	Adults	400 mg daily	There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration
		Children	‡‡	‡‡	‡‡	‡‡
Gatifloxacin	Tablets (400 mg); aqueous solution (200 mg/20 ml; 400 mg/40 ml) for intravenous injection	Adults	400 mg daily	There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration	There are no data to support intermittent administration
		Children	§§	§§	§§	§§

* Dose per weight is based on ideal body weight. Children weighing more than 40 kg should be dosed as adults.
† For purposes of this document adult dosing begins at age 15 years.
‡ Dose may need to be adjusted when there is concomitant use of protease inhibitors or nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors.
§ The drug can likely be used safely in older children but should be used with caution in children less than 5 years of age, in whom visual acuity cannot be monitored. In younger children EMB at the dose of 15 mg/kg per day can be used if there is suspected or proven resistance to INH or RIF.
¶ It should be noted that, although this is the dose recommended generally, most clinicians with experience using cycloserine indicate that it is unusual for patients to be able to tolerate this amount. Serum concentration measurements are often useful in determining the optimal dose for a given patient.
# The single daily dose can be given at bedtime or with the main meal.
** Dose: 15 mg/kg per day (1 g), and 10 mg/kg in persons more than 59 years of age (750 mg). Usual dose: 750–1,000 mg administered intramuscularly or intravenously, given as a single dose 5–7 days/week and reduced to two or three times per week after the first 2–4 months or after culture conversion, depending on the efficacy of the other drugs in the regimen.
†† The long-term (more than several weeks) use of levofloxacin in children and adolescents has not been approved because of concerns about effects on bone and cartilage growth. However, most experts agree that the drug should be considered for children with tuberculosis caused by organisms resistant to both INH and RIF. The optimal dose is not known.
‡‡ The long-term (more than several weeks) use of moxifloxacin in children and adolescents has not been approved because of concerns about effects on bone and cartilage growth. The optimal dose is not known.
§§ The long-term (more than several weeks) use of gatifloxacin in children and adolescents has not been approved because of concerns about effects on bone and cartilage growth. The optimal dose is not known.

TABLE 4. Suggested pyrazinamide doses, using whole tablets, for adults weighing 40–90 kilograms

	Weight (kg)*		
	40–55	56–75	76–90
Daily, mg (mg/kg)	1,000 (18.2–25.0)	1,500 (20.0–26.8)	2,000† (22.2–26.3)
Thrice weekly, mg (mg/kg)	1,500 (27.3–37.5)	2,500 (33.3–44.6)	3,000† (33.3–39.5)
Twice weekly, mg (mg/kg)	2,000 (36.4–50.0)	3,000 (40.0–53.6)	4,000† (44.4–52.6)

* Based on estimated lean body weight.
† Maximum dose regardless of weight.

TABLE 5. Suggested ethambutol doses, using whole tablets, for adults weighing 40–90 kilograms

	Weight (kg)*		
	40–55	56–75	76–90
Daily, mg (mg/kg)	800 (14.5–20.0)	1,200 (16.0–21.4)	1,600† (17.8–21.1)
Thrice weekly, mg (mg/kg)	1,200 (21.8–30.0)	2,000 (26.7–35.7)	2,400† (26.7–31.6)
Twice weekly, mg (mg/kg)	2,000 (36.4–50.0)	2,800 (37.3–50.0)	4,000† (44.4–52.6)

* Based on estimated lean body weight.
† Maximum dose regardless of weight.

supports the diagnosis of culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis, as well as latent tuberculosis infection in persons with stable abnormal chest radiographs consistent with inactive tuberculosis (see below).

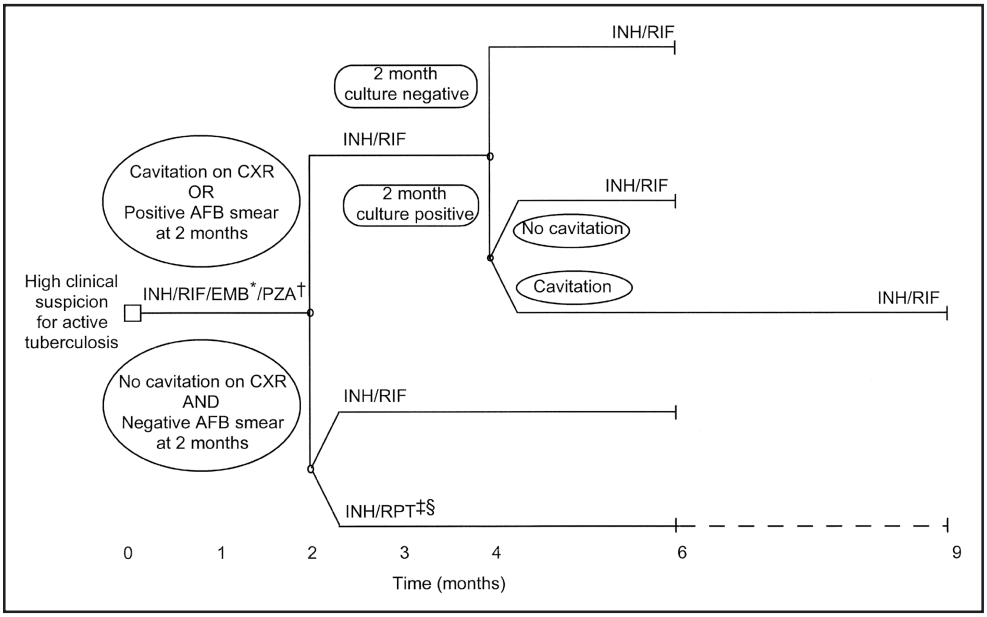
If the suspicion of tuberculosis is high or the patient is seriously ill with a disorder, either pulmonary or extrapulmonary, that is thought possibly to be tuberculosis, combination chemotherapy using one of the recommended regimens should be initiated promptly, often before AFB smear results are known and usually before mycobacterial culture results have been obtained. A positive AFB smear provides strong inferential evidence for the diagnosis of tuberculosis. If the diagnosis is confirmed by isolation of *M. tuberculosis* or a positive nucleic

TABLE 6. Epidemiological circumstances in which an exposed person is at increased risk of infection with drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis

- Exposure to a person who has known drug-resistant tuberculosis
- Exposure to a person with active tuberculosis who has had prior treatment for tuberculosis (treatment failure or relapse) and whose susceptibility test results are not known
- Exposure to persons with active tuberculosis from areas in which there is a high prevalence of drug resistance
- Exposure to persons who continue to have positive sputum smears after 2 months of combination chemotherapy
- Travel in an area of high prevalence of drug resistance

* This information is to be used in deciding whether or not to add a fourth drug (usually EMB) for children with active tuberculosis, not to infer the empiric need for a second-line treatment regimen.

FIGURE 1. Treatment algorithm for tuberculosis.



Patients in whom tuberculosis is proved or strongly suspected should have treatment initiated with isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol for the initial 2 months. A repeat smear and culture should be performed when 2 months of treatment has been completed. If cavities were seen on the initial chest radiograph or the acid-fast smear is positive at completion of 2 months of treatment, the continuation phase of treatment should consist of isoniazid and rifampin daily or twice weekly for 4 months to complete a total of 6 months of treatment. If cavitation was present on the initial chest radiograph and the culture at the time of completion of 2 months of therapy is positive, the continuation phase should be lengthened to 7 months (total of 9 months of treatment). If the patient has HIV infection and the $CD4^+$ cell count is <100/µl, the continuation phase should consist of daily or three times weekly isoniazid and rifampin. In HIV-uninfected patients having no cavitation on chest radiograph and negative acid-fast smears at completion of 2 months of treatment, the continuation phase may consist of either once weekly isoniazid and rifapentine, or daily or twice weekly isoniazid and rifampin, to complete a total of 6 months (bottom). Patients receiving isoniazid and rifapentine, and whose 2-month cultures are positive, should have treatment extended by an additional 3 months (total of 9 months).

* EMB may be discontinued when results of drug susceptibility testing indicate no drug resistance.
† PZA may be discontinued after it has been taken for 2 months (56 doses).
‡ RPT should not be used in HIV-infected patients with tuberculosis or in patients with extrapulmonary tuberculosis.
§ Therapy should be extended to 9 months if 2-month culture is positive.
CXR = chest radiograph; EMB = ethambutol; INH = isoniazid; PZA = pyrazinamide; RIF = rifampin; RPT = rifapentine.

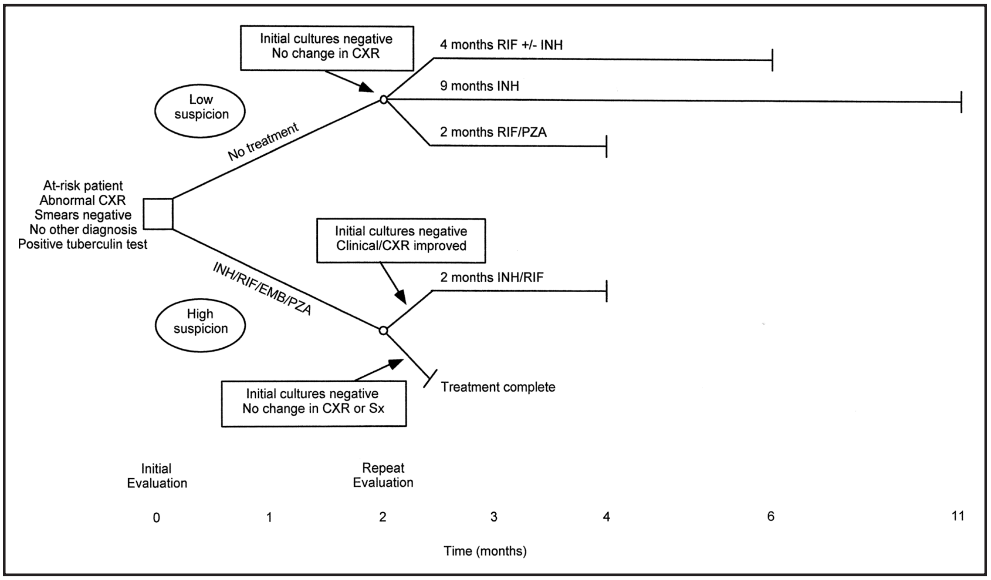
acid amplification test, treatment can be continued to complete a standard course of therapy (Figure 1). When the initial AFB smears and cultures are negative, a diagnosis other than tuberculosis should be considered and appropriate evaluations undertaken. If no other diagnosis is established and the PPD-tuberculin skin test is positive (in this circumstance a reaction of 5 mm or greater induration is considered positive), empirical combination chemotherapy should be initiated. If there is a clinical or radiographic response within 2 months of initiation of therapy and no other diagnosis has been established, a diagnosis of culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis can be made and treatment continued with an additional 2 months of INH and RIF to complete a total of 4 months of treatment, an adequate regimen for culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis (Figure 2). If there is no clinical or radiographic response by 2 months, treatment can be stopped and other diagnoses including inactive tuberculosis considered.

If AFB smears are negative and suspicion for active tuberculosis is low, treatment can be deferred until the results of mycobacterial cultures are known and a comparison chest radiograph is available (usually within 2 months) (Figure 2). In low-suspicion patients not initially being treated, if cultures are negative, the PPD-tuberculin skin test is positive (5 mm or greater induration), and the chest radiograph is unchanged after 2 months, one of the three regimens recommended for the treatment of latent tuberculosis infection could be used. These include (*1*) INH for a total of 9 months, (*2*) RIF with or without INH for a total of 4 months, or (*3*) RIF and PZA for a total of 2 months. Because of reports of an increased rate of hepatotoxicity with the RIF–PZA regimen, it should be reserved for patients who are not likely to complete a longer course of treatment, can be monitored closely, and do not have contraindications to the use of this egimen.

Baseline and Follow-Up Evaluations

Patients suspected of having tuberculosis should have appropriate specimens collected for microscopic examination and mycobacterial culture. When the lung is the site of disease, three sputum specimens should be obtained. Sputum induction with hypertonic saline may be necessary to obtain specimens and bronchoscopy (both performed under appropriate infection control measures) may be considered for patients who are unable to produce sputum, depending on the clinical circumstances. Susceptibility testing for INH, RIF, and EMB should be performed on a positive initial culture, regardless of the source of the specimen. Second-line drug susceptibility testing should be done only in reference laboratories and be limited to specimens from patients who have had prior therapy, who are contacts of patients with drug-resistant tuberculosis, who have demonstrated resistance to

FIGURE 2. Treatment algorithm for active, culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis and inactive tuberculosis



The decision to begin treatment for a patient with sputum smears that are negative depends on the degree of suspicion that the patient has tuberculosis. The considerations in choosing among the treatment options are discussed in text. If the clinical suspicion is high (bottom), then multidrug therapy should be initiated before acid-fast smear and culture results are known. If the diagnosis is confirmed by a positive culture, treatment can be continued to complete a standard course of therapy (see Figure 1). If initial cultures remain negative and treatment has consisted of multiple drugs for 2 months, then there are two options depending on repeat evaluation at 2 months (bottom): 1) if the patient demonstrates symptomatic or radiographic improvement without another apparent diagnosis, then a diagnosis of culture-negative tuberculosis can be inferred. Treatment should be continued with isoniazid and rifampin alone for an additional 2 months; 2) if the patient demonstrates neither symptomatic nor radiographic improvement, then prior tuberculosis is unlikely and treatment is complete once treatment including at least 2 months of rifampin and pyrazinamide has been administered. In low-suspicion patients not initially receiving treatment (top), if cultures remain negative, the patient has no symptoms, and the chest radiograph is unchanged at 2–3 months, there are three treatment options: these are 1) isoniazid for 9 months, 2) rifampin with or without isoniazid for 4 months, or 3) rifampin and pyrazinamide for 2 months. CXR = chest X-ray; EMB = ethambutol; INH = isoniazid; PZA = pyrazinamide; RIF = rifampin; Sx = signs/symptoms. (It should be noted that the RIF/PZA 2-month regimen should be used only for patients who are not likely to complete a longer course of treatment and can be monitored closely.)

rifampin or to other first-line drugs, or who have positive cultures after more than 3 months of treatment.

It is recommended that all patients with tuberculosis have counseling and testing for HIV infection, at least by the time treatment is initiated, if not earlier. For patients with HIV infection, a $CD4^+$ lymphocyte count should be obtained. Patients with risk factors for hepatitis B or C viruses (e.g., injection drug use, foreign birth in Asia or Africa, HIV infection) should have serologic tests for these viruses. For all adult patients baseline measurements of serum amino transferases (aspartate aminotransferase [AST], alanine aminotransferase [ALT]), bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase, and serum creatinine and a platelet count should be obtained. Testing of visual acuity and red-green color discrimination should be obtained when EMB is to be used.

During treatment of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, a sputum specimen for microscopic examination and culture should be obtained at a minimum of monthly intervals until two consecutive specimens are negative on culture. More frequent AFB smears may be useful to assess the early response to treatment and to provide an indication of infectiousness. For patients with extrapulmonary tuberculosis the frequency and kinds of evaluations will depend on the site involved. In addition, it is critical that patients have clinical evaluations at least monthly to identify possible adverse effects of the antituberculosis medications and to assess adherence. Generally, patients do not require follow-up after completion of therapy but should be instructed to seek care promptly if signs or symptoms recur.

Routine measurements of hepatic and renal function and platelet count are not necessary during treatment unless patients have baseline abnormalities or are at increased risk of hepatotoxicity (e.g., hepatitis B or C virus infection, alcohol abuse). At each monthly visit patients taking EMB should be questioned regarding possible visual disturbances including blurred vision or scotomata; monthly testing of visual acuity and color discrimination is recommended for patients taking doses that on a milligram per kilogram basis are greater than those listed in Table 5 and for patients receiving the drug for longer than 2 months.

Identification and Management of Patients at Increased Risk of Treatment Failure and Relapse

The presence of cavitation on the initial chest radiograph combined with having a positive sputum culture at the time the initial phase of treatment is completed has been shown in clinical trials to identify patients at high risk for adverse outcomes (treatment failure, usually defined by positive cultures after 4 months of treatment, or relapse, defined by recurrent tuberculosis at any time after completion of treatment and apparent cure). For this reason it is particularly important to conduct a microbiological evaluation 2 months after initiation of treatment (Figure 1). Approximately 80% of patients

with pulmonary tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms who are started on standard four-drug therapy will have negative sputum cultures at this time. Patients with positive cultures after 2 months of treatment should undergo careful evaluation to determine the cause. For patients who have positive cultures after 2 months of treatment and have not been receiving DOT, the most common reason is nonadherence to the regimen. Other possibilities, especially for patients receiving DOT, include extensive cavitary disease at the time of diagnosis, drug resistance, malabsorption of drugs, laboratory error, and biological variation in response.

In USPHS Study 22, nearly 21% of patients in the control arm of the study (a continuation phase of twice weekly INH and RIF) who had both cavitation on the initial chest radiograph and a positive culture at the 2-month juncture relapsed. Patients who had only one of these factors (either cavitation or a positive 2-month culture) had relapse rates of 5–6% compared with 2% for patients who had neither risk factor. In view of this evidence, it is recommended that, for patients who have cavitation on the initial chest radiograph and whose 2-month culture is positive, the minimum duration of treatment should be 9 months (a total of 84–273 doses depending on whether the drugs are given daily or intermittently) (Figure 1 and Table 2). The recommendation to lengthen the continuation phase of treatment is based on expert opinion and on the results of a study of the optimal treatment duration for patients with silicotuberculosis showing that extending treatment from 6 to 8 months greatly reduced the rate of relapse (Rating AIII). The recommendation is also supported by the results of a trial in which the once weekly INH–rifapentine continuation phase was extended to 7 months for patients at high risk of relapse. The rate of relapse was reduced significantly compared with historical control subjects from another trial in which the continuation phase was 4 months.

For patients who have either cavitation on the initial film or a positive culture after completing the initial phase of treatment (i.e., at 2 months), the rates of relapse were 5–6%. In this group decisions to prolong the continuation phase should be made on an individual basis.

Completion of Treatment

A full course of therapy (completion of treatment) is determined more accurately by the total number of doses taken, not solely by the duration of therapy. For example, the "6-month" daily regimen (given 7 days/week; see below) should consist of at least 182 doses of INH and RIF, and 56 doses of PZA. Thus, 6 months is the minimum duration of treatment and accurately indicates the amount of time the drugs are given only if there are no interruptions in drug administration. In some cases, either because of drug toxicity or nonadherence to the treatment regimen, the specified number of doses cannot be administered within the targeted period. In such cases the goal is to deliver the specified number of doses within a recommended maximum time. For example, for a 6-month daily regimen the 182 doses should be administered within 9 months of beginning treatment. If treatment is not completed within this period, the patient should be assessed to determine the appropriate action to take—continuing treatment for a longer duration or restarting treatment from the beginning, either of which may require more restrictive measures to be used to ensure completion.

Clinical experience suggests that patients being managed by DOT administered 5 days/week have a rate of successful therapy equivalent to those being given drugs 7 days/week. Thus, "daily therapy" may be interpreted to mean DOT given 5 days/week and the required number of doses adjusted accordingly. For example, for the 6-month "daily" regimen given 5 days/week the planned total number of doses is 130. (Direct observation of treatment given 5 days/week has been used in a number of clinical trials, including USPHS Study 22, but has not been evaluated in a controlled trial; thus, this modification should be rated AIII.) As an option, patients might be given the medications to take without DOT on weekends.

Interruptions in treatment may have a significant effect on the duration of therapy. Reinstitution of treatment must take into account the bacillary load of the patient, the point in time when the interruption occurred, and the duration of the interruption. In general, the earlier in treatment and the longer the duration of the interruption, the more serious the effect and the greater the need to restart therapy from the beginning.

Practical Aspects of Patient Management During Treatment

The first-line antituberculosis medications should be administered together; split dosing should be avoided. Fixed-dose combination preparations may be administered more easily than single drug tablets and may decrease the risk of acquired drug resistance and medication errors. Fixed-dose combinations may be used when DOT is given daily and are especially useful when DOT is not possible, but they are not formulated for use with intermittent dosing. It should be noted that for patients weighing more than 90 kg the dose of PZA in the three-drug combination is insufficient and additional PZA tablets are necessary. There are two combination formulations approved for use in the United States: INH and RIF (Rifamate®) and INH, RIF, and PZA (Rifater®).

Providers treating patients with tuberculosis must be especially vigilant for drug interactions. Given the frequency of

comorbid conditions, it is quite common for patients with tuberculosis to be taking a variety of other medications, the effects of which may be altered by the antituberculosis medications, especially the rifamycins. These interactions are described in Section 7, Drug Interactions.

Adverse effects, especially gastrointestinal upset, are relatively common in the first few weeks of antituberculosis therapy; however, first-line antituberculosis drugs, particularly RIF, must not be discontinued because of minor side effects. Although ingestion with food delays or moderately decreases the absorption of antituberculosis drugs, the effects of food are of little clinical significance. Thus, if patients have epigastric distress or nausea with the first-line drugs, dosing with meals or changing the hour of dosing is recommended. Administration with food is preferable to splitting a dose or changing to a second-line drug.

Drug-induced hepatitis, the most serious common adverse effect, is defined as a serum AST level more than three times the upper limit of normal in the presence of symptoms, or more than five times the upper limit of normal in the absence of symptoms. If hepatitis occurs INH, RIF, and PZA, all potential causes of hepatic injury, should be stopped immediately. Serologic testing for hepatitis viruses A, B, and C (if not done at baseline) should be performed and the patient questioned carefully regarding exposure to other possible hepatotoxins, especially alcohol. Two or more antituberculosis medications without hepatotoxicity, such as EMB, SM, amikacin/kanamycin, capreomycin, or a fluoroquinolone (levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, or gatifloxacin), may be used until the cause of the hepatitis is identified. Once the AST level decreases to less than two times the upper limit of normal and symptoms have significantly improved, the first-line medications should be restarted in sequential fashion. Close monitoring, with repeat measurements of serum AST and bilirubin and symptom review, is essential in managing these patients.

Treatment in Special Situations

HIV infection

Recommendations for the treatment of tuberculosis in HIV-infected adults are, with a few exceptions, the same as those for HIV-uninfected adults (Table 2). The INH–rifapentine once weekly continuation phase (Regimens 1c and 2b) is contraindicated in HIV-infected patients because of an unacceptably high rate of relapse, frequently with organisms that have acquired resistance to rifamycins. The development of acquired rifampin resistance has also been noted among HIV-infected patients with advanced immunosuppression treated with twice weekly rifampin- or rifabutin-based regimens. Consequently, patients with $CD4^+$ cell counts <100/µl should receive daily or three times weekly treatment (Regimen 1/1a or Regimen 3/3a). DOT and other adherence-promoting strategies are especially important for patients with HIV-related tuberculosis.

Management of HIV-related tuberculosis is complex and requires expertise in the management of both HIV disease and tuberculosis. Because HIV-infected patients are often taking numerous medications, some of which interact with antituberculosis medications, it is strongly encouraged that experts in the treatment of HIV-related tuberculosis be consulted. A particular concern is the interaction of rifamycins with antiretroviral agents and other antiinfective drugs. Rifampin can be used for the treatment of tuberculosis with certain combinations of antiretroviral agents. Rifabutin, which has fewer problematic drug interactions, may also be used in place of rifampin and appears to be equally effective although the doses of rifabutin and antiretroviral agents may require adjustment. As new antiretroviral agents and more pharmacokinetic data become available, these recommendations are likely to be modified.

On occasion, patients with HIV-related tuberculosis may experience a temporary exacerbation of symptoms, signs, or radiographic manifestations of tuberculosis while receiving antituberculosis treatment. This clinical or radiographic worsening (paradoxical reaction) occurs in HIV-infected patients with active tuberculosis and is thought to be the result of immune reconstitution as a consequence of effective antiretroviral therapy. Symptoms and signs may include high fevers, lymphadenopathy, expanding central nervous system lesions, and worsening of chest radiographic findings. The diagnosis of a paradoxical reaction should be made only after a thorough evaluation has excluded other etiologies, particularly tuberculosis treatment failure. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents may be useful for symptomatic relief. For severe paradoxical reactions, prednisone (1–2 mg/kg per day for 1–2 weeks, then in gradually decreasing doses) may be used, although there are no data from controlled trials to support this approach (Rating CIII).

Children

Because of the high risk of disseminated tuberculosis in infants and children younger than 4 years of age, treatment should be started as soon as the diagnosis of tuberculosis is suspected. In general, the regimens recommended for adults are also the regimens of choice for infants, children, and adolescents with tuberculosis, with the exception that ethambutol is not used routinely in children. Because there is a lower bacillary burden in childhood-type tuberculosis there is less concern with the development of acquired drug resistance. However, children and adolescents may develop "adult-type"

tuberculosis with upper lobe infiltration, cavitation, and sputum production. In such situations an initial phase of four drugs should be given until susceptibility is proven. When clinical or epidemiologic circumstances (Table 6) suggest an increased probability of INH resistance, EMB can be used safely at a dose of 15–20 mg/kg per day, even in children too young for routine eye testing. Streptomycin, kanamycin, or amikacin also can be used as the fourth drug, when necessary.

Most studies of treatment in children have used 6 months of INH and RIF supplemented during the first 2 months with PZA. This three-drug combination has a success rate of greater than 95% and an adverse drug reaction rate of less than 2%. Most treatment studies of intermittent dosing in children have used daily drug administration for the first 2 weeks to 2 months. DOT should always be used in treating children.

Because it is difficult to isolate *M. tuberculosis* from a child with pulmonary tuberculosis, it is frequently necessary to rely on the results of drug susceptibility tests of the organisms isolated from the presumed source case to guide the choice of drugs for the child. In cases of suspected drug-resistant tuberculosis in a child or when a source case isolate is not available, specimens for microbiological evaluation should be obtained via early morning gastric aspiration, bronchoalveolar lavage, or biopsy.

In general, extrapulmonary tuberculosis in children can be treated with the same regimens as pulmonary disease. Exceptions are disseminated tuberculosis and tuberculous meningitis, for which there are inadequate data to support 6-month therapy; thus 9–12 months of treatment is recommended.

The optimal treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis in children and adolescents with HIV infection is unknown. The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends that initial therapy should always include at least three drugs, and the total duration of therapy should be at least 9 months, although there are no data to support this recommendation.

Extrapulmonary tuberculosis

The basic principles that underlie the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis also apply to extrapulmonary forms of the disease. Although relatively few studies have examined treatment of extrapulmonary tuberculosis, increasing evidence suggests that 6- to 9-month regimens that include INH and RIF are effective. Thus, a 6-month course of therapy is recommended for treating tuberculosis involving any site with the exception of the meninges, for which a 9- 12-month regimen is recommended. Prolongation of therapy also should be considered for patients with tuberculosis in any site that is slow to respond. The addition of corticosteroids is recommended for patients with tuberculous pericarditis and tuberculous meningitis.

Culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis and radiographic evidence of prior pulmonary tuberculosis

Failure to isolate *M. tuberculosis* from persons suspected of having pulmonary tuberculosis on the basis of clinical features and chest radiographic examination does not exclude a diagnosis of active tuberculosis. Alternative diagnoses should be considered carefully and further appropriate diagnostic studies undertaken in persons with apparent culture-negative tuberculosis. The general approach to management is shown in Figure 2. A diagnosis of tuberculosis can be strongly inferred by the clinical and radiographic response to antituberculosis treatment. Careful reevaluation should be performed after 2 months of therapy to determine whether there has been a response attributable to antituberculosis treatment. If either clinical or radiographic improvement is noted and no other etiology is identified, treatment should be continued for active tuberculosis. Treatment regimens in this circumstance include one of the standard 6-month chemotherapy regimens or INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB for 2 months followed by INH and RIF for an additional 2 months (4 months total). However, HIV-infected patients with culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis should be treated for a minimum of 6 months.

Persons with a positive tuberculin skin test who have radiographic evidence of prior tuberculosis (e.g., upper lobe fibronodular infiltrations) but who have not received adequate therapy are at increased risk for the subsequent development of tuberculosis. Unless previous radiographs are available showing that the abnormality is stable, it is recommended that sputum examination (using sputum induction if necessary) be performed to assess the possibility of active tuberculosis being present. Also, if the patient has symptoms of tuberculosis related to an extrapulmonary site, an appropriate evaluation should be undertaken. Once active tuberculosis has been excluded (i.e., by negative cultures and a stable chest radiograph), the treatment regimens are those used for latent tuberculosis infection: INH for 9 months, RIF (with or without INH) for 4 months, or RIF and PZA for 2 months (for patients who are unlikely to complete a longer course and who can be monitored closely) (Figure 2).

Renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease

Specific dosing guidelines for patients with renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease are provided in Table 15. For patients undergoing hemodialysis, administration of all drugs after dialysis is preferred to facilitate DOT and to avoid premature removal of drugs such as PZA and cycloserine. To avoid toxicity it is important to monitor serum drug

concentrations in persons with renal failure who are taking cycloserine or EMB. There is little information concerning the effects of peritoneal dialysis on clearance of antituberculosis drugs.

Liver disease

INH, RIF, and PZA all can cause hepatitis that may result in additional liver damage in patients with preexisting liver disease. However, because of the effectiveness of these drugs (particularly INH and RIF), they should be used if at all possible, even in the presence of preexisting liver disease. If serum AST is more than three times normal before the initiation of treatment (and the abnormalities are not thought to be caused by tuberculosis), several treatment options exist. One option is to treat with RIF, EMB, and PZA for 6 months, avoiding INH. A second option is to treat with INH and RIF for 9 months, supplemented by EMB until INH and RIF susceptibility are demonstrated, thereby avoiding PZA. For patients with severe liver disease a regimen with only one hepatotoxic agent, generally RIF plus EMB, could be given for 12 months, preferably with another agent, such as a fluoroquinolone, for the first 2 months; however, there are no data to support this recommendation.

In all patients with preexisting liver disease, frequent clinical and laboratory monitoring should be performed to detect drug-induced hepatic injury.

Pregnancy and breastfeeding

Because of the risk of tuberculosis to the fetus, treatment of tuberculosis in pregnant women should be initiated whenever the probability of maternal disease is moderate to high. The initial treatment regimen should consist of INH, RIF, and EMB. Although all of these drugs cross the placenta, they do not appear to have teratogenic effects. Streptomycin is the only antituberculosis drug documented to have harmful effects on the human fetus (congenital deafness) and should not be used. Although detailed teratogenicity data are not available, PZA can probably be used safely during pregnancy and is recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO) and the International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease (IUATLD). If PZA is not included in the initial treatment regimen, the minimum duration of therapy is 9 months.

Breastfeeding should not be discouraged for women being treated with the first-line antituberculosis agents because the small concentrations of these drugs in breast milk do not produce toxicity in the nursing newborn. Conversely, drugs in breast milk should not be considered to serve as effective treatment for tuberculosis or for latent tuberculosis infection in a nursing infant. Pyridoxine supplementation (25 mg/day) is recommended for all women taking INH who are either pregnant or breastfeeding. The amount of pyridoxine in multivitamins is variable but generally less than the needed amount.

Management of Relapse, Treatment Failure, and Drug Resistance

Relapse refers to the circumstance in which a patient becomes and remains culture negative while receiving therapy but, at some point after completion of therapy, either becomes culture positive again or has clinical or radiographic deterioration that is consistent with active tuberculosis. In the latter situation rigorous efforts should be made to establish a diagnosis and to obtain microbiological confirmation of the relapse to enable testing for drug resistance. Most relapses occur within the first 6–12 months after completion of therapy. In nearly all patients with tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms and who were treated with rifamycin-containing regimens using DOT, relapses occur with susceptible organisms. However, in patients who received self-administered therapy or a nonrifamycin regimen and who have a relapse, the risk of acquired drug resistance is substantial. In addition, if initial drug susceptibility testing was not performed and the patient fails or relapses with a rifamycin-containing regimen given by DOT, there is a high likelihood that the organisms were resistant from the outset.

The selection of empirical treatment for patients with relapse should be based on the prior treatment scheme and severity of disease. For patients with tuberculosis that was caused by drug-susceptible organisms and who were treated under DOT, initiation of the standard four-drug regimen is appropriate until the results of drug susceptibility tests are available. However, for patients who have life-threatening forms of tuberculosis, at least three additional agents to which the organisms are likely to be susceptible should be included.

For patients with relapse who did not receive DOT, who were not treated with a rifamycin-based regimen, or who are known or presumed to have had irregular treatment, it is prudent to infer that drug resistance is present and to begin an expanded regimen with INH, RIF, and PZA plus an additional two or three agents based on the probability of in vitro susceptibility. Usual agents to be employed would include a fluoroquinolone (levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, or gatifloxacin), an injectable agent such as SM (if not used previously and susceptibility to SM had been established), amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin, with or without an additional oral drug.

Treatment failure is defined as continued or recurrently positive cultures during the course of antituberculosis therapy. After 3 months of multidrug therapy for pulmonary tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms, 90–95% of patients will have negative cultures and show clinical improvement. Thus,

patients with positive cultures after 3 months of what should be effective treatment must be evaluated carefully to identify the cause of the delayed conversion. Patients whose sputum cultures remain positive after 4 months of treatment should be deemed treatment failures.

Possible reasons for treatment failure in patients receiving appropriate regimens include nonadherence to the drug regimen (the most common reason), drug resistance, malabsorption of drugs, laboratory error, and extreme biological variation in response. If treatment failure occurs, early consultation with a specialty center is strongly advised. If failure is likely due to drug resistance and the patient is not seriously ill, an empirical retreatment regimen could be started or administration of an altered regimen could be deferred until results of drug susceptibility testing from a recent isolate are available. If the patient is seriously ill or sputum AFB smears are positive, an empirical regimen should be started immediately and continued until susceptibility tests are available. For patients who have treatment failure, *M. tuberculosis* isolates should be sent promptly to a reference laboratory for drug susceptibility testing to both first- and second-line agents.

A fundamental principle in managing patients with treatment failure is never to add a single drug to a failing regimen; so doing leads to acquired resistance to the new drug. Instead, at least two, and preferably three, new drugs to which susceptibility could logically be inferred should be added to lessen the probability of further acquired resistance. Empirical retreatment regimens might include a fluoroquinolone, an injectable agent such as SM (if not used previously and the patient is not from an area of the world having high rates of SM resistance), amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin, and an additional oral agent such as *p*-aminosalicylic acid (PAS), cycloserine, or ethionamide. Once drug-susceptibility test results are available, the regimen should be adjusted according to the results.

Patients having tuberculosis caused by strains of *M. tuberculosis* resistant to at least INH and RIF (multidrug-resistant [MDR]) are at high risk for treatment failure and further acquired drug resistance. Such patients should be referred to or consultation obtained from specialized treatment centers as identified by the local or state health departments or CDC. Although patients with strains resistant to RIF alone have a better prognosis than patients with MDR strains, they are also at increased risk for treatment failure and additional resistance and should be managed in consultation with an expert.

Definitive randomized or controlled studies have not been performed to establish optimum regimens for treating patients with the various patterns of drug-resistant tuberculosis; thus, treatment recommendations are based on expert opinion, guided by a set of general principles specified in Section 9, Management of Relapse, Treatment Failure, and Drug Resistance. Table 16 contains treatment regimens suggested for use in patients with various patterns of drug-resistant tuberculosis (all are rated AIII).

The role of resectional surgery in the management of patients with extensive pulmonary MDR tuberculosis has not been established in randomized studies and results have been mixed. Surgery should be performed by surgeons with experience in these situations and only after the patient has received several months of intensive chemotherapy. Expert opinion suggests that chemotherapy should be continued for 1–2 years postoperatively to prevent relapse.

Treatment of Tuberculosis in Low-Income Countries: Recommendations of the WHO and Guidelines from the IUATLD

To place the current guidelines in an international context it is necessary to have an understanding of the approaches to treatment of tuberculosis in high-incidence, low-income countries. It is important to recognize that the American Thoracic Society/CDC/Infectious Diseases Society of America (ATS/CDC/IDSA) recommendations cannot be assumed to be applicable under all epidemiologic and economic circumstances. The incidence of tuberculosis and the resources with which to confront the disease to an important extent determine the approaches used. Given the increasing proportion of patients in low-incidence countries who were born in high-incidence countries, it is also important for persons managing these cases to be familiar with the approaches used in the countries of origin.

The major international recommendations and guidelines for treating tuberculosis are those of the WHO and of the IUATLD. The WHO document was developed by an expert committee whereas the IUATLD document is a distillation of IUATLD practice, validated in the field.

The WHO and IUATLD documents target, in general, countries in which mycobacterial culture, drug susceptibility testing, radiographic facilities, and second-line drugs are not widely available as a routine. A number of differences exist between these new ATS/CDC/IDSA recommendations, and the current tuberculosis treatment recommendations of the WHO and guidelines of the IUATLD. Both international sets of recommendations are built around a national case management strategy called "DOTS," the acronym for "directly observed therapy, short course," in which direct observation of therapy (DOT) is only one of five key elements. The five components of DOTS are 1) government commitment to sustained tuberculosis control activities, 2) case detection by

sputum smear microscopy among symptomatic patients self-reporting to health services, 3) a standardized treatment regimen of 6–8 months for at least all confirmed sputum smear–positive cases, with DOT for at least the initial 2 months, 4) a regular, uninterrupted supply of all essential antituberculosis drugs, and 5) a standardized recording and reporting system that enables assessment of treatment results for each patient and of the tuberculosis control program overall.

A number of other differences exist as well:

- The WHO and the IUATLD recommend diagnosis and classification of tuberculosis cases and assessment of response based on sputum AFB smears. Culture and susceptibility testing for new patients is not recommended because of cost, limited applicability, and lack of facilities.
- Chest radiography is recommended by both the WHO and IUATLD only for patients with negative sputum smears and is not recommended at all for follow-up.
- Both 6- and 8-month treatment regimens are recommended by the WHO. The IUATLD recommends an 8-month regimen with thioacetazone in the continuation phase for HIV-negative patients. For patients suspected of having or known to have HIV infection, ethambutol is substituted for thioacetazone
- The WHO and the IUATLD recommend a standardized 8-month regimen for patients who have relapsed, had interrupted treatment, or have failed treatment. Patients who have failed supervised retreatment are considered "chronic" cases and are highly likely to have tuberculosis caused by MDR organisms. Susceptibility testing and a tailored regimen using second-line drugs based on the test results are recommended by the WHO, if testing and second-line drugs are available. The IUATLD recommendations do not address the issue.
- Neither baseline nor follow-up biochemical testing is recommended by the WHO and the IUATLD. It is recommended that patients be taught to recognize the symptoms associated with drug toxicity and to report them promptly.

A Research Agenda for Tuberculosis Treatment

New antituberculosis drugs are needed for three main reasons: 1) to shorten or otherwise simplify treatment of tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms, 2) to improve treatment of drug-resistant tuberculosis, and 3) to provide more efficient and effective treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. No truly novel compounds that are likely to have a significant impact on tuberculosis treatment are close to clinical trials. However, further work to optimize the effectiveness of once-a-week rifapentine regimens using higher doses of the drug and using rifapentine in combination with moxifloxacin is warranted, on the basis of experimental data.

New categories of drugs that have shown promise for use in treating tuberculosis include the nitroimidazopyrans and the oxazolidinones. Experimental data also suggest that a drug to inhibit an enzyme, isocitrate lyase, thought to be necessary for maintaining the latent state, might be useful for treatment of latent tuberculosis infection.

A number of other interventions that might lead to improved treatment outcome have been suggested, although none has undergone rigorous clinical testing. These include various drug delivery systems, cytokine inhibitors, administration of "protective" cytokines such as interferon-γ and interleukin-2, and nutritional supplements, especially vitamin A and zinc.

Research is also needed to identify factors that are predictive of a greater or lesser risk of relapse to determine optimal length of treatment. Identification of such factors would enable more efficient targeting of resources to supervise treatment. In addition, identification of behavioral factors that identify patients at greater or lesser likelihood of being adherent to therapy would also enable more efficient use of DOT.

1. Introduction and Background

Since 1971 the American Thoracic Society (ATS) and CDC have regularly collaborated to develop joint guidelines for the diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and control of tuberculosis (*1*). These documents have been intended to guide both public health programs and health care providers in all aspects of the clinical and public health management of tuberculosis in low-incidence countries, with a particular focus on the United States. The most recent version of guidelines for the treatment of tuberculosis was published in 1994 (*2*).

The current document differs from its predecessor in a number of important areas that are summarized above. The process by which this revision of the recommendations for treatment was developed was modified substantially from the previous versions. For the first time the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) has become a cosponsor of the statement, together with the ATS and CDC. The IDSA has had representation on prior statement committees but has not previously been a cosponsor of the document. Practice guidelines that serve to complement the current statement have been developed by the IDSA (*3*). In addition to the IDSA, representatives of the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), the (United States) National Tuberculosis Controllers Association (NTCA), the Canadian Thoracic Society (CTS), the IUATLD, and the WHO participated in the revision. By virtue of their different perspectives these committee members served to provide broader input and to help ensure that the guidelines are

Provider Responsibility

Treatment of tuberculosis benefits both the community as a whole and the individual patient; thus, any public health program or private provider (or both in a defined arrangement by which management is shared) undertaking to treat a patient with tuberculosis is assuming a public health function that includes not only prescribing an appropriate regimen but also ensuring adherence to the regimen until treatment is completed.

placed in an appropriate context. It should be emphasized that the current guidelines are intended for areas in which mycobacterial cultures, drug susceptibility tests, radiographic facilities, and second-line drugs are available, either immediately or by referral, on a routine basis.

For this revision of the recommendations essentially all clinical trials of antituberculosis treatment in the English language literature were reviewed and the strength of the evidence they presented was rated according to the IDSA/USPHS rating scale (*4*).

This revision of the recommendations for treatment of tuberculosis presents a significant philosophic departure from previous versions. In this document the responsibility for successful treatment of tuberculosis is placed primarily on the provider or program initiating therapy rather than on the patient. It is well established that appropriate treatment of tuberculosis rapidly renders the patient noninfectious, prevents drug resistance, minimizes the risk of disability or death from tuberculosis, and nearly eliminates the possibility of relapse. For these reasons, antituberculosis chemotherapy is both a personal and a public health measure that cannot be equated with the treatment of, for example, hypertension or diabetes mellitus, wherein the benefits largely accrue to the patient. Provider responsibility is a central concept in treating patients with tuberculosis, no matter what the source of their care. All reasonable attempts should be made to accommodate the patient so that a successful outcome is achieved. However, interventions such as detention may be necessary for patients who are persistently nonadherent.

The recommendations in this statement are not applicable under all epidemiologic circumstances or across all levels of resources that are available to tuberculosis control programs worldwide. Although the basic principles of therapy described in this document apply regardless of conditions, the diagnostic approach, methods of patient supervision, and monitoring for response and for adverse drug effects, and in some instances the regimens recommended, are quite different in high-incidence, low-income areas compared with low-incidence, high-income areas of the world. A summary of the important differences between the recommendations in this document and those of the IUATLD and the WHO is found in Section 10,Treatment of Tuberculosis in Low-Income Countries: Recommendations of the WHO and the IUTLD.

In the United States there has been a call for the elimination of tuberculosis, and a committee constituted by the Institute of Medicine (IOM) issued a set of recommendations for reaching this goal (*5*). The IOM committee had two main recommendations related to treatment of tuberculosis; first, that all U.S jurisdictions have health regulations that mandate completion of therapy (treatment until the patient is cured); and second, that all treatment be administered in the context of patient-centered programs that are based on individual patient characteristics and needs. The IOM recommendations emphasize the importance of the structure and organization of treatment services, as well as the drugs that are used, to treat patients effectively. This philosophy is the core of the DOTS strategy (described in Section 10 Treatment of Tuberculosis in Low-Income Countries: Recommendations oof the WHO and the IUTLD), developed by the IUATLD and implemented globally by the WHO. Thus, although there are superficial differences in the approach to tuberculosis treatment between high- and low-incidence countries, the fundamental concern, regardless of where treatment is given, is ensuring patient adherence to the drug regimen and successful completion of therapy (*6*).

References

1. DuMelle FJ, Hopewell PC. The CDC and the American Lung Association/American Thoracic Society: an enduring public/private partnership. In: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: a century of notable events in TB control. TB Notes Newslett 2000;1:23–27.
2. American Thoracic Society, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Treatment of tuberculosis and tuberculosis infection in adults and children. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;149:1359–1374. Available at http://www.thoracic.org/adobe/statements/tbchild1-16.pdf
3. Horsburgh CR Jr, Feldman S, Ridzon R. Practice guidelines for the treatment of tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 2000;31:633–639.
4. Gross PA, Barrett TL, Dellinger EP, Krause PJ, Martone WJ, McGowan JE Jr, Sweet RL, Wenzel RP. Purpose of quality standards for infectious diseases. Clin Infect Dis 1994;18:421.
5. Geiter LJ, editor. Ending neglect: the elimination of tuberculosis in the United States. Institute of Medicine, Committee on Elimination of Tuberculosis in the United States. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 2000. Available at http://www.nap.edu/catalog/9837.html.
6. World Health Organization. What is DOTS? A guide to understanding the WHO-recommended TB control strategy known as DOTS. WHO/CDS/CPC/TB/99.270. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 1999. Available at http://www.who.int/gtb/dots.

2. Organization and Supervision of Treatment

Successful treatment of tuberculosis depends on more than the science of chemotherapy. To have the highest likelihood of success, chemotherapy must be provided within a clinical and social framework based on an individual patient's circumstances. Optimal organization of treatment programs requires an effective network of primary and referral services and cooperation between clinicians and public health officials, between health care facilities and community outreach programs, and between the private and public sectors of medical care. This section describes the approaches to organization of treatment that serve to ensure that treatment has a high likelihood of being successful.

As noted previously, antituberculosis chemotherapy is both a personal health measure intended to cure the sick patient and a basic public health strategy intended to reduce the transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Typically, tuberculosis treatment is provided by public health departments, often working in collaboration with other providers and organizations including private physicians, community health centers, migrant health centers, correctional facilities, hospitals, hospices, long-term care facilities, and homeless shelters. Private providers and public health departments may cosupervise patients, assuring that the patient completes therapy in a setting that is not only mutually agreeable but also enables access to tuberculosis expertise and resources that might otherwise not be available. In managed care settings delivery of tuberculosis treatment may require a more structured public/private partnership, often defined by a contract, to assure completion of therapy. Regardless of the means by which treatment is provided, the ultimate legal authority for assuring that patients complete therapy rests with the public health system.

2.1. Role of the Health Department

The responsibility of the health department in the control of tuberculosis is to ensure that all persons who are suspected of having tuberculosis are identified and evaluated promptly and that an appropriate course of treatment is prescribed and completed successfully (*1,2*). A critical component of the evaluation scheme is access to proficient microbiological laboratory services, for which the health department is responsible.

The responsibilities of the health department may be accomplished indirectly by epidemiologic surveillance and monitoring of treatment decisions and outcome, applying generally agreed-on standards and guidelines, or more directly by provision of diagnostic and treatment services, as well as by conducting epidemiologic investigations. Given the diverse sociodemographic characteristics of patients with tuberculosis and the many mechanisms by which health care is delivered, the means by which the goals of the health department are accomplished may be quite varied.

In dealing with individual patients, approaches that focus on each person's needs and characteristics should be used to determine a tailored treatment plan that is designed to ensure completion of therapy (*3*). Such treatment plans are developed with the patient as an active participant together with the physician and/or nurse, outreach workers, social worker (when needed), and others as appropriate. Given that one-half the current incident cases of tuberculosis in the United States were born outside the United States (similar circumstances prevail in most other low-incidence countries), translation of materials into the patient's primary language is often necessary to ensure his/her participation in developing the treatment plan. Ideally, a specific case manager is assigned individual responsibility for assuring that the patient completes therapy. The treatment plan is reviewed periodically and revised as needed. These reviews may be accomplished in meetings between the patient and the assigned provider, as well as more formally through case and cohort evaluations. The treatment plan is based on the principle of using the least restrictive measures that are likely to achieve success. The full spectrum of measures that may be employed ranges from, at an absolute minimum, monthly monitoring of the patient in the outpatient setting to legally mandated hospitalization (*4*). Directly observed therapy (DOT) is the preferred initial means to assure adherence. For nonadherent patients more restrictive measures are implemented in a stepwise fashion. Any approach must be balanced, ensuring that the needs and rights of the patient, as well as those of the public, are met. Care plans for patients being managed in the private sector should be developed jointly by the health department and the private provider, and must address identified and anticipated barriers to adherence.

2.2. Promoting Adherence

Louis Pasteur once said, "The microbe is nothing...the terrain everything" (*5*). Assuming appropriate drugs are prescribed, the terrain (the circumstances surrounding each patient that may affect his or her ability to complete treatment)

What's DOT?

Direct observation of therapy (DOT) involves providing the antituberculosis drugs directly to the patient and watching as he/she swallows the medications. It is the preferred core management strategy for all patients with tuberculosis.

becomes the most important consideration in completion of tuberculosis treatment. Many factors may be part of this terrain. Factors that interfere with adherence to the treatment regimen include cultural and linguistic barriers to cooperation, lifestyle differences, homelessness, substance abuse, and a large number of other conditions and circumstances that, for the patient, are priorities that compete with taking treatment for tuberculosis (*6*). Barriers may be patient related, such as conflicting health beliefs, alcohol or drug dependence, or mental illness, or they may be system related, such as lack of transportation, inconvenient clinic hours, and lack of interpreters (*7*). Effective tuberculosis case management identifies and characterizes the terrain and determines an appropriate care plan based on each of the identified factors. Additional advantages of the patient-centered approach are that, by increasing communication with the patient, it provides opportunities for further education concerning tuberculosis and enables elicitation of additional information concerning contacts.

To maximize completion of therapy, patient-centered programs identify and utilize a broad range of approaches based on the needs and circumstances of individual patients. Among these approaches, DOT is the preferred initial strategy and deserves special emphasis. Although DOT itself has not been subjected to controlled trials in low-incidence areas (and, thus, is rated AII), observational studies and a meta-analysis in the United States strongly suggest that DOT, coupled with individualized case management, leads to the best treatment results (*8*–*10*). To date there have been three published studies of DOT in high-incidence areas, two of which (*11*,*12*) showed no benefit and one (*13*) in which there was a significant advantage for DOT. What is clear from these studies is that DOT cannot be limited merely to passive observation of medication ingestion; there must be aggressive interventions when patients miss doses. Using DOT in this manner can only improve results.

DOT can be provided daily or intermittently in the office, clinic, or in the "field" (patient's home, place of employment, school, street corner, bar, or any other site that is mutually agreeable) by appropriately trained personnel. DOT should be used for all patients residing in institutional settings such as hospitals, nursing homes, or correctional facilities, or in other settings, such as methadone treatment sites, that are conducive to observation of therapy (*14*). However, even in such supervised settings careful attention must be paid to ensuring that ingestion of the medication is, in fact, observed. It is essential that all patients being treated with regimens that use intermittent drug administration have all doses administered under DOT because of the potentially serious consequences of missed doses. DOT also enables early identification of nonadherence, adverse drug reactions, and clinical worsening of tuberculosis. DOT provides a close connection to the health care system for a group of patients at high risk of other adverse health events and, thus, should facilitate identification and management of other conditions.

The use of DOT does not guarantee ingestion of all doses of every medication (*15*). Patients may miss appointments, may not actually swallow the pills, or may deliberately regurgitate the medications. Consequently, all patients, including those who are being treated by DOT, should continue to be monitored for signs of treatment failure. DOT is only one aspect of a comprehensive patient-centered program that, in addition, includes incentives and enablers described subsequently (*16*–*20*). Patients who are more likely to present a transmission risk to others or are more likely to have problems with adherence (Table 7) should be prioritized for DOT when resources are limited. When DOT is not being used, fixed-dose combination preparations (see Section 6.2, Fixed-Dose Combination Preparations) containing INH and RIF or INH, RIF, and PZA reduce the risk of the patient taking only one drug and may help prevent the development of drug resistance. Combination formulations are easier to administer and also may reduce medication errors.

Depending on the identified obstacles to completion of therapy, the treatment plan may also include enablers and incentives such as those listed in Table 8. Studies have examined the use of a patient-centered approach that utilizes DOT in addition to other adherence-promoting tools (*9*,*21*,*22*). These studies demonstrate, as shown in Figure 3, that "enhanced DOT" (DOT together with incentives and enablers) produces the highest treatment completion rates (in excess of 90% across a range of geographic and socioeconomic settings), and reinforces the importance of patient-related factors in designing and implementing case management (*9*,*23*).

TABLE 7. Priority situations for the use of directly observed therapy

1. Patients with the following conditions/circumstances:
   - Pulmonary tuberculosis with positive sputum smears
   - Treatment failure
   - Drug resistance
   - Relapse
   - HIV infection
   - Previous treatment for either active tuberculosis or latent tuberculosis infection
   - Current or prior substance abuse
   - Psychiatric illnesses
   - Memory impairment
   - Previous nonadherence to therapy
2. Children and adolescents

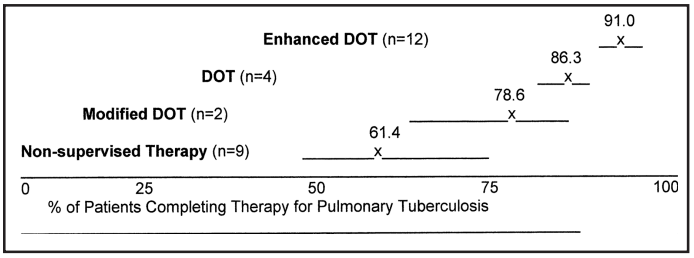
TABLE 8. Possible components of a multifaceted, patient-centered treatment strategy

Enablers: Interventions to assist the patient in completing therapy*
- Transportation vouchers
- Child care
- Convenient clinic hours and locations
- Clinic personnel who speak the languages of the populations served
- Reminder systems and follow-up of missed appointments
- Social service assistance (referrals for substance abuse treatment and counseling, housing, and other services)†
- Outreach workers (bilingual/bicultural as needed; can provide many services related to maintaining patient adherence, including provision of DOT, follow-up on missed appointments, monthly monitoring, transportation, sputum collection, social service assistance, and educational reinforcement)
- Integration of care for tuberculosis with care for other conditions

Incentives: Interventions to motivate the patient, tailored to individual patient wishes and needs and, thus, meaningful to the patient*
- Food stamps or snacks and meals
- Restaurant coupons
- Assistance in finding or provision of housing‡
- Clothing or other personal products
- Books
- Stipends
- Patient contract

Definition of abbreviation: DOT = Directly observed therapy.
* **Source:** Burman WJ, Cohn DL, Rietmeijer CA, Judson FN, Sbabaro JA, Reves RR. Noncompliance with directly observed therapy for tuberculosis: epidemiology and effect on the outcome of treatment. Chest 1997;111:1168–1173.
† **Source:** Bayer R, Stayton C, Devarieux M, Healton C, Landsman S, Tsai W. Directly observed therapy and treatment completion in the United States; is universal supervised therapy necessary? Am J Public Health 1998;88:1052–1058.
‡ **Source:** Volmink J, Matchaba P, Gainer P. Directly observed therapy and treatment adherence. Lancet 2000;355:1345–1350.

FIGURE 3. Range and median of treatment completion rates by treatment strategy for pulmonary tuberculosis reported in 27 studies



DOT = Directly observed therapy; n = number of studies; Modified DOT = DOT given only for a portion of the treatment period, often while the patient was hospitalized; Enhanced DOT = individualized incentives and enablers were provided in addition to DOT.
Source: Chaulk CP, Kazdanjian VA. Directly observed therapy for treatment completion of tuberculosis: consensus statement of the Public Health Tuberculosis Guidelines Panel. JAMA 1998;279:943–948. Reprinted with permission.

Intensive educational efforts should be initiated as soon as the patient is suspected of having tuberculosis. The instruction should be at an educational level appropriate for the patient and should include information about tuberculosis, expected outcomes of treatment, the benefits and possible adverse effects of the drug regimen, methods of supervision, assessment of response, and a discussion of infectiousness and infection control. The medication regimen must be explained in clear, understandable language and the verbal explanation followed with written instructions. An interpreter is necessary when the patient and health care provider do not speak the same language. Materials should be appropriate for the culture, language, age, and reading level of the patient. Relevant information should be reinforced at each visit.

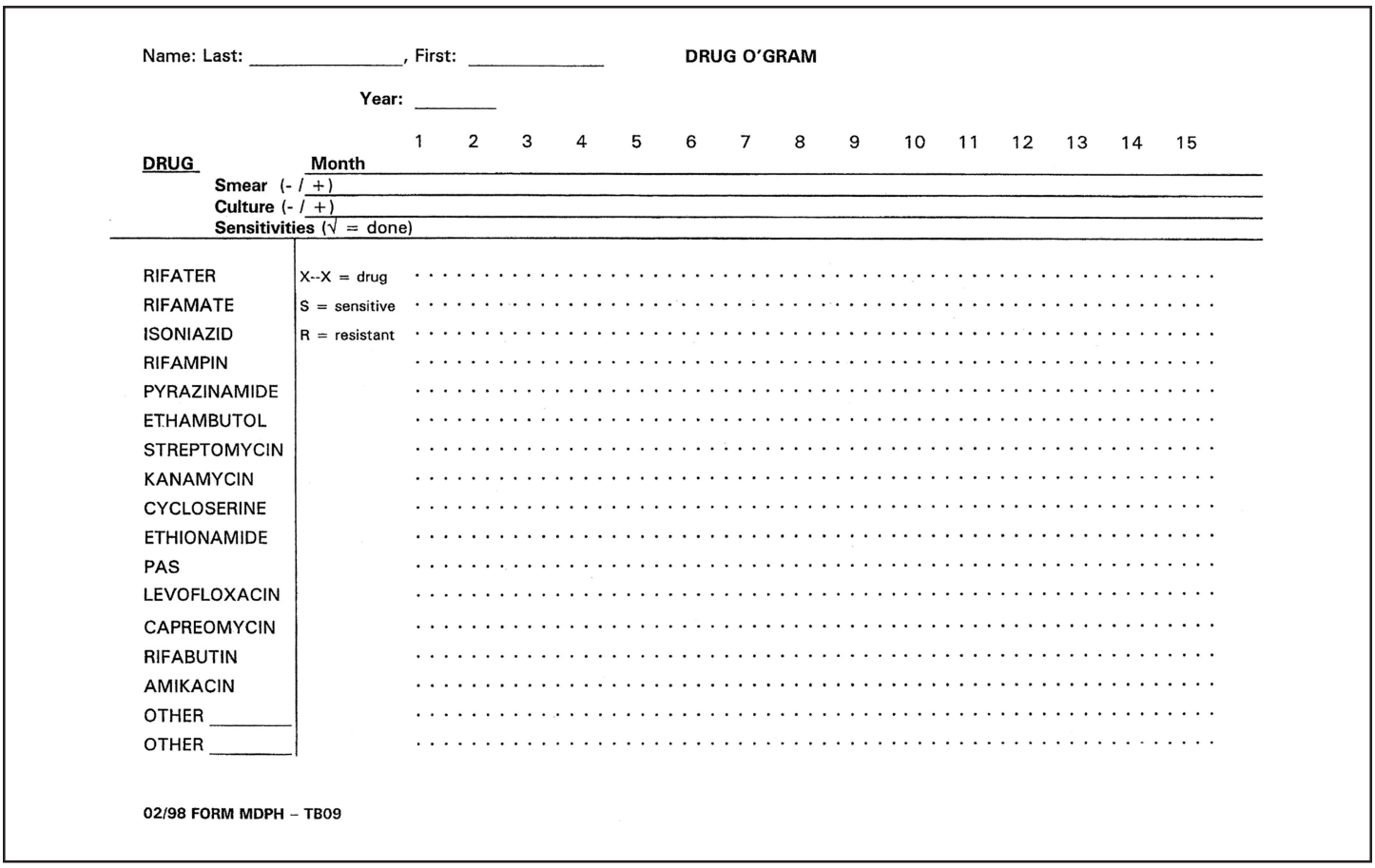
The patient's clinical progress and the treatment plan must be reviewed at least monthly to evaluate the response to therapy and to identify adherence problems. Use of a record system (Figure 4) either manual or computer-based, that quantifies the dosage and frequency of medication administered, indicates AFB smear and culture status, and notes symptom improvement as well as any adverse effects of treatment serves to facilitate the regular reviews and also provides data for cohort analyses. In addition, adherence monitoring by direct methods, such as the detection of drugs or drug metabolites in the patient's urine, or indirect methods, such as pill counts or a medication monitor, should be a part of routine management, especially if the patient is not being given DOT.

Tracking patients is also a critical concern for those charged with assuring completion of treatment. It has been shown that patients who move from one jurisdiction to another before completion of therapy are much more likely to default than patients who do not move (*24*). Factors that have been shown to be associated with moving/defaulting include diagnosis of tuberculosis in a state correctional facility, drug and alcohol

Tracking Tuberculosis

Inter- and intrastate notifications constitute the key patient-tracking systems for patients moving within the United States. International notifications can also be made, although specific tracking programs vary by country. Currently there are two formal patient-tracking systems in operation for patients moving across the United States–Mexico border: *TB Net*, operated by the Migrant Clinician Network based in Austin, Texas (http://www.migrantclinician.org; telephone, 512-327-2017) and *Cure TB*, managed by the San Diego County, California, Division of Tuberculosis Control (http://www.curetb.org; telephone, 619-692-5719).

FIGURE 4. Example of flow chart for patient monitoring



abuse, and homelessness. Communication and coordination of services among different sources of care and different health departments are especially important for patients in these groups as well as for migrant workers and other patients with no permanent home. Such communication may also be necessary across national boundaries, especially the United States–Mexico border, and there are systems in place to facilitate such communication and tracking.

Some patients, for example those with tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms, or who have comorbid conditions, such as HIV infection, alcoholism, or other significant underlying disorders, may need to be hospitalized in a facility where tuberculosis expertise is available and where there are appropriate infection control measures in place. Hospitalization may be necessary for nonadherent patients for whom less restrictive measures have failed (*25–27*). Public health laws exist in most states that allow the use of detainment under these circumstances, at least for patients who remain infectious (*28*). Court-ordered DOT has been used successfully in some states as a less costly alternative. The use of these interventions depends on the existence of appropriate laws, cooperative courts, and law enforcement officials, and the availability of appropriate facilities. Health departments must be consulted to initiate legal action when it is necessary.

References

1. CDC Essential components of a tuberculosis prevention and control program. MMWR 1995;44(RR-11):1–16.
2. Simone PM, Fujiwara PI. Role of the health department: legal and public health implications. In: Schlossberg D, editor. Tuberculosis and nontuberculous mycobacterial infections, 4th edition. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders, 1999:130–9.
3. Etkind SC. The role of the public health department in tuberculosis control. Med Clin North Am 1993;77:1303–14.
4. National Tuberculosis Controllers Association, National TB Nursing Consultant Coalition. Tuberculosis nursing: a comprehensive guide to patient care. Atlanta, GA: National Tuberculosis Controllers Association and National Tuberculosis Nursing Consultant Coalition, 1997:69–84.
5. Delhoume L. De Claude Bernard a d'Arsonval. Paris: J.B. Baillière et Fils, 1939:595.
6. Moss AR, Hahn JA, Tulsky JP, Daley CL, Small PM, Hopewell PC. Tuberculosis in the homeless: a prospective study. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;162:460–4.

Legal Action For Tuberculosis in New York City: 1993–1999

- Regulatory orders were issued for less than 4% of 8,000 patients.
- Detainment was based on tuberculosis status, not on sociodemographic factors.
- Legal orders varied:
  - DOT—150 patients
  - Detainment—139 patients
  - Examination for tuberculosis ordered—12 patients
  - Completion of treatment ordered—3 patients
- Less restrictive, court-ordered DOT was often as effective as detainment: 96% (excluding those who died or moved) completed treatment; 2% continued treatment for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (from Gasner and coworkers [*27*])

7. Sumartojo E. When tuberculosis treatment fails: a social behavioral account of patient adherence. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;147:1311–20.
8. Chaulk CP, Moore-Rice K, Rizzo R, Chaisson RE. Eleven years of community-based directly observed therapy for tuberculosis. JAMA 1995;274:945–51.
9. Chaulk CP, Kazandjian VA. Directly observed therapy for treatment completion of tuberculosis: census statement of the Public Health Tuberculosis Guidelines Panel. JAMA 1998;279:943–8.
10. Weis SE, Slocum PC, Blais FX, King B, Nunn M, Matney GB, Gomez E, Foresman BH. The effect of directly observed therapy on the rates of drug resistance and relapse in tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 1994;330:1179–84.
11. Zwarenstein M, Schoeman JH, Vundule C, Lombard CJ, Tatley M. Randomised controlled trial of self-supervised and directly observed treatment of tuberculosis. Lancet 1998;352:1340–3.
12. Walley JD, Khan MR, Newell JN, Khan MH. Effectiveness of the direct observation component of DOTS for tuberculosis: a randomised controlled trial in Pakistan. Lancet 2001;357:664–9.
13. Kamolratanakul P, Sawert H, Lertmaharit S, Kasetjaroen Y, Akksilp S, Tulaporn C, Punnachest K, Na-Songkhla S, Payanandana V. Randomized controlled trial of directly observed treatment (DOT) for patients with pulmonary tuberculosis in Thailand. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 1999;5:552–7.
14. Snyder DC, Paz EA, Mohle-Boetani JC, Fallstad R, Balck RL, Chin DP. Tuberculosis prevention in methadone maintenance clinics: effectiveness and cost-effectiveness. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1999;160:178–85.
15. Burman WJ, Cohn DL, Rietmeijer CA, Judson FN, Sbarbaro JA, Reves RR. Noncompliance with directly observed therapy for tuberculosis: epidemiology and effect on the outcome of treatment. Chest 1997;111:1168–73.
16. Volmink J, Matchaba P, Garner P. Directly observed therapy and treatment adherence. Lancet 2000;355:1345–50.
17. Bayer R, Stayton C, Desvarieux M, Healton C, Landesman S, Tsai W. Directly observed therapy and treatment completion in the United States: is universal supervised therapy necessary? Am J Public Health 1998;88:1052–8.
18. Poszik CJ. Compliance with tuberculosis therapy. Med Clin North Am 1993;77:1289–1300.
19. Lobue PA, Cass R, Lobo D, Moser K, Catanzaro A. Development of housing programs to aid in the treatment of tuberculosis in homeless individuals: a pilot study. Chest 1999;115:218–23.
20. Black B, Bruce ME. Treating tuberculosis: the essential role of social work. Soc Work Health Care 1998;26:51–68.
21. Moore RD, Chaulk CP, Griffiths R, Cavalcante S, Chaisson RE. Cost-effectiveness of directly observed versus self-administered therapy for tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1996;154:1013–9.
22. Burman WJ, Dalton CB, Cohn DL, Butler RG, Reves RR. A cost-effectiveness analysis of directly observed therapy versus self-administered therapy for treatment of tuberculosis. Chest 1997;112:63–70.
23. Davidson H, Smirnoff M, Klein SJ, Burdick E. Patient satisfaction with care at directly observed therapy programs for tuberculosis in New York City. Am J Public Health 1999;89:1567–70.
24. Cummings KC, Mohle-Boetani J, Royce SE, Chin DP. Movement of tuberculosis patients and the failure to complete antituberculosis treatment. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1998;157:1249–52.
25. Oscherwitz T, Tulsky JP, Roger S, Sciortino S, Alpers A, Royce S, Lo B. Detention of persistently nonadherent patients with tuberculosis. JAMA 1997;278:843–6.
26. Singleton L, Turner M, Haskal R, Etkind S, Tricarico M, Nardell E. Long term hospitalization for tuberculosis control: experience with a medical–psychosocial inpatient unit. JAMA 1997;278:838–42.
27. Gasner MR, Maw KL, Feldman GE, Fujiwara PI, Frieden TR. The use of legal action in New York City to ensure treatment of tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 1999;340:359–66.
28. Gostin LO. Controlling the resurgent tuberculosis epidemic: a 50 state survey of TB statutes and proposals for reform. JAMA 1993;269:255–61.

3. Drugs in Current Use

Currently, there are 10 drugs approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treating tuberculosis (Table 9). In addition, the fluoroquinolones, although not approved by the FDA for tuberculosis, are used relatively commonly to treat tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms or for patients who are intolerant of some of the first-line drugs. Rifabutin, approved for use in preventing *Mycobacterium avium* complex disease in patients with HIV infection but not approved for tuberculosis, is useful for treating tuberculosis in patients concurrently taking drugs that have

TABLE 9. Antituberculosis drugs currently in use in the United States

First-line drugs	Second-line drugs
Isoniazid	Cycloserine
Rifampin	Ethionamide
Rifapentine	Levofloxacin*
Rifabutin*	Moxifloxacin*
Ethambutol	Gatifloxacin*
Pyrazinamide	*p*-Aminosalicylic acid
	Streptomycin
	Amikacin/kanamycin*
	Capreomycin

* Not approved by the Food and Drug Administration for use in the treatment of tuberculosis.

unacceptable interactions with other rifamycins. Amikacin and kanamycin, nearly identical aminoglycoside drugs used in treating patients with tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms, are not approved by the FDA for tuberculosis.

Of the approved drugs isoniazid (INH), rifampin (RIF), ethambutol (EMB), and pyrazinamide (PZA) are considered first-line antituberculosis agents and form the core of initial treatment regimens. Rifabutin and rifapentine may also be considered first-line agents under the specific situations described below. Streptomycin (SM) was formerly considered to be a first-line agent and, in some instances, is still used in initial treatment; however, an increasing prevalence of resistance to SM in many parts of the world has decreased its overall usefulness. The remaining drugs are reserved for special situations such as drug intolerance or resistance.

The drug preparations available currently and the recommended doses are shown in Tables 3, 4, and 5.

3.1. First-Line Drugs

3.1.1. Isoniazid

Role in treatment regimen. Isoniazid (INH) is a first-line agent for treatment of all forms of tuberculosis caused by organisms known or presumed to be susceptible to the drug. It has profound early bactericidal activity against rapidly dividing cells (*1,2*).

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 5 mg/kg (300 mg) daily; 15 mg/kg (900 mg) once, twice, or three times weekly.

Children (maximum): 10–15 mg/kg (300 mg) daily; 20–30 mg/kg (900 mg) twice weekly (*3*).

Preparations. Tablets (50 mg, 100 mg, 300 mg); syrup (50 mg/5 ml); aqueous solution (100 mg/ml) for intravenous or intramuscular injection.

Adverse effects.

Asymptomatic elevation of aminotransferases: Aminotransferase elevations up to five times the upper limit of normal occur in 10–20% of persons receiving INH alone for treatment of latent tuberculosis infection (*4*). The enzyme levels usually return to normal even with continued administration of the drug.

Clinical hepatitis: (see Table 10.) Data indicate that the incidence of clinical hepatitis is lower than was previously thought. Hepatitis occurred in only 0.1–0.15% of 11,141 persons receiving INH alone as treatment for latent tuberculosis infection in an urban tuberculosis control program (*5*). Prior studies suggested a higher rate, and a meta-analysis of six studies estimated the rate of clinical hepatitis in patients given INH alone to be 0.6% (*6–8*). In the meta-analysis the rate of clinical hepatitis was 1.6% when INH was given with other agents, not including RIF. The risk was higher when the drug was combined with RIF, an average of 2.7% in 19 reports (*8*). For INH alone the risk increases with increasing age; it is uncommon in persons less than 20 years of age but is nearly 2% in persons aged 50–64 years (*6*). The risk also may be increased in persons with underlying liver disease, in those with a history of heavy alcohol consumption, and, data suggest, in the postpartum period, particularly among Hispanic women (*9*).

TABLE 10. Clinical hepatitis in persons taking isoniazid and rifampin*

Drug	Number of studies	Patients	Clinical Hepatitis (%)
INH	6	38,257	0.6
INH plus other drugs but *not* RIF	10	2,053	1.6
INH plus RIF	19	6,155	2.7
RIF plus other drugs but *not* INH	5	1,264	1.1

Definition of abbreviations: INH = Isoniazid; RIF = rifampin.

* **Source:** Steele MA, Burk RF, Des Prez RM. Toxic hepatitis with isoniazid and rifampin: a meta-analysis. Chest 1991;99:465–471. Reprinted with permission.

Fatal hepatitis: A large survey estimated the rate of fatal hepatitis to be 0.023%, but more recent studies suggest the rate is substantially lower (*10,11*). The risk may be increased in women. Death has been associated with continued administration of INH despite onset of symptoms of hepatitis (*12*).

Peripheral neurotoxicity (*13,14*)*:* This adverse effect is dose related and is uncommon (less than 0.2%) at conventional doses (*15–17*). The risk is increased in persons with other conditions that may be associated with neuropathy such as nutritional deficiency, diabetes, HIV infection, renal failure, and alcoholism, as well as for pregnant and breastfeeding women. Pyridoxine supplementation (25 mg/day) is recommended for patients with these conditions to help prevent this neuropathy (*18*).

Central nervous system effects: Effects such as dysarthria, irritability, seizures, dysphoria, and inability to concentrate have been reported but have not been quantified.

Lupus-like syndrome (*19*)*:* Approximately 20% of patients receiving INH develop anti-nuclear antibodies. Less than 1% develop clinical lupus erythematosis, necessitating drug discontinuation.

Hypersensitivity reactions: Reactions, such as fever, rash, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, hemolytic anemia, vasculitis, and neutropenia are rare.

Monoamine (histamine/tyramine) poisoning: This has been reported to occur after ingestion of foods and beverages with high monoamine content but is rare (*20–22*). If flushing occurs, patients should be instructed to avoid foods and drinks, such as certain cheeses and wine, having high concentrations of monoamines.

Diarrhea: Use of the commercial liquid preparation of INH, because it contains sorbitol, is associated with diarrhea.

Use in pregnancy. INH is considered safe in pregnancy, but the risk of hepatitis may be increased in the peripartum period (*9,23*). Pyridoxine supplementation (25 mg/day) is recommended if INH is administered during pregnancy (*18*). It should be noted that multivitamin preparations have variable amounts of pyridoxine but generally less than 25 mg/day and, thus, do not provide adequate supplementation.

CNS penetration. Penetration is excellent. Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) concentrations are similar to concentrations achieved in serum (*24*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) INH can be used safely without dose adjustment in patients with renal insufficiency (*25*) and with end-stage renal isease who require chronic hemodialysis (*26*).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) The risk of drug accumulation and drug-induced hepatitis may be increased in the presence of hepatic disease; however, INH may be used in patients *with* stable hepatic disease. Laboratory and clinical monitoring should be more frequent in such situations.

Monitoring. Routine monitoring is not necessary. However, for patients who have preexisting liver disease or who develop abnormal liver function that does not require discontinuation of the drug, liver function tests should be measured monthly and when symptoms occur. Serum concentrations of phenytoin and carbamazepine may be increased in persons taking INH. However, in combination therapy with RIF the effects of INH on serum concentrations of the anticonvulsants are limited by the decrease caused by RIF. Thus, it is important to measure serum concentrations of these drugs in patients receiving INH with or without RIF and adjust the dose if necessary.

3.1.2. Rifampin

Role in treatment regimen. Rifampin (RIF) is a first-line agent for treatment of all forms of tuberculosis caused by organisms with known or presumed sensitivity to the drug. It has activity against organisms that are dividing rapidly (early bactericidal activity) (*1*) and against semidormant bacterial populations, thus accounting for its sterilizing activity (*27*). Rifampin is an essential component of all short-course regimens.

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 10 mg/kg (600 mg) once daily, twice weekly, or three times weekly.

Children (maximum): 10–20 mg/kg (600 mg) once daily or twice weekly.

Rifabutin and Rifapentine

The newer rifamycins, rifabutin and rifapentine, should be considered first-line drugs in special situations: rifabutin for patients who are receiving medications, especially antiretroviral drugs, that have unacceptable interactions with rifampin or who have experienced intolerance to rifampin; and rifapentine, together with INH, in a once-a-week continuation phase for certain selected patients who meet specified criteria.

Preparations. Capsules (150 mg, 300 mg); contents of capsule may also be mixed in an appropriate diluent to prepare an oral suspension; aqueous solution for parenteral administration.

Adverse effects (*28*).

Cutaneous reactions (*29*)*:* Pruritis with or without rash may occur in as many as 6% of patients but is generally self-limited *(30*). This reaction may not represent true hypersensitivity and continued treatment with the drug may be possible. More severe, true hypersensitivity reactions are uncommon, occurring in 0.07–0.3% of patients (*17,31,32*).

Gastrointestinal reactions (nausea, anorexia, abdominal pain): The incidence is variable, but symptoms are rarely severe enough to necessitate discontinuation of the drug (*28–30*).

Flulike syndrome: This may occur in 0.4–0.7% of patients receiving 600 mg twice weekly but not with daily administration of the same dose (*31–34*). Symptoms are more likely to occur with intermittent administration of a higher dose (*29,35*).

Hepatotoxicity: Transient asymptomatic hyperbilirubinemia may occur in as many as 0.6% of patients receiving the drug. More severe clinical hepatitis that, typically, has a cholestatic pattern may also occur (*8,36*). Hepatitis is more common when the drug is given in combination with INH (2.7%) than when given alone (nearly 0%) or in combination with drugs other than INH (1.1%) (*8*).

Severe immunologic reactions: In addition to cutaneous reactions and flulike syndrome, other reactions thought to be immune mediated include the following: thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, acute renal failure, and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. These reactions are rare, each occurring in less than 0.1% of patients (*31,32,37*).

Orange discoloration of bodily fluids (sputum, urine, sweat, tears): This is a universal effect of the drug. Patients should be warned of this effect at the time treatment is begun. Soft contact lenses and clothing may be permanently stained.

Drug interactions due to induction of hepatic microsomal enzymes: There are a number of drug interactions (described in Section 7, Drug Interactions, and Table 12) with potentially serious consequences. Of particular concern are reductions, often to ineffective levels, in serum concentrations of common drugs, such as oral contraceptives, methadone, and warfarin. In addition there are important bidirectional interactions between rifamycins and antiretroviral agents. Because information regarding rifamycin drug interactions is evolving rapidly, readers are advised to consult the CDC web site www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/ to obtain the most up-to-date information.

Use in pregnancy. RIF is considered safe in pregnancy (*38*).

CNS penetration. Concentrations in the CSF may be only 10–20% of serum levels, but this is sufficient for clinical efficacy. Penetration may be improved in the setting of meningitis (*39*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) RIF can be used safely without dose adjustment in patients with renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease (*26,40*).

Use in hepatic disease. (see Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) Clearance of the drug may be impaired in the presence of liver disease, causing increased serum levels (*40*). However, because of the critical importance of rifampin in all short-course regimens, it generally should be included, but the frequency of clinical and laboratory monitoring should be increased.

Monitoring. No routine monitoring tests are required. However, rifampin causes many drug interactions described in Section 7, Drug Interactions, that may necessitate regular measurements of the serum concentrations of the drugs in question.

3.1.3. Rifabutin

Role in treatment regimen. Rifabutin is used as a substitute for RIF in the treatment of all forms of tuberculosis caused by organisms that are known or presumed to be susceptible to this agent. The drug is generally reserved for patients who are receiving any medication having unacceptable interactions with rifampin (*41*) or have experienced intolerance to rifampin.

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 5 mg/kg (300 mg) daily, twice, or three times weekly. The dose may need to be adjusted when there is concomitant use of protease inhibitors or nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. When rifabutin is used with efavirenz the dose of rifabutin should be increased to 450–600 mg either daily or intermittently. Because information regarding rifamycin drug interactions is evolving rapidly readers are advised to consult the CDC web site, http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/, to obtain the most up-to-date information.

Children (maximum): Appropriate dosing for children is unknown.

Preparations: Capsules (150 mg) for oral administration.

Adverse effects.

Hematologic toxicity: In a placebo-controlled, double-blind trial involving patients with advanced acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) (CD4+ cell counts <200 cells/µl), neutropenia occurred in 25% compared with 20% in patients receiving placebo ($p = 0.03$). Neutropenia severe enough to necessitate discontinuation of the drug occurred in 2% of patients receiving the drug (product insert B; Adria Laboratories, Columbus, OH). The effect is dose related, occurring more frequently with daily than with intermittent administration of the same dose (*42*). In several studies of patients with and without HIV infection, neither neutropenia nor thrombocytopenia was associated with rifabutin (*43–47*).

Uveitis: This is a rare (less than 0.01%) complication when the drug is given alone at a standard (300 mg daily) dose. The occurrence is higher (8%) with higher doses or when rifabutin is used in combination with macrolide antimicrobial agents that reduce its clearance (*48*). Uveitis may also occur with other drugs that reduce clearance such as protease inhibitors and azole antifungal agents.

Gastrointestinal symptoms: These symptoms occurred in 3% of patients with advanced HIV infection given 300 mg/day (package insert). In subsequent studies no increased incidence of gastrointestinal symptoms was noted among patients taking rifabutin (*43,44,46–48*).

Polyarthralgias: This symptom occurred in 1–2% of persons receiving a standard 300-mg dose (package insert). It is more common at higher doses (*48*). Polyarthralgias have not been noted in more recent studies involving both HIV-infected and uninfected patients (*43,44,46,47*).

Hepatotoxity: Asymptomatic elevation of liver enzymes has been reported at a frequency similar to that of RIF (*48*). Clinical hepatitis occurs in less than 1% of patients receiving the drug.

Pseudojaundice (skin discoloration with normal bilirubin): This is usually self-limited and resolves with discontinuation of the drug (*49*).

Rash: Although initially reported to occur in as many as 4% of patients with advanced HIV infection, subsequent studies suggest that rash is only rarely (less than 0.1%) associated with rifabutin (*46*).

Flulike syndrome: Flulike syndrome is rare (less than 0.1%) in patients taking rifabutin.

Orange discoloration of bodily fluids (sputum, urine, sweat, tears): This is a universal effect of the drug. Patients should be warned of this effect at the time treatment is begun. Soft contact lenses and clothing may be permanently stained.

Use in pregnancy. There are insufficient data to recommend the use of rifabutin in pregnant women; thus, the drug should be used with caution in pregnancy.

CNS penetration. The drug penetrates inflamed meninges (*50*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) Rifabutin may be used without dosage adjustment in patients with renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease (*50*).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) The drug should be used with increased clinical and laboratory monitoring in patients with underlying liver disease. Dose reduction may be necessary in patients with severe liver dysfunction (*50*).

Monitoring. Monitoring is similar to that recommended for rifampin. Although drug interactions are less problematic with rifabutin, they still occur and close monitoring is required.

3.1.4. Rifapentine

Role in treatment regimen. Rifapentine may be used once weekly with INH in the continuation phase of treatment for HIV-seronegative patients with noncavitary, drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis who have negative sputum smears at completion of the initial phase of treatment (*51*).

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 10 mg/kg (600 mg), once weekly during the continuation phase of treatment. Data have suggested that a dose of 900 mg is well tolerated but the clinical efficacy of this dose has not been established (*52*).

Children: The drug is not approved for use in children.

Preparation. Tablet (150 mg, film coated).

Adverse effects.

The adverse effects of rifapentine are similar to those associated with RIF. Rifapentine is an inducer of multiple hepatic enzymes and therefore may increase metabolism of coadministered drugs that are metabolized by these enzymes (see Section 7: Drug Interactions).

Use in pregnancy. There is not sufficient information to recommend the use of rifapentine for pregnant women.

CNS penetration. There are no data on CSF concentrations of rifapentine.

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease .) The pharmacokinetics of rifapentine have not been evaluated in patients with renal impairment. Although only about 17% of an administered dose is excreted via the kidneys, the clinical significance of impaired renal function in the disposition of rifapentine is not known.

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) The pharmacokinetics of rifapentine and its 25-desacetyl metabolite were similar among patients with various degrees of hepatic impairment and not different from those in healthy volunteers, even though the elimination of these compounds is primarily via the liver (*53*). The clinical significance of impaired hepatic function in the disposition of rifapentine and its 25-desacetyl metabolite is not known.

Monitoring. Monitoring is similar to that for RIF. Drug interactions involving rifapentine are being investigated and are likely to be similar to those of RIF.

3.1.5. Pyrazinamide

Role in treatment regimen. Pyrazinamide (PZA) is a first-line agent for the treatment of all forms of tuberculosis caused by organisms with known or presumed susceptibility to the drug. The drug is believed to exert greatest activity against the population of dormant or semidormant organisms contained within macrophages or the acidic environment of caseous foci (*54*).

Dose. See Tables 3 and 4.

Adults: 20–25 mg/kg per day. Recommended adult dosages by weight, using whole tablets, are listed in Table 4.

Children (maximum): 15–30 mg/kg (2.0 g) daily; 50 mg/kg twice weekly (2.0 g).

Preparations. Tablets (500 mg, scored).

Adverse effects.

Hepatotoxicity: Early studies (*55,56*) using doses of 40–70 mg/kg per day reported high rates of hepatotoxicity. However, in treatment trials with multiple other drugs, including INH, liver toxicity has been rare at doses of 25 mg/kg per day or less (*15,34,57*). In one study, however, hepatotoxicity attributable to PZA used in standard doses occurred at a rate of about 1% (*58*).

Gastrointestinal symptoms (nausea, vomiting): Mild anorexia and nausea are common at standard doses. Vomiting and severe nausea are rare except at high doses (*59*).

Nongouty polyarthralgia: Polyarthralgias may occur in up to 40% of patients receiving daily doses of PZA. This rarely requires dosage adjustment or discontinuation of the drug (*60*). The pain usually responds to aspirin or other nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents. In clinical trials of PZA in the initial intensive phase of treatment, athralgias were not noted to be a significant problem (*15,61*).

Asymptomatic hyperuricemia: This is an expected effect of the drug and is generally without adverse consequence (*15,62*).

Acute gouty arthritis: Acute gout is rare except in patients with preexisting gout (*63*), generally a contraindication to the use of the drug.

Transient morbilliform rash: This is usually self-limited and is not an indication for discontinuation of the drug.

Dermatitis: PZA may cause photosensitive dermatitis (*59*).

Use in pregnancy. There is little information about the safety of PZA in pregnancy. However, when there are sound reasons to utilize a 6-month course of treatment, the benefits of PZA may outweigh the possible (but unquantified) risk. The WHO and the IUATLD recommend this drug for use in pregnant women with tuberculosis (see Section 10: Treatment of Tuberculosis in Low-Income Countries: Recommendations of the WHO and the IUATLD).

CNS penetration. The drug passes freely into the CSF, achieving concentrations equivalent to those in serum (*64*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) PZA is cleared primarily by the liver, but its metabolites are excreted in the urine and may accumulate in patients with renal insufficiency (*65*). The dose may, therefore, need to be reduced in patients with renal insufficiency. It should be administered at a reduced dose (25–35 mg/kg) three times a week after dialysis in patients with end-stage renal disease (Table 15) (*26*). The risk of hyperuricemia caused by PZA is increased in patients with renal insufficiency.

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) Although the frequency is slightly lower than with INH or RIF, the drug can cause liver injury that may be severe and prolonged. If the drug is used in patients with underlying liver disease, laboratory and clinical monitoring should be increased.

Monitoring. Serum uric acid measurements are not recommended as a routine but may serve as a surrogate marker for compliance. Liver chemistry monitoring should be performed when the drug is used in patients with underlying liver disease or when it is used with rifampin in treating latent tuberculosis infection.

3.1.6. Ethambutol

Role in treatment regimen. Ethambutol (EMB) is a first-line drug for treating all forms of tuberculosis. It is included in initial treatment regimens primarily to prevent emergence of RIF resistance when primary resistance to INH may be present. Ethambutol is generally not recommended for routine use in children whose visual acuity cannot be monitored. However, if a child has adult-type tuberculosis or disease that is suspected or proven to be caused by organisms that are resistant to either INH or RIF, EMB should be used (see Section 8.2: Children and Adolescents, and Table 6).

Dose. See Tables 3 and 5.

Adults: 15–20 mg/kg per day: Table 5 lists recommended dosages for adults, using whole tablets.

Children (maximum): 15–20 mg/kg per day (2.5 g); 50 mg/kg twice weekly (2.5 g). The drug can be used safely in older children but should be used with caution in children in whom visual acuity cannot be monitored (generally less than 5 years of age) (*66*). In younger children EMB can be used if there is concern with resistance to INH or RIF (Table 6).

Preparations. Tablets (100 mg, 400 mg) for oral administration.

Adverse effects.

Retrobulbar neuritis: This is manifested as decreased visual acuity or decreased red-green color discrimination that may affect one or both eyes. The effect is dose related, with minimal risk at a daily dose of 15 mg/kg (*67*). No difference was found in the prevalence of decreased visual acuity between regimens that contained EMB at 15 mg/kg and those not containing the drug (*68*). The risk of optic toxicity is higher at higher doses given daily (18% of patients receiving more than 30 mg/kg per day) and in patients with renal insufficiency. Higher doses can be given safely twice or three times weekly.

Peripheral neuritis: This is a rare adverse effect (*69*).

Cutaneous reactions: Skin reactions requiring discontinuation of the drug occur in 0.2–0.7% of patients (*68*).

Use in pregnancy. EMB is considered safe for use in pregnancy (*70–72*).

CNS penetration. The agent penetrates the meninges in the presence of inflammation but does not have demonstrated efficacy in tuberculous meningitis (*73*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) EMB is cleared primarily by the kidneys. The dose or dosing interval should be adjusted when the creatinine clearance is less than 70 ml/minute (*74*). EMB should be administered at a dose of 15–20 mg/kg three times a week by DOT after dialysis in patients with end-stage renal disease (Table 15) (*26*).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) EMB can be used safely in patients with hepatic disease.

Monitoring. Patients should have baseline visual acuity testing (Snellen chart) and testing of color discrimination (Ishihara tests). At each monthly visit patients should be questioned regarding possible visual disturbances including blurred vision or scotomata. Monthly testing of visual acuity and color discrimination is recommended for patients taking doses greater than 15–25 mg/kg, patients receiving the drug for longer than 2 months, and any patient with renal insufficiency. Patients should be instructed to contact their physician or public health clinic immediately if they experience a change in vision. EMB should be discontinued immediately and permanently if there are any signs of visual toxicity.

3.1.7. Fixed-dose combination preparations

Role in treatment regimen. Two combined preparations, INH and RIF (Rifamate®) and INH, RIF, and PZA (Rifater®), are available in the United States. These formulations are a means of minimizing inadvertent monotherapy,

Role of Fixed-Dose Combination Preparations

Fixed-dose combination preparations minimize inadvertent monotherapy and may decrease the frequency of acquired drug resistance and medication errors. These preparations should generally be used when therapy cannot be administered under DOT.

particularly when DOT is not possible, and, therefore, may decrease the risk of acquired drug resistance (*75*). The use of fixed-dose formulations may reduce the number of pills that must be taken daily. Constituent drugs are combined in proportions compatible with daily treatment regimens. Formulations for intermittent administration are not available in the United States.

Preparations and dose.

Rifamate®: As sold in North America, each capsule contains RIF (300 mg) and INH (150 mg); thus, the daily dose is two capsules (600 mg of RIF and 300 mg of INH). Two capsules of Rifamate® plus two 300-mg tablets of INH are used by some programs for intermittent therapy given twice weekly as DOT.

Rifater®: Each tablet contains RIF (120 mg), INH (50 mg), and PZA (300 mg). The daily dose is based on weight as follows: 44 kg or less, four tablets; 45–54 kg, five tablets; 55 kg or more, six tablets. To obtain an adequate dose of PZA in persons weighing more than 90 kg additional PZA tablets must be given.

Adverse effects. See comments under individual drugs above.

Use in pregnancy. Rifamate® may be used in daily treatment of pregnant women. Rifater® should not be used because it contains PZA.

CNS penetration. See comments under individual drugs above.

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) Rifamate® may be used in persons with renal insufficiency. Rifater® should not be used because of the potential need for adjustment of the dose of PZA.

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) In patients with underlying hepatic disease it is advisable to treat with single-drug formulations until safety in an individual patient can be determined and a stable regimen established.

3.2. Second-Line Drugs

3.2.1. Cycloserine

Role in treatment regimen. Cycloserine (*76,77*) is a second-line drug that is used for treating patients with drug-resistant tuberculosis caused by organisms with known or presumed susceptibility to the agent. It may also be used on a temporary basis for patients with acute hepatitis in combination with other nonhepatotoxic drugs.

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 10–15 mg/kg per day (1,000 mg), usually 500–750 mg/day given in two doses. Clinicians with experience with cycloserine indicate that toxicity is more common at doses over 500 mg/day. Serum concentration measurements aiming for a peak concentration of 20–35 mg/ml are often useful in determining the optimum dose for a given patient. There are no data to support intermittent administration.

Children (maximum): 10–15 mg/kg per day (1.0 g/day).

Preparations. Capsules (250 mg).

Adverse effects.

Central nervous system effects: The central nervous system effects range from mild reactions, such as headache or restlessness, to severe reactions, such as psychosis and seizures. The drug may exacerbate underlying seizure disorders or mental illness. Seizures have been reported to occur in up to 16% of patients receiving 500 mg twice daily but in only 3% when receiving 500 mg once daily (*78*). Pyridoxine may help prevent and treat neurotoxic side effects and is usually given in a dosage of 100–200 mg/day (*79*). Rarely, cycloserine may cause peripheral neuritis.

Use in pregnancy. Cycloserine crosses the placenta. There are limited data on safety in pregnancy; thus, it should be used in pregnant women only when there are no suitable alternatives (*77*).

CNS penetration. Concentrations in CSF approach those in serum (*77*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) The drug can accumulate in patients with impaired renal function and should be used cautiously in such patients. Generally, the dose should be reduced and serum concentrations measured. Cycloserine should not be used in patients having a creatinine clearance of less than 50 ml/minute unless the patient is receiving hemodialysis. For patients being hemodialyzed the dose should be 500 mg three times a week or 250 mg daily (Table 15). Serum concentrations of the drug should be measured and the dose adjusted accordingly.

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) There are no precautions except for patients with alcohol-related hepatitis in whom there is an increased risk of seizures (*77*).

Monitoring. Neuropsychiatric status should be assessed at least at monthly intervals and more frequently if symptoms

develop. As noted above, measurements of serum concentrations may be necessary until an appropriate dose is established. For patients taking phenytoin, serum concentrations of phenytoin should be measured.

3.2.2. Ethionamide

Role in treatment. Ethionamide (*76,77*) is a second-line drug that is used for patients with drug-resistant tuberculosis disease caused by organisms that have demonstrated or presumed susceptibility to the drug.

Dose: See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 15–20 mg/kg per day (1.0 g/day), usually 500–750 mg/day in a single daily dose or two divided doses. The single daily dose can be given at bedtime or with the main meal. There are no data to support intermittent dosing.

Children (maximum): 15–20 mg/kg per day (1.0 g/day).

Preparations: Tablets (250 mg).

Adverse reactions.

Gastrointestinal effects: Ethionamide commonly causes profound gastrointestinal side effects, including a metallic taste, nausea, vomiting (that is often severe), loss of appetite, and abdominal pain (*80*). Symptoms may improve if doses are taken with food or at bedtime.

Hepatotoxicity: Ethionamide is similar in structure to INH and may cause similar side effects. Hepatotoxicity occurs in about 2% of patients taking the drug (*81,82*).

Neurotoxicity: Neurotoxicity, including peripheral neuritis, optic neuritis, anxiety, depression, and psychosis, has been reported in 1–2% of patients taking shorter courses of the drug with higher rates reported with prolonged treatment (*83,84*).

Endocrine effects: Endocrine disturbances, including gynecomastia, alopecia, hypothyroidism, and impotence, have been described (*85,86*). Diabetes may be more difficult to manage in patients taking ethionamide (*77*).

Use in pregnancy. Ethionamide crosses the placenta and is teratogenic in laboratory animals. It should not be used in pregnancy.

CNS penetration. CSF concentrations are equal to those in serum (*77*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-stage Renal Disease.) For patients having a creatinine clearance of less than 30 ml/minute or who are receiving hemodialysis the dose should be reduced to 250–500 mg/day (Table 15).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) Ethionamide should be used with caution in patients with underlying liver disease.

Monitoring. Liver function tests should be obtained at baseline and, if there is underlying liver disease, at monthly intervals. The studies should be repeated if symptoms occur. Thyroid-stimulating hormone should be measured at baseline and at monthly intervals.

3.2.3. Streptomycin

Role in treatment regimen. Streptomycin (SM) (*76,77,87–89*) and EMB have been shown to be approximately equivalent when used in the initial phase of treatment with 6-month regimens. However, among patients likely to have acquired *M. tuberculosis* in a high-incidence country, the relatively high rate of resistance to SM limits its usefulness.

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 15 mg/kg per day (1 g/day) parenterally, usually given as a single daily dose (5–7 days/week) initially, and then reducing to two or three times a week after the first 2–4 months or after culture conversion, depending on the efficacy of the other drugs in the regimen (*90*). For persons over 59 years of age, the dose should be reduced to 10 mg/kg per day (750 mg). The dosing frequency should be reduced (i.e., 12–15 mg/kg per dose two or three times per week) in persons with renal insufficiency (see below: Use in Renal Disease) (*91,92*).

Children (maximum): 20–40 mg/kg per day (1 g/day).

Preparations. Aqueous solution in vials of 1 g (*93*).

Adverse effects.

Ototoxicity: The most important adverse reaction caused by SM is ototoxicity, including vestibular and hearing disturbances. The risk is increased with age (*94*) or concomitant use of loop-inhibiting diuretics (furosemide, ethacrynic acid). The risk of ototoxicity increases with increasing single doses and with the cumulative dose, especially above 100–120 g.

Neurotoxicity: SM relatively commonly causes circumoral parasthesias immediately after injection. Rarely, it may interact with muscle relaxants to cause postoperative respiratory muscle weakness.

Nephrotoxicity: Nephrotoxicity occurs less commonly with SM than with amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin (*95*). Renal insufficiency requiring discontinuation occurs in about 2% of patients (*96*).

Use in pregnancy. SM is contraindicated in pregnancy because of the risk of fetal hearing loss (*77,97,98*).

CNS penetration. There is only slight diffusion of SM into CSF, even in patients with meningitis (*77,99*)

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) SM should be used with caution in patients with renal function impairment because of the increased risk of both ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity. Because clearance is almost exclusively by the kidney, dosing

adjustments are essential in patients with underlying renal insufficiency, including the elderly and those undergoing hemodialysis. In such patients, the dosing frequency should be reduced to two or three times weekly, but the milligram dose should be maintained at 12–15 mg/kg per dose to take advantage of the concentration-dependent bactericidal effect (Table 15) (*91,92*). Smaller doses may reduce the efficacy of this drug. The drug should be given after dialysis to facilitate DOT and to avoid premature removal of the drug (*100*). Serum drug concentrations should be monitored to avoid toxicity (*91*).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) No precautions are necessary.

Monitoring. An audiogram, vestibular testing, Romberg testing, and serum creatinine measurement should be performed at baseline. Assessments of renal function, and questioning regarding auditory or vestibular symptoms, should be performed monthly. An audiogram and vestibular testing should be repeated if there are symptoms of eighth nerve toxicity.

3.2.4. Amikacin and kanamycin

Role in treatment regimen. Amikacin and kanamycin (*76,77,101*) are two closely related injectable second-line drugs that are used for patients with drug-resistant tuberculosis whose isolate has demonstrated or presumed susceptibility to the agents. There is nearly always complete cross-resistance between the two drugs, but most SM-resistant strains are susceptible to both (*102*). Because it is used to treat a number of other types of infections, amikacin may be more easily obtained, and serum drug concentration measurements are readily available.

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 15 mg/kg per day (1.0 g/day), intramuscular or intravenous, usually given as a single daily dose (5–7 days/week) initially, and then reducing to two or three times a week after the first 2–4 months or after culture conversion, depending on the efficacy of the other drugs in the regimen (*90*). For persons greater than 59 years of age the dose should be reduced to 10 mg/kg per day (750 mg). The dosing frequency should be reduced (i.e., 12–15 mg/kg per dose, two or three times per week) in persons with renal insufficiency (see below: Use in Renal Disease) (*91,92*).

Children (maximum): 15–30 mg/kg per day (1 g/day) intramuscular or intravenous as a single daily dose.

Preparations. Aqueous solution for intramuscular or intravenous injection in vials of 500 mg and 1 g.

Adverse effects.

Ototoxicity: Amikacin and kanamycin may cause deafness, but they cause less vestibular dysfunction than SM (*103,104*). Ototoxicity is more common with concurrent use of diuretics. In one report high-frequency hearing loss occurred in 24% of patients receiving amikacin, with higher rates occurring among those receiving longer treatment and/or higher doses (*105*), whereas a review of the literature found only 1.5% hearing loss (*106*).

Nephrotoxicity: Amikacin and kanamycin may be more nephrotoxic than SM (*95*). Renal impairment was seen in 8.7% of patients receiving amikacin, with a higher frequency in patients with initially increased creatinine levels, patients receiving larger total doses, and patients receiving other nephrotoxic agents. A frequency of 3.4% was reported in patients with no risk factors (*106,107*).

Use in pregnancy. Both amikacin and kanamycin are contraindicated in pregnant women because of risk of fetal nephrotoxicity and congenital hearing loss (*77*).

CNS penetration. Only low concentrations of the drugs are found in CSF, although slightly higher concentrations have been found in the presence of meningitis (*77*).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) Amikacin and kanamycin should be used with caution in patients with renal function impairment because of the increased risk of both ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity. Because clearance is almost exclusively by the kidney, dosing adjustments are essential in patients with underlying renal insufficiency, including the elderly and those receiving hemodialysis. In such patients, the dosing frequency should be reduced to two or three times per week, but the dose should be maintained at 12–15 mg/kg to take advantage of the concentration-dependent bactericidal effect (Table 15) (*91,92*). Smaller doses may reduce the efficacy of this drug. The drug should be given after dialysis to facilitate DOT and to avoid premature removal of the drug (*100*). Serum drug concentrations should be monitored to avoid toxicity (*91*).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) No precautions are necessary.

Monitoring. Monitoring should be performed as described for SM. An advantage of amikacin is that serum concentration measurements can be obtained routinely. Patients with severe hepatic disease, because of predisposition to hepatorenal syndrome, may be at greater risk for nephrotoxicity from amikacin/kanamycin and should have renal function monitored closely.

3.2.5. Capreomycin

Role in treatment. Capreomycin is a second-line injectable drug that is used for patients with drug-resistant tuberculosis caused by organisms that have known or presumed susceptibility to the drug (*108*).

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults (maximum): 15 mg/kg per day (1.0 g/day), usually given as a single daily dose five to seven times a week, and reduced to two or three times a week after the first 2–4 months or after culture conversion, depending on the efficacy of the other drugs in the regimen (*90*). For persons greater than 59 years of age the dose should be reduced to 10 mg/kg per day (750 mg). The dosing frequency should be reduced to 12–15 mg/kg two or three times per week in persons with renal insufficiency (see below: Use In Renal Disease) (*91,92*).

Children (maximum): 15–30 mg/kg per day (1 g/day) as a single daily or twice weekly dose.

Preparations. Capreomycin is available in vials of 1 g for both intramuscular and intravenous administration.

Adverse effects.

Nephrotoxicity: Nephrotoxic effects may result in reduced creatinine clearance or potassium and magnesium depletion. Proteinuria is common (*109*). Significant renal toxicity requiring discontinuation of the drug has been reported to occur in 20–25% of patients (*110,111*).

Ototoxicity: Vestibular disturbances, tinnitus, and deafness appear to occur more often in elderly persons or those with preexisting renal impairment (*111*).

Use in pregnancy. Capreomycin should be avoided in pregnancy because of risk of fetal nephrotoxicity and congenital hearing loss (*77*).

CNS penetration. Capreomycin does not penetrate into the CSF (*77*).

Use in renal disease. (see Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) Capreomycin should be used with caution in patients with renal function impairment because of the increased risk of both ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity (*112*). Because capreomycin is nearly entirely cleared by the kidneys, dosing adjustments are essential in patients with underlying renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease, including patients undergoing hemodialysis. In such patients, the dosing frequency should be reduced to two or three times weekly, but the milligram dose should be maintained at 12–15 mg/kg per dose to take advantage of the concentration-dependent bactericidal effect (Table 15) (*91,92*). Smaller doses may reduce the efficacy of this drug. The drug should be given after dialysis to facilitate DOT and avoid premature removal of the drug (*100,113*). Serum drug concentrations should be monitored to avoid toxicity (*91*).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) No precautions are necessary.

Monitoring. Monitoring should be performed as described for SM. In addition, serum potassium and magnesium concentrations should be measured at baseline and at least at monthly intervals.

3.2.6. p-Aminosalicylic acid

Role in treatment. *p*-Aminosalicylic acid (PAS) is an oral agent used in treatment of drug-resistant tuberculosis caused by organisms that are susceptible to the drug.

Dose. See Table 3.

Adults: 8–12 g/day in two or three doses. For PAS granules, 4 g three times daily has been the usual dosage (*114,115*). However, it has been shown that administration of 4 g twice daily is adequate to achieve the target serum concentration (*116*).

Children: 200–300 mg/kg per day in two to four divided doses (*117*).

Preparations. The only available formulation in the United States is granules in 4-g packets (Paser Granules®) (*118*). It was previously thought that the granules needed to be taken with acidic food (*115*); however, more recent data suggest that this is not necessary (C. Peloquin, personal communication). Tablets (500 mg) are still available in some countries. A solution for intravenous administration is available in Europe (*119,120*).

Adverse effects.

Hepatotoxicity: In a review of 7,492 patients being treated for tuberculosis, 38 (0.5%) developed hepatitis, of which 28 cases (0.3%) were attributed at least in part to PAS (*121*).

Gastrointestinal distress: This is the most common side effect of PAS (*122*). In a large study of INH and PAS 11% of patients had drug toxicity, mainly gastrointestinal intolerance to PAS (*114*). The incidence of gastrointestinal side effects is less with lower doses (8 g daily) and with the granular formulation of the drug.

Malabsorption syndrome: This is characterized by steatorrhea and low serum folate levels (*123*).

Hypothyroidism: This is a common side effect, especially with prolonged administration or concomitant use of ethionamide. It may be accompanied by goiter formation. Thyroid hormone replacement may be required. Thyroid function returns to normal after discontinuation of the drug (*124*).

Coagulopathy: A doubling of the prothrombin time that seemed to be lessened by coadministration of streptomycin has been reported (*125*).

Use in pregnancy. No studies have been done in humans; however, PAS has been used safely in pregnancy. The drug should be used only if there are no alternatives (see below) for a pregnant woman who has multidrug-resistant tuberculosis.

CNS penetration. In the presence of inflamed meninges, PAS concentrations are between 10–50% of those achieved in serum (*119*). The drug has marginal efficacy in meningitis.

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End-Stage Renal Disease.) Approximately 80% of the drug is excreted in the urine (*118*). Unless there is no alternative,

PAS is contraindicated in severe renal insufficiency because of the accumulation of the acetylated form (*123,126,127*). Because both PAS and acetyl-PAS are removed by dialysis, the drug should be given after dialysis to facilitate DOT and avoid premature removal of the drug (*126*).

Use in hepatic disease. (See Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) The clearance of PAS is not substantially altered in liver disease, suggesting that the drug may be used in usual doses but with increased laboratory and clinical monitoring (*127*).

Monitoring. Hepatic enzymes and thyroid function should be measured at baseline. With prolonged therapy (i.e., more than 3 months) thyroid function should be checked every 3 months.

3.2.7. Fluoroquinolones

Role in treatment regimen. Of the fluoroquinolones (*128–131*), levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, and gatifloxacin have the most activity against *M. tuberculosis.* On the basis of cumulative experience suggesting a good safety profile with long-term use of levofloxacin, this drug is the preferred oral agent for treating drug-resistant tuberculosis caused by organisms known or presumed to be sensitive to this class of drugs, or when first-line agents cannot be used because of intolerance. Data on long-term safety and tolerability of moxifloxacin and gatifloxacin, especially at doses above 400 mg/day, are limited. Cross-resistance has been demonstrated among ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, and levofloxacin and presumably is a class effect (*132*). Fluoroquinolones should not be considered first-line agents for the treatment of drug-susceptible tuberculosis except in patients who are intolerant of first-line drugs.

Dose. (See Table 3.) The doses given are for levofloxacin.

Adults: 500–1,000 mg daily.

Children: The long-term (more than several weeks) use of fluoroquinolones in children and adolescents has not been approved because of concerns about effects on bone and cartilage growth. However, most experts agree that the drug should be considered for children with MDR tuberculosis. The optimal dose is not known.

Preparations (Levofloxacin). Tablets (250 mg, 500 mg, 750 mg); aqueous solution (500 mg) for intravenous administration.

Adverse effects. The adverse effects (*133*) cited are for levofloxacin.

Gastrointestinal disturbance: Nausea and bloating occur in 0.5–1.8% of patients taking the drug.

Neurologic effects: Dizziness, insomnia, tremulousness, and headache occur in 0.5% of patients.

Cutaneous reactions: Rash, pruritis, and photosensitivity occur in 0.2–0.4% of patients.

Use in pregnancy. This class of drugs should be avoided in pregnancy because of teratogenic effects (*119,134*).

CNS penetration. The concentration in CSF after administration of a standard dose of levofloxacin is 16–20% of that in serum (*135*).

Interference with absorption. Because antacids and other medications containing divalent cations markedly decrease absorption of fluoroquinolones, it is critical that any fluoroquinolone not be administered within 2 hours of such medications (see Section 7.1: Interactions Affecting Antituberculosis Drugs).

Use in renal disease. (See Section 8.7: Renal Insufficiency and End Stage Renal Disease.) The drug is cleared primarily (80%) by the kidney (*135*). Dosage adjustment (750–1,000 mg three times a week) is recommended if creatinine clearance is less than 50 ml/minute (Table 15) (*136*). It is not cleared by hemodialysis; supplemental doses after dialysis are not necessary (*135*).

Use in hepatic disease. Drug levels are not affected by hepatic disease (*135*). It is presumed to be safe for use in the setting of severe liver disease, but as with all drugs, should be used with caution.

References

1. Jindani A, Aber VR, Edwards EA, Mitchison DA. The early bactericidal activity of drugs in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;121:939–949.
2. Hafner R, Cohn JA, Wright DJ, Dunlap NE, Egorin MJ, Enama ME, Muth K, Peloquin CA, Mor N, Heifets LB. Early bactericidal activity of isoniazid in pulmonary tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1997;156:918–923.
3. Hsu KHK. Thirty years after isoniazid: its impact on tuberculosis in children and adolescents. JAMA 1984;251:1283–1285.
4. Mitchell JR, Zimmerman HJ, Ishak KG, Thorgeirsson UP, Timbrell JA, Snodgrass WR, Nelson SD. Isoniazid liver injury: clinical spectrum, pathology and probably pathogenesis. Ann Intern Med 1976;84:81–192.
5. Nolan CM, Goldberg SV, Buskin SE. Hepatotoxicity associated with isoniazid preventive therapy. JAMA 1999;281:1014–1018.
6. Kopanoff DE, Snider DE, Caras GJ. Isoniazid-related hepatitis: a US Public Health Service cooperative surveillance study. Am Rev Respir Dis 1979;117:991–1001.
7. Black M, Mitchell JR, Zimmerman HJ, Ishak KG, Epler GR. Isoniazid associated hepatitis in 114 patients. Gastroenterology 1975;69:289–302.
8. Steele MA, Burk RF, DesPrez RM. Toxic hepatitis with isoniazid and rifampin. Chest 1991;99:465–471.
9. Franks AL, Binkin NJ, Snider DE Jr, Rokaw WM, Becker S. Isoniazid hepatitis among pregnant and postpartum Hispanic patients. Public Health Rep 1989;104:151–155.
10. Snider DE, Caras GJ. Isoniazid-associated hepatitis deaths: a review of available information. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;145:494–497.
11. Salpeter S. Fatal isoniazid-induced hepatitis: its risk during chemoprophylaxis. West J Med 1993;159:560–564.
12. Moulding TS, Redeker AG, Kanel GC. Twenty isoniazid-associated deaths in one state. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;140:700–705.

13. Lubing HN. Peripheral neuropathy in tuberculosis patients treated with isoniazid. Am Rev Respir Dis 1953;68:458–461.
14. Biehl JP, Vilter RW. Effects of isoniazid on pyridoxine metabolism. JAMA 1954;156:1549–1552.
15. Combs DL, O'Brien RJ, Geiter LJ. USPHS Tuberculosis Short-Course Chemotherapy Trial 21: effectiveness, toxicity and acceptability. Report of the final results. Ann Intern Med 1990;112:397–406.
16. Hong Kong Chest Service, Tuberculosis Research Centre MBMRC. A double-blind placebo-controlled clinical trial of three antituberculosis chemoprophylaxis regimens in patients with silicosis in Hong Kong. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;145:36–41.
17. Ormerod LP, Horsfield N. Frequency and type of reactions to antituberculosis drugs: observations in routine treatment. Tuber Lung Dis 1996;77:37–42.
18. Snider DE. Pyridoxine supplementation during isoniazid therapy. Tubercle 1980;61:191–196.
19. Rothfield TG, Bierer WF, Garfield JW. Isoniazid induction of antinuclear antibodies. Ann Intern Med 1978;88:650–652.
20. Smith CK, Durack DT. Isoniazid and reaction to cheese. Ann Intern Med 1978;88:520–521.
21. Toutoungi M, Carroll RLA, Enrico J-F, Perey L. Cheese, wine, and isoniazid. Lancet 1985;ii:671.
22. Baciewicz AM, Self TH. Isoniazid interactions. South Med J 1985;78:714–718.
23. Ludford J, Doster B, Woolpert SF. Effect of isoniazid on reproduction. Am Rev Respir Dis 1973;108:1170–1174.
24. Weber WW, Hein DW. Clinical pharmacokinetics of isoniazid. Clin Pharmacokinet 1979;4:401–422.
25. Bowersox DW, Winterbauer RH, Stewart GL, Orme B, Barron E. Isoniazid dosage in patients with renal failure. N Engl J Med 1973;289:84–87.
26. Malone RS, Fish DN, Spiegel DM, Childs JM, Peloquin CA. The effect of hemodialysis on isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1999;159:1580–1584.
27. Dickinson JM, Mitchison DA. Experimental models to explain the high sterilizing activity of rifampin in the chemotherapy of tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1981;123:367–371.
28. Girling DJ. Adverse reactions to rifampicin in antituberculous regimens. J Antimicrob Chemother 1977;3:115–132.
29. Aquinas M, Allan WGL, Horsfall PAL, Jenkins PK, Wong HY, Girling D, Tall R, Fox W. Adverse reactions to daily and intermittent rifampicin regimens for pulmonary tuberculosis in Hong Kong. BMJ 1972;1:765–771.
30. Villarino ME, Ridzon R, Weismuller PC, Elcock M, Maxwell RM, Meador J, Smith PJ, Carson ML, Geiter LJ. Rifampin preventive therapy for tuberculosis infection: experience with 157 adolescents. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1997;155:1735–1738.
31. Martinez E, Collazos J, Mayo J. Hypersensitivity reactions to rifampin. Medicine (Baltimore) 1999;78:361–369.
32. Brasil MT, Opromalla DV, Marzliak ML, Noguelra W. Results of a surveillance system for adverse effects in leprosy's WHO/MTD. Int J Lepr Mycobact Dis 1996;64:97–104.
33. Dutt AK, Jones L, Stead WW. Short-course chemotherapy for tuberculosis with largely twice-weekly isoniazid–rifampin. Chest 1979;75:441–447.
34. Zierski M, Bek E. Side-effects of drug regimens used in short-course chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis: a controlled clinical study. Tubercle 1980;61:41–49.
35. Poole G, Stradling P, Worlledge S. Potentially serious side effects of high-dose twice-weekly rifampicin. BMJ 1971;3:343–347.
36. Sanders WEJ. Rifampin. Ann Intern Med 1976;85:82–86.
37. Lee C-H, Lee C-J. Thrombocytopenia: a rare but potentially serious side effect of initial daily and interrupted use of rifampicin. Chest 1989;96:202–203.
38. Steen JS, Stainton-Ellis DM. Rifampicin in pregancy. Lancet 1977;ii:604–605.
39. Holdiness MR. Cerebrospinal fluid pharmacokinetics of the antituberculosis drugs. Clin Pharmacokinet 1985;10:532–534.
40. Acocella G. Clinical pharmacokinetics of rifampicin. Clin Pharmacokinet 1978;3:108–127.
41. CDC. Prevention and treatment of tuberculosis among patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus: principles of therapy and revised recommendations. MMWR 1998;47(No. RR-20):1–58.
42. Griffith DE, Brown BA, Wallace RJ. Varying dosages of rifabutin affect white blood cell and platelet counts in human immunodeficiency virus-negative patients who are receiving multidrug regimens for pulmonary *Mycobacterium avium* complex disease. Clin Infect Dis 1996;23:1321–1322.
43. Grassi C, Peona V. Use of rifabutin in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 1996;22:S50–S54.
44. Shafran SD, Singer J, Zarowny DP, Phillips P, Salit I, Walmsley SL, et al. A comparison of two regimens for the treatment of *Mycobacterium avium* complex bacteremia in AIDS: rifabutin, ethambutol, and clarithromycin versus rifampin, ethambutol, clofazamine, and ciprofloxacin. N Engl J Med 1996;335:377–383.
45. Schwander S, Rüsch-Gerdes S, Mateega A, Lutalo T, Tugume S, Kityo C, et al. A pilot study of antituberculosis combinations comparing rifabutin with rifampicin in the treatment of HIV-1 associated tuberculosis. Tuber Lung Dis 1995;76:210–218.
46. Dautzenberg B, Olliaro P, Ruf B, Esposito R, Opravil M, Hoy JF, et al. Rifabutin versus placebo in combination with three drugs in the treatment of nontuberculous mycobacterial infection in patients with AIDS. Clin Infect Dis 1996;22:705–708.
47. Griffith DE, Brown BA, Murphy DT, Girard WM, Couch L, Wallace RJ Jr. Initial (6-month) results of three-times-weekly azithromycin in treatment regimens for *Mycobacterium avium* complex lung disease in human immunodeficiency virus-negative patients. J Infect Dis 1998;178:121–126.
48. Griffith DE, Brown BA, Girard WM, Wallace RJ Jr. Adverse events associated with high-dose rifabutin in macrolide-containing regimens for the treatment of *Mycobacterium avium* complex lung disease. Clin Infect Dis 1995;21:594–598.
49. Shafran SD, Deschenes J, Miller M, Phillips P, Toma E. Uveitis and pseudo-jaundice during a regimen of clarithromycin, rifabutin and ethambutol. N Engl J Med 1994;330:438–439.
50. Blaschke TF, Skinner MH. The clinical pharmacokinetics of rifabutin. Clin Infect Dis 1996;22:S15–S22.
51. Benator D, Bhattacharya M, Bozeman L, Burman W, Catanzaro A, Chaisson R, et al. Rifapentine and isoniazid once a week versus rifampicin and isoniazid twice a week for treatment of drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV-negative patients: a randomized clinical trial. Lancet 2002;360:528–534.

52. Bock NN, Sterling TR, Hamilton CD, Pachucki C, Wang YC, Conwell DS, et al. A prospective, randomized, double-blind study of the tolerability of rifapentine 600, 900, and 1,200 mg plus isoniazid in the continuation phase of tuberculosis treatment. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2002;165:1526–1530.
53. Keung AC, Eller MG, Weir SJ. Pharmacokinetics of rifapentine in patients with varying degrees of hepatic dysfunction. J Clin Pharmacol 1998;38:517–524.
54. Girling DJ. The role of pyrazinamide in primary chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis. Tubercle 1984;65:1–4.
55. McDermott W, Ormond L, Muschenhein C, Deuschle K, McCune RM, Tompsett R. Pyrazinamide–isoniazid in tuberculosis. Am Rev Tuberc 1954;69:319–333.
56. Campagna M, Calix AA, Hauser G. Observations on the combined use of pyrazinamide (aldinamide) and isoniazid in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Tuberc 1954;69:334–350.
57. Steele MA, DesPrez RM. The role of pyrazinamide in tuberculosis chemotherapy. Chest 1988;94:845–850.
58. Døssing M, Wilcke JTR, Askgaard DS, Nybo B. Liver injury during antituberculosis treatment: an 11-year study. Tuber Lung Dis 1996;77:335–340.
59. Girling DJ. Adverse effects of antituberculous drugs. Drugs 1982;23:56–74.
60. Jenner PJ, Ellard GA, Allan WG, Singh D, Girling DJ, Nunn AJ. Serum uric acid concentrations and arthralgia among patients treated with pyrazinamide-containing regimens in Hong Kong and Singapore. Tubercle 1981;62:175–179.
61. Cohn DL, Catlin BJ, Peterson KL, Judson FN, Sbarbaro JA. A 62-dose, 6-month therapy for pulmonary and extrapulmonary tuberculosis: a twice-weekly directly administered and cost-effective regimen. Ann Intern Med 1990;112:407–415.
62. Koumbaniou C, Nicopoulos C, Vassiliou M, Manda-Stachouli C, Sakellariou K, Demou GS, Constantopoulos SH. Is pyrazinamide really the third drug of choice in the treatment of tuberculosis. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1998;2:675–678.
63. Cullen JH, Early LJ, Fiore JM. The occurrence of hyperuricemia during pyrazinamide–isoniazid therapy. Am Rev Tuberc 1956;74:289–292.
64. Ellard GA, Humphries MJ, Gabriel M, Teoh R. Penetration of pyrazinamide into the cerebrospinal fluid in tuberculous meningitis. BMJ 1987;294:284–285.
65. Ellard GA. Absorption, metabolism, and excretion of pyrazinamide in man. Tubercle 1969;50:144–158.
66. Trebucq A. Should ethambutol be recommended for routine treatment of tuberculosis in children? A review of the literature. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1997;1:12–15.
67. Leibold JE. The ocular toxicity of ethambutol and its relation to dose. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1966;135:904–909.
68. Doster B, Murray FJ, Newman R, Woolpert SF. Ethambutol in the initial treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1973;107:177–190.
69. Tugwell P, James SL. Peripheral neuropathy with ethambutol. Postgrad Med J 1972;48:667–670.
70. Bobrowitz ID. Ethambutol in pregnancy. Chest 1974;66:20–24.
71. Lewit T, Nebel L, Terracina S, Karman S. Ethambutol in pregnancy: observations on embryogenesis. Chest 1974;66:25–26.
72. Snider DE, Layde PM, Johnson MW, Lyle MA. Treatment of tuberculosis during pregnancy. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;122:65–79.
73. Pilheu JA, Maglio F, Cetrangolo R, Pleus AD. Concentrations of ethambutol in the cerebrospinal fluid after oral administration. Tubercle 1971;52:117–122.
74. Strauss I, Earhardt F. Ethambutol absorption, excretion, and dosage in patients with renal tuberuclosis. Chemotherapy 1970;15:148–157.
75. Moulding T, Dutt AK, Reichman LB. Fixed-dose combinations of antituberculous medications to prevent drug resistance. Ann Intern Med 1995;122:951–954.
76. Kucers A, Bennett NM. The use of antibiotics: a comprehensive review with clinical emphasis, 4th edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott;1988:585–1436.
77. United States Pharmacopeial Dispensing Information. Drug Information for the Health Care Professional. Vol. I. Englewood, CO: Micromedex, 1999:69–1419.
78. Murray FJ. A pilot study of cycloserine toxicity: a United States Public Health Service cooperative clinical investigation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1956;74:196–209.
79. Swash M, Roberts AH, Murnaghan DJ. Reversible pellagra-like encephalopathy with ethionamide and cycloserine. Tubercle 1972;53:132–136.
80. Weinstein HJ, Hallett WY, Sarauw AS. The absorption and toxicity of ethionamide. Am Rev Respir Dis 1962;86:576–578.
81. Pernod J. Hepatic tolerance of ethionamide. Am Rev Respir Dis 1965;92:39–42.
82. Phillips S, Tashman H. Ethionamide jaundice. Am Rev Respir Dis 1963;87:896–898.
83. Lees AW. Ethionamide, 750mg daily, plus isoniazid, 450mg daily, in previously untreated cases of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1965;92:966–969.
84. Narang RK. Acute psychotic reaction probably caused by ethionamide. Tubercle 1972;53:137–138.
85. Drucker D, Eggo MC, Salit IE, Burrow GN. Ethionamide-induced goitrous hypothyroidism. Ann Intern Med 1984;100:837–839.
86. Anonymous. Drugs for tuberculosis. BMJ 1968;3:664–667.
87. Medical Research Council. Streptomycin treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. BMJ 1948;2:769–782.
88. Medical Research Council. Streptomycin treatment of tuberculous meningitis. Lancet 1948;i:582–596.
89. Medical Research Council. Streptomycin in the treatment of tuberculosis. Lancet 1949;i:1273–1276.
90. Andrews RH, Jenkins PA, Marks J, Pines A, Selkon JB, Somner AR. Treatment of isoniazid-resistant pulmonary tuberculosis with ethambutol, rifampicin and capreomycin: a co-operative study in England and Wales. Tubercle 1974;55:105–113.
91. Peloquin CA. Using therapeutic drug monitoring to dose the antimycobacterial drugs. Clin Chest Med 1997;18:79–87.
92. Zhu M, Burman WJ, Jaresko GS, Berning SE, Jelliffe RW, Peloquin CA. Population pharmacokinetics of intravenous and intramuscular streptomycin in patients with tuberculosis. Pharmacotherapy 2001;21:1037–1045.
93. Morris JT, Cooper RH. Intravenous streptomycin: a useful route of administration. Clin Infect Dis 1994;19:1150–1151.
94. Cawthorne T, Ranger D. Toxic effect of streptomycin upon balance and hearing. BMJ 1957;1:1444–1446.
95. Appel GB, Neu HC. The nephrotoxicity of antimicrobial agents [second of three parts]. N Engl J Med 1977;296:722–728.
96. Joint Committee on the Study of Streptomycin. The effects of streptomycin on tuberculosis in man. JAMA 1947;135:634–641.

97. Conway N, Birt BD. Streptomycin in pregnancy: effect on the foetal ear. BMJ 1965;2:260–263.
98. Robinson GC, Cambon KG. Hearing loss in infants of tuberculous mothers treated with streptomycin during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 1964;271:949–951.
99. Anderson DG, Jewell M. The absorption, excretion, and toxicity of streptomycin in man. N Engl J Med 1945;210:421–430.
100. Ellard GA. Chemotherapy of tuberculosis in patients with renal impairment. Nephron 1993;64:169–181.
101. Meyer RD. Amikacin. Ann Intern Med 1981;95:328–332.
102. Allen BW, Mitchison DA, Chan YC, Yew WW, Allan WG, Girling DJ. Amikacin in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Tubercle 1983;64:111–118.
103. Finegold SM. Kanamycin. AMA Arch Intern Med 1959;104:15–18.
104. Anonymous. Drug induced deafness. JAMA 1973;224:515–516.
105. Black RE, Lau WK, Weinstein RJ, Young LS, Hewitt WL. Ototoxicity of amikacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1976;9:956–961.
106. Gooding PG, Berman E, Lane AZ, Agre K. A review of results of clinical trials with amikacin. J Infect Dis 1976;134:S441–S445.
107. Lane AZ, Wright GE, Blair DC. Ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity of amikacin: an overview of Phase II and Phase III experience in the United States. Am J Med 1977;62:911–918.
108. Frieden TR, Sherman LF, Maw KL, Fujiwara PI, Crawford JT, Nivin B, et al. A multi-institutional outbreak of highly drug-resistant tuberculosis: epidemiology and clinical outcomes. JAMA 1996;276:1229–1235.
109. Garfield JW, Jones JM, Cohen NL, Daly JF, McClemont JH. The auditory, vestibular, and renal effects of capreomycin in humans. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1966;135:1039–1046.
110. Hesling CM. Treatment with capreomycin, with special reference to toxic effects. Tubercle 1969;50:39–41.
111. Aquinas M, Citron KM. Rifampicin, ethambutol, and capreomycin in pulmonary tuberculosis, previously treated with both first and second line drugs: the results of 2 years' chemotherapy. Tubercle 1972;53:153–165.
112. Black HR, Griffith RS, Peabody AM. Absorption, excretion, and metabolism of capreomycin in normal and diseased states. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1966;135:974–982.
113. Lehmann CR, Garrett LE, Winn RE, Springberg PD, Vicks S, Porter DK, Pierson WP, Wolny JD, Brier GL, Black HR. Capreomycin kinetics in renal impairment and clearance by hemodialysis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988;138:1312–1313.
114. Storey PB. A comparison of isoniazid–cycloserine with isoniazid–PAS in the therapy of cavitary pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1960;81:868–879.
115. Peloquin CA, Henshaw TL, Huitt GW, Berning SE, Nitta AT, James GT. Pharmacokinetic evaluation of para-aminosalicylic acid granules. Pharmacotherapy 1994;14:40–46.
116. Peloquin CA, Berning SE, Huitt GW, Childs JM, Singleton MD, James GT. Once-daily and twice-daily dosing of *p*-aminosalicylic acid granules. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1999;159:932–934.
117. American Academy of Pediatrics. Tuberculosis. In: Pickering LK, editor. Red book report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 25th edition. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2000: 593–613.
118. Anonymous. Paserâ granules. In: Physicians' desk reference, 54th edition. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2000:1443–1445.
119. Peloquin CA. Antituberculosis drugs: pharmacokinetics. In: Heifets LB, editor. Drug susceptibility in the chemotherapy of mycobacterial infections. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1991.
120. Fodor T, Pataki G, Schrettner M. PAS infusion in treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis [letter]. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 2000;4:187–188.
121. Rossouw JE, Saunders SJ. Hepatic complications of antituberculous therapy. Q J Med 1975;XLIV:1–16.
122. British Medical Research Council. Treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis with streptomycin and para-amino-salicylic acid. BMJ 1950;2:1073–1085.
123. Jacobus DP. Para-amino-salicylic acid: multi-drug resistant [*sic*] *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Washington, DC.
124. Crofton J. Drug treatment of tuberculosis. I. Standard chemotherapy. BMJ 1960;2:370–373.
125. Tarnoky AL, Steingold L. The action of *p*-aminosalicylic acid on prothrombin time in man. J Clin Pathol 1951;4:478–486.
126. Ogg CS, Toseland PA, Cameron JS. Pulmonary tuberculosis in patient on intermittent haemodialysis. BMJ 1968;2:283–284.
127. Held H, Fried F. Elimination of para-aminosalicylic acid in patients with liver disease and renal insufficiency. Chemotherapy 1977;23:405–415.
128. Gillespie SH, Kennedy N. Fluoroquinolones: a new treatment for tuberculosis? Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1998;2:265–271.
129. Kennedy N, Fox R, Kisyombe GM, Saruni AO, Uiso LO, Ramsay AR, Ngowi FI, Gillespie SH. Early bactericidal and sterilizing activities of ciprofloxacin in pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;148:1547–1551.
130. Kennedy N, Berger L, Curram J, Fox R, Gutmann J, Kisyombe GM, et al. Randomized controlled trial of a drug regimen that includes ciprofloxacin for the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 1996;22:827–833.
131. Fujiwara PI, editor. Clinical policies and protocols. New York: Bureau of Tuberculosis Control, New York City Department of Health; 1999.
132. Sander CC. Review of preclinical studies with ofloxacin. Clin Infect Dis 1991;14:526–538.
133. Ball P, Tillotson G. Tolerability of fluorquinolone antibiotics: past, present, and future. Drug Saf 1995;13:343–358.
134. Lipsky BA, Baker CA. Fluoroquinolone toxicity profiles: a review focusing on newer agents. Clin Infect Dis 1999;28:352–364.
135. Fish DN, Chow AT. The clinical pharmacokinetics of levofloxacin. Clin Pharmacokinet 1997;32:101–119.
136. Anonymous. Ofloxacin. Med Lett Drugs Ther 1991;33:71–73.

4. Principles of Antituberculosis Chemotherapy

4.1. Combination Chemotherapy

The primary goals of antituberculosis chemotherapy are to kill tubercle bacilli rapidly, prevent the emergence of drug resistance, and eliminate persistent bacilli from the host's tissues to prevent relapse (*1*). To accomplish these goals, multiple antituberculosis drugs must be taken for a sufficiently long time. The theoretical model of chemotherapy for tuberculosis is founded on current understanding of the biology of *M. tuberculosis* in the host and on the specific activities of antituberculosis drugs. This model is supported by data from numerous in vivo and in vitro studies.

Effects of Antituberculosis Chemotherapy

Antituberculosis chemotherapy is designed to kill tubercle bacilli rapidly, minimize the potential for the organisms to develop drug resistance, and sterilize the host's tissues. The achievement of these effects requires that a combination of agents with specific activities be administered for a sufficiently long period of time. As a consequence of these effects, the patient is cured and has only a small likelihood of relapse.

It is theorized that there are three separate subpopulations of *M. tuberculosis* within the host. These populations are defined by their growth characteristics and the milieu in which they are located (*1*). The largest of the subpopulations consists of rapidly growing extracellular bacilli that reside mainly in cavities. This subpopulation, because of its size, is most likely to harbor organisms with random mutations that confer drug resistance. The frequency of these mutations that confer resistance is about 10^{-6} for INH and SM, 10^{-8} for RIF, and 10^{-5} for EMB; thus, the frequency of concurrent mutations to both INH and RIF, for example, would be 10^{-14}, making simultaneous resistance to both drugs in an untreated patient a highly unlikely event (*2*).

INH has been shown to possess the most potent ability to kill rapidly multiplying *M. tuberculosis* during the initial part of therapy (early bactericidal activity), thereby rapidly decreasing infectiousness (*3–5*). It is followed in this regard by EMB, RIF, and SM. PZA has weak early bactericidal activity during the first 2 weeks of treatment (*3,6*). Drugs that have potent early bactericidal activity reduce the chance of resistance developing within the bacillary population.

Early experience in clinical trials demonstrated that multiple agents are necessary to prevent the emergence of a drug-resistant population as a consequence of the selection pressure from administration of a single agent. Shortly after the discovery of SM, it was demonstrated that treatment with this agent alone resulted in treatment failure and drug resistance (*7*). Subsequently, it was shown that the combination of PAS and SM substantially lessened the likelihood of acquired resistance and treatment failure (*8*). In modern regimens both INH and RIF have considerable ability to prevent the emergence of drug resistance when given with another drug. EMB and SM are also effective in preventing the emergence of drug resistance, whereas the activity of PZA in this regard is poor (*9,10*). For this reason PZA should not be used with only one other agent when treating active tuberculosis.

The rapidly dividing population of bacilli is eliminated early in effective therapy as shown by the early clinical responses and clearing of live bacilli from sputum within 2 months in about 80% of patients. The remaining subpopulations of *M. tuberculosis* account for treatment failures and relapses, especially when the duration of therapy is inadequate. These residual populations include organisms that are growing more slowly, often in the acidic environment provided by areas of necrosis, and a group that is characterized by having spurts of growth interspersed with periods of dormancy. The sterilizing activity of a drug is defined by its ability to kill bacilli, mainly in these two subpopulations that persist beyond the early months of therapy, thus decreasing the risk of relapse (*1*). The use of drugs that have good sterilizing properties is essential for regimens as short as 6 months. RIF and PZA have the greatest sterilizing activity followed by INH and SM (*11,12*). The sterilizing activity of RIF persists throughout the course of therapy, but this does not appear to be true for PZA. When given in RIF-containing regimens, PZA provides additive sterilizing activity only during the initial 2 months of therapy. The sterilizing activity of PZA may not be so limited in regimens where RIF cannot be used or is not effective, so regimens for MDR tuberculosis may include PZA for the full course of treatment if the isolate is susceptible to this agent.

4.2. Optimum Duration of Treatment

Truly effective chemotherapy for tuberculosis became available with the introduction of INH in the early 1950s. Adding INH to SM and PAS increased cure rates from about 70 to 95% but required treatment for 18–24 months (*13*). Eventually, EMB replaced PAS as the companion agent for INH (*14*). Subsequent investigations of combination chemotherapy sought to identify regimens that were shorter and that could be given intermittently.

The British Medical Research Council (BMRC) in East Africa (*15*) conducted the first large-scale multicenter study of short-course (6-month) regimens. This study demonstrated that the addition of RIF or PZA to a base regimen of daily SM and INH increased the proportion of patients whose sputum cultures were negative by 2 months after the initiation of treatment and significantly reduced the relapse rate. Moreover, the relapse rate of the short-course regimens was no greater than that of the standard 18-month regimen containing SM, INH, and thiacetazone (a drug used in many countries in place of PAS or EMB). In Hong Kong, administration of a 9-month regimen of SM, INH, and PZA daily, twice weekly, or three times weekly was associated with a relapse rate of only 5–6% (*16*). Unfortunately, all short-course regimens that did not include RIF required fully supervised therapy and SM had to be used for the entire 9 months. Subsequent investigations conducted by the British Thoracic Association demonstrated that SM (or EMB) was necessary only for the first 2 months

to achieve excellent results with a 9-month treatment duration, using INH and RIF throughout (*17,18*). The BMRC conducted studies in Hong Kong proving that EMB was roughly as effective as SM in the initial phase of therapy, thereby demonstrating that an all-oral regimen was effective (*19*).

The addition of PZA to a regimen containing INH and RIF enabled further shortening of the duration of therapy to 6 months. The British Thoracic Association demonstrated that a regimen of INH and RIF for 6 months, supplemented during the first 2 months with PZA and either EMB or SM, was as effective as a 9-month regimen of INH and RIF with EMB in the first 2 months (*18*). Administration of PZA beyond the initial 2 months in an RIF-containing regimen had no additional benefit. The efficacy of the treatment regimens was similar regardless of whether PZA was given for 2, 4, or 6 months (*20*).

Subsequent studies of 6-month regimens have served to refine the approach used currently. USPHS Trial 21 compared self-administered INH and RIF for 6 months plus PZA given during the initial 2 months with INH and RIF for 9 months (*21*). EMB was added only if INH resistance was suspected. Patients taking the 6-month PZA-containing regimen had negative sputum cultures sooner after treatment was started than those treated for 9 months without PZA and relapse rates were similar for the two regimens (3.5 versus 2.8%).

Investigators in Denver reported a low relapse rate (1.6%) when using a 62-dose, directly observed, 6-month regimen that consisted of 2 weeks of daily INH, RIF, PZA, and SM, 6 weeks of the same four drugs given twice weekly, and 18 weeks of twice weekly INH and RIF (*22*).

Regimens less than 6 months in duration have been shown to have unacceptably high relapse rates among patients with smear-positive pulmonary tuberculosis (*23,24*). However, in a study in Hong Kong among patients with smear-negative, culture-positive tuberculosis, the relapse rate was about 2% when using a 4-month regimen of daily SM, INH, RIF, and PZA (*25*); among smear-negative, culture-negative cases, the relapse rate was only 1%. In Arkansas, patients with tuberculosis who had negative smears and cultures were treated with INH and RIF given daily for 1 month followed by 3 months of twice weekly INH and RIF (*26*). Only 3 of 126 (2.4%) patients developed active tuberculosis during 3.5 years of follow-up. Thus, it appears that a 4-month, INH- and RIF-containing regimen is effective in culture-negative tuberculosis (see Section 8.4: Culture-Negative Pulmonary Tuberculosis in Adults).

4.3. Intermittent Drug Administration

Nonadherence to the antituberculosis treatment regimen is well known to be the most common cause of treatment failure, relapse, and the emergence of drug resistance. Administration of therapy on an intermittent basis, as opposed to daily dosing, facilitates supervision of therapy, thereby improving the outcome. The concept of intermittent administration of antituberculosis drugs developed from early clinical observations and was supported by subsequent laboratory investigations. First, it was noted that a single daily dose of 400 mg of INH was more effective than the same total dose given in two divided doses (*27*). Second, in an early study from Madras, investigators demonstrated that fully supervised twice weekly therapy could be delivered to nonhospitalized patients and that the results were better than with a conventional self-administered daily regimen (*28*). These findings, plus the laboratory results noted below, led to a series of clinical trials that compared daily and intermittent dosing of antituberculosis medications. In all of these studies, intermittent regimens were demonstrated to be as effective as daily regimens and no more toxic (*20*).

In the laboratory it was noted that in vitro exposure of tubercle bacilli to drugs was followed by a lag period of several days before growth began again (postantibiotic effect) (*29–31*). Thus, it was concluded that maintaining continuous inhibitory drug concentrations was not necessary to kill or inhibit growth of *M. tuberculosis*. Studies in guinea pigs substantiated that INH could be given at intervals as long as 4 days without loss of efficacy; however, there was a significant decrease in activity with an 8-day dosing interval (*30,31*).

The concept of intermittent drug administration continues to evolve. Studies have demonstrated that the frequency of drug administration in the continuation phase of treatment may be decreased to once a week when using INH and rifapentine for certain highly selected patients (*32–34*). Because of the newness of these findings the data are presented in some detail.

The results from three open-label, randomized clinical trials indicate that rifapentine given with INH once a week is safe and effective when used for the treatment of selected, HIV-negative patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. In a study performed in Hong Kong, patients with pulmonary tuberculosis were allocated at random to receive 600 mg of rifapentine and 900 mg of INH given either once every week or once every 2 of 3 weeks for 4 months after completion of a standard 2-month initial phase (*32*). Overall, about 11% of patients in the two rifapentine arms failed or relapsed during a 5-year follow-up period, compared with 4% of the patients who received three times weekly INH–RIF (control arm) in the continuation phase of treatment. Omitting every third dose of INH–rifapentine did not appreciably increase the relapse rate, indicating that modest nonadherence may have a negligible effect. Multivariate analyses showed that the significant prognostic factors were treatment arm, radiographic extent of

disease (all three regimens), and sex (women fared better than men). The frequency of failures and relapses was also greater in all three arms if the 2-month culture was positive.

The pivotal study for drug registration was conducted in North America and South Africa among HIV-negative patients with pulmonary tuberculosis (*33*). Patients in the experimental arm received directly observed twice weekly rifapentine together with daily self-administered INH, PZA, and EMB in the initial 2 months, followed by 4 months of once weekly directly observed rifapentine and INH. Patients in the control arm received a standard four-drug initial phase, followed by twice weekly INH–RIF. Relapse rates during 2 years of follow-up were similar to those seen in the Hong Kong study (8.2% relapse in the experimental arm versus 4.4% in the control arm), and cavitary disease, sputum culture positivity at the end of the initial phase, and nonadherence with INH, EMB, and PZA in the experimental arm were significantly associated with an increased probability of relapse.

The third study was conducted by the CDC Tuberculosis Trials Consortium, and employed a design similar to the Hong Kong trial, in which HIV-negative patients were allocated at random after successful completion of standard 2-month initial phase therapy (*34*). Again, results, as measured by rates of failure/relapse, were remarkably similar to the first two trials, 9.2% in the experimental (INH–rifapentine once weekly) arm compared with 5.6% in the control (INH–RIF twice weekly) arm. However, as in the South Africa study, relapse was significantly associated with the presence of cavitary lesions seen on the initial chest film and sputum culture positivity at 2 months, both of which were more common in the rifapentine arm. With adjustment for these factors, the difference in outcome in the two arms was not statistically significant. Relapse rates among patients who did not have cavitary disease and had negative sputum cultures at 2 months were low in both treatment arms. However, in patients who had both cavitation and a positive culture at 2 months the relapse rate in the rifapentine arm was 22% and in the twice weekly INH–RIF arm was 21% (Table 11). In all of the cited studies, rifapentine was well tolerated, with the adverse events being similar to those occurring with RIF.

A small number of HIV–positive patients were enrolled in the CDC study, but this arm was closed after the development of acquired rifampin resistance among relapse cases in the rifapentine arm (*35*).

References

1. Mitchison DA. Mechanisms of the action of drugs in short-course chemotherapy. Bull Int Union Tuberc 1985;60:36–40.
2. David HL. Probability distribution of drug-resistant mutants in unselected populations of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.* Appl Microbiol 1970;20:810–814.
3. Jindani A, Aber VR, Edwards EA, Mitchison DA. The early bactericidal activity of drugs in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;121:939–949.
4. Chan SL, Yew WW, Ma WK, Girling DJ, Aber VR, Felmingham D, Allen BW, Mitchison DA. The early bactericidal activity of rifabutin measured by sputum viable counts in Hong Kong patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. Tuber Lung Dis 1992;73:33–38.
5. Sirgel FA, Botha FJH, Parkin DP, Van de Wal BW, Donald PR, Clark PK, Mitchison DA. The early bactericidal activity of rifabutin in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis measured by sputum viable counts: a new method of drug assessment. J Antimicrob Chemother 1993;32:867–875.
6. Botha FJH, Sirgel FA, Parkin DP, Van del Wal BW, Donald PR, Mitchison DA. The early bactericidal activity of ethambutol, pyrazinamide, and the fixed combination of isoniazid, rifampicin, and pyrazinamide (Rifater) in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. S Afr Med J 1996;86:155–158.
7. McDermott W, Muschenheim C, Hadley SF, Bunn PA, Gorman RV. Streptomycin in the treatment of tuberculosis in humans. I. Meningitis and generalized hematogenous tuberculosis. Ann Intern Med 1947;27:769–822.
8. Medical Research Council. Treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis with streptomycin and para-aminosalicylic acid. BMJ 1950;2:1073–1085.
9. East African/British Medical Research Council Pyrazinamide Investigation. A controlled comparison of four regimens of streptomycin plus pyrazinamide in the retreatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Tubercle 1969;50:81–112.
10. Matthews JH. Pyrazinamide and isoniazid used in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1960;81:348–351.

TABLE 11. Percentage of culture-positive relapse* by continuation phase regimen, radiographic status, and 2-month sputum culture: USPHS Study 22

Continuation phase, INH–RIF twice weekly†			Continuation phase, INH–RPT once weekly†		
	Culture-positive at 2 months			Culture-positive at 2 months	
Cavity	Yes	No	Cavity	Yes	No
Yes	20.8 (48)‡	4.7 (150)	Yes	22.2 (72)	9.1 (154)
No	5.9 (17)	1.7 (181)	No	11.8 (17)	1.9 (162)

Definition of abbreviations: INH = Isoniazid; RIF = rifampin; RPT = rifapentine.
Source: Tuberculosis Trials Consortium. Rifapentine and isoniazid once a week versus rifampin and isoniazid twice a week for treatment of drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV-negative patients: a randomized clinical trial. Lancet 2002;360:528–534 and additional data (A. Vernon, personal communication).
* Culture-positive relapse with restriction fragment length polymorphism match to initial isolate.
† INH–RIF = twice weekly isoniazid–rifampin for 16 weeks; INH–RPT = once weekly isoniazid–rifapentine for 16 weeks.
‡ Denominators in parentheses: number enrolled, completing treatment per protocol, and assessed for relapse.

11. East African/British Medical Research Council. Controlled clinical trial of four short-course (6-month) regimens of chemotherapy for the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Lancet 1974;ii:1100–1106.
12. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Five year follow-up of a controlled trial of five 6-month regimens of chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1339–1342.
13. Medical Research Council. Long-term chemotherapy in the treatment of chronic pulmonary tuberculosis with cavitations. Tubercle 1962;43:201.
14. Bobrowitz ID, Robins DE. Ethambutol–isoniazid versus PAS–isoniazid in original treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1966;96:428–438.
15. East African/British Medical Research Council. Controlled clinical trial of four short-course (6-month) regimens of chemotherapy for treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Lancet 1973;i:1331–1339.
16. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Controlled trial of 6-month and 9-month regimens of daily intermittent streptomycin plus isoniazid plus pyrazinamide for pulmonary tuberculosis in Hong Kong. Am Rev Respir Dis 1977;115:727–735.
17. British Thoracic and Tuberculosis Association. Short-course chemotherapy in pulmonary tuberculosis: a controlled trial by the British Thoracic and Tuberculosis Association. Lancet 1976;ii:1102–104.
18. British Thoracic Association. A controlled trial of six months chemotherapy in pulmonary tuberculosis: second report-results during the 24 months after the end of chemotherapy. Am Rev Respir Dis 1982;126:460–462.
19. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Five-year follow-up of a controlled trial of five 6-month regimens of chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1339–1342.
20. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Controlled trial of 2, 4, and 6 months of pyrazinamide in 6-month, three-times-weekly regimens for smear-positive pulmonary tuberculosis, including an assessment of a combined preparation of isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:700–706.
21. Combs DL, O'Brien RJ, Geiter LJ. USPHS tuberculosis short-course chemotherapy trial 21: effectiveness, toxicity, and acceptability. Report of final results. Ann Intern Med 1990;112:397–406.
22. Cohn DL, Catlin BJ, Peterson KL, Judson FN, Sbarbaro JA. A 62-dose, 6-month therapy for pulmonary and extrapulmonary tuberculosis: a twice-weekly, directly observed, and cost-effective regimen. Ann Intern Med 1990;112:407–415.
23. East Africa/British Medical Research Council. Controlled clinical trial of five short-course (4 month) chemotherapy regimens in pulmonary tuberculosis: second report of the 4th study. Am Rev Respir Dis 1981;123:165–170.
24. Singapore Tuberculosis Service/British Medical Research Council. Long-term follow-up of a clinical trial of 6-month and 4-month regimens of chemotherapy in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:779–783.
25. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. A controlled trial of 3-month, 4-month, and 6-month regimens of chemotherapy for sputum smear negative pulmonary tuberculosis: results at 5 years. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;139:871–876.
26. Dutt AK, Moers D, Stead WW. Smear and culture negative pulmonary tuberculosis: four-month short course therapy. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;139:867–870.
27. Tuberculosis Chemotherapy Centre, Madras. A concurrent comparison of isoniazid plus PAS with three regimens of isoniazid alone in the domiciliary treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis in South India. Bull World Health Organ 1960;23:535–585.
28. Tuberculosis Chemotherapy Centre, Madras. A concurrent comparison of intermittent (twice weekly) isoniazid plus streptomycin and daily isoniazid plus PAS in the domiciliary treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Bull World Health Organ 1964;31:247.
29. Dickinson JM, Mitchison DA. *In vitro* studies on the choice of drugs for intermittent chemotherapy of tuberculosis. Tubercle 1966;47:370–380.
30. Dickinson JM, Ellard GA, Mitchison DA. Suitability of isoniazid and ethambutol for intermittent administration in the treatment of tuberculosis. Tubercle 1968;49:351–366.
31. Dickinson JM, Mitchison DA. Suitability of rifampicin for intermittent administration in the treatment of tuberculosis. Tubercle 1970;51:82–94.
32. Tam CM, Chan SL, Kam KM, Goodall RL, Mitchison DA. Rifapentine and isoniazid in the continuation phase of treating pulmonary tuberculosis: final report. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 2002;6:3–10.
33. Anonymous. Rifapentine (Priftin) data on file [package insert]. Kansas City, MO: Hoechst Marion Roussel; 1998.
34. Benator D, Bhattacharya M, Bozeman L, Burman W, Catanzaro A, Chaisson R, Gordin F, Horsburgh CR, Horton J, Khan A, Stanton L, Vernon A, Villarino ME, Wang MC, Weiner M, Weis S. Rifapentine and isoniazid once a week versus rifampicin and isoniazid twice a week for treatment of drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV-negative patients: a randomized clinical trial. Lancet 2002;360:528–534.
35. Vernon A, Burman W, Benator D, Khan A, Bozeman L. Acquired rifamycin monoresistance in patients with HIV-related tuberculosis treated with once-weekly rifapentine and isoniazid. Lancet 1999;353:1843–1847.

5. Recommended Treatment Regimens

5.1. Evidence-based Rating System

To assist in making informed treatment decisions based on the most credible research results, evidence-based ratings have been assigned to the treatment recommendations (Table 1). The ratings system is the same as that used in the recommendations for treating latent tuberculosis infection, in which a letter indicating the strength of the recommendation, and a roman numeral indicating the quality of the evidence supporting the recommendation, are assigned to each regimen (*1*). Thus, clinicians can use the ratings to differentiate among recommendations based on data from clinical trials and those based on the opinions of experts familiar with the relevant clinical practice and scientific rationale for such practice when clinical trial data are not available.

5.2. Recommended Regimens

There are four basic regimens recommended for treating adults with tuberculosis caused by organisms that are known or presumed to be susceptible to INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB (Table 2). As noted below, children, depending on the

circumstances, may not receive EMB in the initial phase of a 6-month regimen, but the regimens are otherwise identical. Each regimen has an initial phase of 2 months, followed by a choice of several options for the continuation phase of either 4 or 7 months. In Table 2 the initial phase is denoted by a number (1, 2, 3, or 4) and the options for the continuation phase are denoted by the respective number and a letter designation (a, b, or c). DOT is the preferred initial management strategy for all regimens and should be used whenever feasible. All patients being given drugs less than 7 days per week (5, 3, or 2 days/week) must receive DOT.

5.2.1. Six-month regimens

The current minimal acceptable duration of treatment for all children and adults with culture-positive tuberculosis is 6 months (26 weeks). The initial phase of a 6-month regimen for adults should consist of a 2-month period of INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB given daily throughout (Regimen 1), daily for 2 weeks followed by two times weekly for 6 weeks (Regimen 2), or three times a week (Regimen 3). The minimum number of doses is specified in Table 2. On the basis of substantial clinical experience, 5 day-a-week drug administration by DOT is considered to be equivalent to 7 day-a-week administration; thus, either may be considered "daily." Although administration of antituberculosis drugs by DOT at 5 days/week, rather than 7 days, has been reported in a large number of studies it has not been compared with 7-day administration in a clinical trial and therefore is rated AIII.

The recommendation that a four-drug regimen be used initially for all patients is based on the current proportion of new tuberculosis cases caused by organisms that are resistant to INH (*2*). This recommendation is supported by a retrospective analysis of data from various BMRC studies indicating that in the presence of INH resistance there were fewer treatment failures and relapses if a regimen containing four drugs, INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB, was used in the initial phase (*3*). However, if therapy is being initiated after drug susceptibility test results are known and the organisms are susceptible to INH and RIF, EMB is not necessary. EMB can be discontinued as soon as the results of drug susceptibility studies demonstrate that the isolate is susceptible to the first-line agents. In most situations these results are not available before 6–8 weeks after treatment is begun.

The continuation phase of treatment should consist of INH and RIF given for a minimum of 4 months (18 weeks). Patients should be treated until they have received the specified total number of doses for the treatment regimen (Table 2). The continuation phase can be given daily (Regimen 1a), twice weekly (Regimens 1b and 2a), or three times weekly (Regimen 3a). The continuation phase should be extended for an additional 3 months for patients who have cavitation on the initial or follow-up chest radiograph and are culture-positive at the time of completion of the initial phase of treatment (2 months). Patients who are HIV negative, who do not have cavities on the chest radiograph, and who have negative sputum AFB smears at completion of the initial phase of treatment may be treated with once weekly INH and rifapentine in the continuation phase for 4 months. If the culture of the sputum obtained at 2 months is positive, observational data and expert opinion suggest that the continuation phase of once weekly INH and rifapentine should be 7 months (*4*).

5.2.2. Nine-month regimen

If PZA cannot be included in the initial regimen, or if the isolate is determined to be resistant to PZA (an unusual circumstance, except for *Mycobacterium bovis* and *M. bovis* var. BCG), a regimen consisting of INH, RIF, and EMB should be given for the initial 2 months (Regimen 4) followed by INH and RIF for 7 months given either daily or twice weekly (Regimens 4a and 4b).

5.2.3. Alternative regimens

In some cases, either because of intolerance or drug resistance, the above-described regimens cannot be used. In these instances, an alternative regimen may be required. In a retrospective analysis of the combined results of clinical trials conducted by the BMRC it was concluded that, in the presence of initial resistance to INH, if a four-drug regimen containing RIF and PZA was used in the initial phase and RIF was used throughout a 4-month continuation phase there were no treatment failures and 7% relapses compared with 4% relapses among patients with fully susceptible strains (*3*). Data from a Hong Kong BMRC study suggest that in the presence of INH resistance results are better when PZA is used throughout (*5*). On the basis of these data, when INH cannot be used or the organisms are resistant to INH, a 6-month regimen of RIF, PZA, and EMB is nearly as efficacious as an INH-containing regimen (Rating BI) (*3*). Alternatively, RIF and EMB for 12 months may be used, preferably with PZA during at least the initial 2 months (Rating BII) (*5,6*). If RIF is not used, INH, EMB, and FQN should be given for a minimum of 12–18 months supplemented with PZA during at least the initial 2 months (Rating BIII). An injectable agent may also be included for the initial 2–3 months for patients with more extensive disease or to shorten the duration (e.g., to 12 months), (*7,8*).

Levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, or gatifloxacin may be useful in alternative regimens, but the potential role of a fluoroquinolone and optimal length of therapy have not been defined (*9,10*). In situations in which several of the first-line

agents cannot be used because of intolerance, regimens based on the principles described for treating multiple drug-resistant tuberculosis (Section 9.3: Management of Tuberculosis Caused by Drug-Resistant Organisms) should be used.

5.3. Deciding to Initiate Treatment

The decision to initiate combination chemotherapy for tuberculosis should be based on epidemiologic information, clinical and radiographic features of the patient, and the results of the initial series of AFB smears (preferably three) and, subsequently, cultures for mycobacteria. Rapid amplification tests, if used, can also confirm the diagnosis of tuberculosis more quickly than cultures. On the basis of this information, the likelihood that a given patient has tuberculosis can be estimated. For example, a patient who has emigrated recently from a high-incidence country, has a history of cough and weight loss, and has characteristic findings on chest radiograph should be considered highly likely to have tuberculosis. In such situations combination drug therapy should be initiated, even before AFB smear and mycobacterial culture results are known. Empirical treatment with a four-drug regimen should be initiated promptly when a patient is seriously ill with a disorder that is thought possibly to be tuberculosis. Initiation of treatment should not be delayed because of negative AFB smears for patients in whom tuberculosis is suspected and who have a life-threatening condition. Disseminated (miliary) tuberculosis, for example, is often associated with negative sputum AFB smears. Likewise, for a patient with suspected tuberculosis and a high risk of transmitting *M. tuberculosis* if, in fact, she or he had the disease, combination chemotherapy should be initiated in advance of microbiological confirmation of the diagnosis to minimize potential transmission.

A positive AFB smear provides strong inferential evidence for the diagnosis of tuberculosis. If the diagnosis is confirmed by isolation of *M. tuberculosis* or a positive nucleic acid amplification test, or is strongly inferred from clinical or radiographic improvement consistent with a response to treatment, the regimen can be continued to complete a standard course of therapy (Figure 1). A PPD-tuberculin skin test may be done at the time of initial evaluation, but a negative test does not exclude the diagnosis of active tuberculosis. However, a positive skin test supports the diagnosis of culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis or, in persons with stable abnormal chest radiographs consistent with inactive tuberculosis, a diagnosis of latent tuberculosis infection (see below).

If the cultures are negative, the PPD-tuberculin skin test is positive (5 mm or greater induration), and there is no response to treatment, the options are as follows: 1) stop treatment if RIF and PZA have been given for at least 2 months; 2) continue treatment with RIF, with or without INH, for a total of 4 months; or 3) continue treatment with INH for a total of 9 months (*11*). All three of these options provide adequate therapy for persons with prior tuberculosis once active disease has been excluded.

If clinical suspicion for active tuberculosis is low, the options are to begin treatment with combination chemotherapy or to defer treatment until additional data have been obtained to clarify the situation (usually within 2 months) (Figure 2, top). Even when the suspicion of active tuberculosis is low, treatment for latent tuberculosis infection with a single drug should not be initiated until active tuberculosis has been excluded.

In low-suspicion patients not initially treated, if cultures remain negative, the PPD-tuberculin skin test is positive (5 mm or greater induration), and the chest radiograph is unchanged after 2 months, there are three treatment options (Figure 2, top) (*11*). The preferred options are INH for 9 months or RIF, with or without INH, for 4 months. RIF and PZA for a total of 2 months can be used for patients not likely to complete a longer regimen and who can be monitored closely. However, this last regimen has been associated with an increased risk of hepatotoxicity and should be used only in the limited circumstances described (*12,13*). An advantage of the early use of combination chemotherapy is that, once active disease is excluded by negative cultures and lack of clinical or radiographic response to treatment, the patient will have completed 2 months of combination treatment that can be applied to the total duration of treatment recommended for latent tuberculosis infection (Figure 2, bottom).

5.4. Baseline and Follow-Up Evaluations

Patients suspected of having tuberculosis should have appropriate specimens collected for microscopic examination and mycobacterial culture. When the lung is the site of disease, three sputum specimens should be obtained 8–24 hours apart. In patients who are not producing sputum spontaneously, induction of sputum using aerosolized hypertonic saline or bronchoscopy (performed under appropriate infection control procedures) may be necessary to obtain specimens. Susceptibility testing for INH, RIF, and EMB should be performed on an initial positive culture, regardless of the source. Second-line drug susceptibility testing should be done only in reference laboratories and be limited to specimens from patients who have had prior therapy, have been in contact of a patient with known drug resistance, have demonstrated resistance to rifampin or two other first-line drugs, or who have positive cultures after more than 3 months of treatment.

At the time treatment is initiated, in addition to the microbiologic examinations, it is recommended that all patients with

tuberculosis have counseling and testing for HIV infection (*14*). Patients with epidemiologic factors suggesting a risk for hepatitis B or C, for example, injection drug use, birth in Asia or Africa, or HIV infection, should have serologic tests for these viruses (*15,16*). HIV-infected patients should also undergo $CD4^+$ lymphocyte count measurement. Measurements of AST, bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase, and serum creatinine and a platelet count should be obtained for all adults. Testing of visual acuity (Snellen chart) and color vision (Ishihara tests) should be performed when EMB is to be used.

During treatment of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, at a minimum, a sputum specimen for AFB smear and culture should be obtained at monthly intervals until two consecutive specimens are negative on culture. As described subsequently, important decisions concerning the continuation-phase regimen hinge on the microbiological status at the end of the initial phase of treatment, thus, obtaining sputum specimens at this juncture is critical, if sputum conversion to negative has not already been documented. For patients who had positive AFB smears at the time of diagnosis, follow-up smears may be obtained at more frequent intervals (e.g., every 2 weeks until two consecutive specimens are negative) to provide an early assessment of the response to treatment, especially for patients in situations in which the risk of transmission is high. On occasion, AFB-positive sputa are culture negative; this occurs most frequently among patients with far advanced cavitary tuberculosis after the first months of treatment. It is thought that these organisms are dead and that their presence is not a sign of treatment failure, even if noted later in treatment. However, repeat cultures should be obtained to confirm that the earlier culture result was correct and not a false negative.

Drug susceptibility tests should be repeated on isolates from patients who have positive cultures after 3 months of treatment. As described in Section 9.2 (Treatment Failure), patients who have positive cultures after 4 months of treatment should be considered as having failed treatment and managed accordingly.

For patients with extrapulmonary tuberculosis the frequency and kinds of evaluations will depend on the sites involved and the ease with which specimens can be obtained.

In addition to the microbiological evaluations, it is essential that patients have clinical evaluations at least monthly to identify possible adverse effects of the antituberculosis medications and to assess adherence.

For patients with positive cultures at diagnosis, a repeat chest radiograph at completion of 2 months of treatment may be useful but is not essential. A chest radiograph at completion of therapy provides a baseline against which subsequent examinations can be compared, but, as with the 2-month examination, it is not essential. When the initial sputum cultures are negative, a presumptive diagnosis can be made if radiographic improvement is noted, generally by the time 2 months of treatment has been completed. Thus, in patients with negative initial cultures, a chest radiograph is necessary after 2 months of treatment and a radiograph at completion of treatment is desirable. Generally, follow-up after completion of therapy is not necessary.

As a routine, it is not necessary to monitor liver or renal function or platelet count for patients being treated with first-line drugs unless there were abnormalities at baseline or there are clinical reasons to obtain the measurements. Patients who have stable abnormalities of hepatic or renal function at baseline should have repeat measurements early in the course of treatment, then less frequently to ensure that there has not been worsening. Patients receiving EMB should be questioned regarding visual disturbances at monthly intervals; monthly repeat testing of visual acuity and color vision is recommended for patients receiving an EMB dose exceeding 15–20 mg/kg (the recommended range) and for patients receiving the drug for more than 2 months. Monitoring tests for the individual second-line drugs are listed in Section 3: Drugs in Current Use.

5.5. Identification and Management of Patients at Increased Risk of Relapse

The result of a sputum culture at the conclusion of the initial phase of treatment (2 months) has been shown to correlate with the likelihood of relapse after completion of treatment for pulmonary tuberculosis. In seven clinical trials performed by the BMRC, the regimens that had the highest proportion of patients with a positive sputum culture at 2 months after treatment was initiated were associated with a higher likelihood of relapse within 2 years (*17*). Of greater relevance to the current recommendations, data from USPHS Trial 22 comparing once weekly rifapentine and INH with twice weekly RIF and INH, showed an increased rate of relapse in patients who had a positive culture at 2 months in both study arms (*18*). Cavitation on the initial chest radiograph was also an independent risk factor for relapse. In patients in the control arm (twice weekly INH–RIF) the presence of both cavitation and a positive culture at completion of 2 months of therapy

Patients At Increased Risk of Relapse

Patients who have cavitation on initial chest radiograph and who have a positive culture at completion of 2 months of therapy are at substantially increased risk of relapse. For these patients it is recommended that the continuation phase of treatment be prolonged to 7 months, making a total treatment period of 9 months.

was associated with a 21% rate of relapse, compared with 2% for patients who had neither risk factor (Table 11). Similar findings were reported in a retrospective analysis of data from BMRC trials (*17*) and from a USPHS trial conducted in Poland (*19*).

The most effective means of decreasing the likelihood of relapse for patients at increased risk has not yet been determined by clinical trials. However, in a controlled trial of treatment for silicotuberculosis in Hong Kong, prolongation of the continuation phase from 4 to 6 months decreased the rate of relapse from 22 to 7% ($p < 0.025$) (*20*). Also in studies from Hong Kong, it was found that increasing the duration of PZA beyond the 2-month initial phase did not improve the efficacy of RIF-containing regimens (*21*). It has been reported that for patients at high risk of relapse, prolongation of the once weekly INH–rifapentine continuation phase from 4 to 7 months resulted in significantly better results compared with patients in an earlier trial (*4*).

In view of this evidence and on the basis of expert opinion, it is recommended that treatment for patients who have cavitation noted on the initial chest radiograph and who have positive cultures at completion of 2 months of therapy should be extended with INH and RIF for an additional 3 months for a total of 9 months (Rating AIII).

In USPHS Study 22 patients treated with INH and RIF twice weekly in the continuation phase who had *either* cavitation on the initial chest radiograph *or* a positive culture at 2 months had approximately a 5–6% rate of relapse (Table 11) (*18*). This rate of adverse outcomes is not deemed to be sufficient to recommend prolongation of the continuation phase; however, patients with one or the other of these risk factors should be monitored more closely and consideration given to lengthening treatment if there are suggestions of a poor response. Additional factors to be considered in deciding to prolong treatment in patients with either cavitation or a positive culture at 2 months (but not both) might include being more than 10% underweight at diagnosis, having HIV infection, or having extensive involvement on chest radiograph.

Patients with noncavitary pulmonary tuberculosis and a negative AFB smear at 2 months who are started on the once weekly rifapentine–INH continuation phase and are subsequently found to be culture positive at 2 months should have treatment extended by an additional 3 months for a total of 9 months.

5.6. Definition of Completion of Therapy

Treatment for a defined duration without accounting for the number of doses taken can result in undertreatment. Therefore, the determination of whether or not treatment has been completed is based on the total number of doses taken—not solely on the duration of therapy (Table 2). For example, the 6-month daily (given 7 days/week) regimen should consist of at least 182 doses of INH and RIF, and 56 doses of PZA. If the drugs are administered by DOT at 5 days/week, the minimum number of doses is 130. A similar reduction in the target number of doses for 5-day-a-week administration applies to any of the regimens with a daily component.

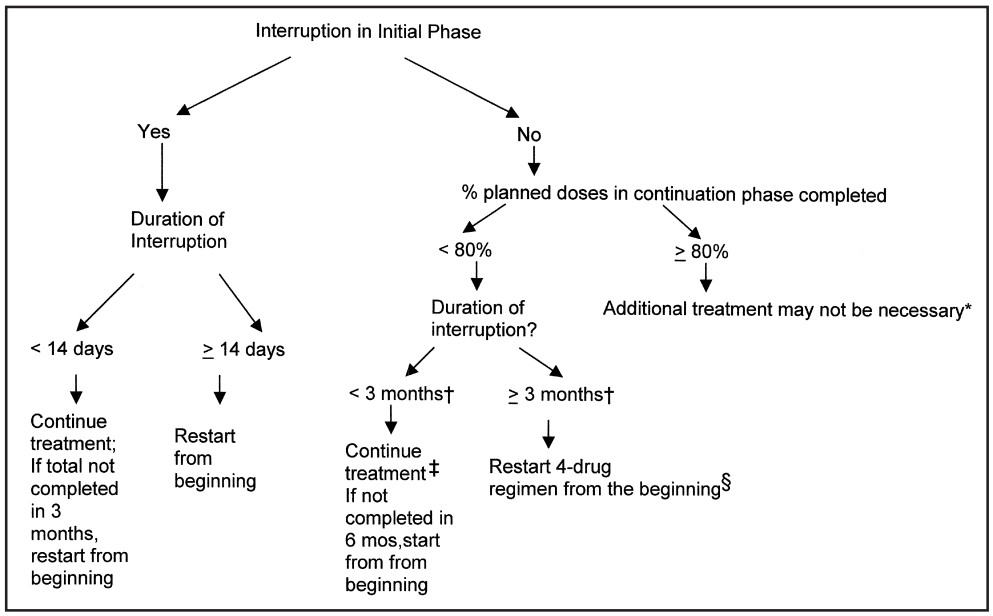
In some cases, either because of drug toxicity or nonadherence to the regimen, the specified number of doses cannot be administered within the targeted time period. In such cases, it is recommended that all of the specified number of doses for the initial phase be delivered within 3 months and those for the 4-month continuation phase be delivered within 6 months, so that the 6-month regimen should be completed within 9 months. If these targets are not met the patient must be considered to have interrupted therapy and be managed as described below.

5.7. Interruptions in Therapy

Interruptions in therapy are common in the treatment of tuberculosis. When interruptions occur, the person responsible for supervision must decide whether to restart a complete course of treatment or simply to continue as intended originally. This decision depends in part on whether the interruption occurred during the initial or the continuation phase of therapy. In general, the earlier the break in therapy and the longer its duration, the more serious the effect and the greater the need to restart the treatment from the beginning. Continuous treatment is more important in the initial phase of therapy, when there is the highest bacillary population and the chance of developing drug resistance is greatest. During the continuation phase, the number of bacilli is much smaller and the goal of therapy is to kill the persisting organisms. The duration of the interruption and the bacteriological status of the patient before and after the interruption are also important considerations.

There is no evidence on which to base detailed recommendations for managing interruptions in treatment, and no recommendations will cover all of the situations that may arise. The following approach (summarized in Figure 5), modified from the New York City Bureau of Tuberculosis Control Clinical Policies and Protocols (*22*), is presented as an example. If the interruption occurs during the initial phase of treatment and the lapse is 14 days or more in duration, treatment should be restarted from the beginning. However, if the lapse is less than 14 days, the treatment regimen should be continued. In either instance the total number of doses targeted for the initial phase should be given. If the interruption in treatment occurs during the continuation phase after the patient has received more than 80% of the planned total continuation

FIGURE 5. Management of treatment interruptions



* Patients who were initially AFB smear-positive should receive additional therapy.
† Recheck smears and cultures (if positive, check drug susceptibility results). Start DOT if not already being used.
‡ If repeat culture is positive, restart four-drug regimen while waiting for drug susceptibility results. If repeat culture is negative, continue therapy to complete regimen within 9 months of original start date.
§ If repeat culture is positive, continue four-drug regimen while waiting for drug susceptibility results. If repeat culture is negative, consider stopping therapy if patient has received a total of 9 months of therapy.

phase doses given by DOT, further treatment may not be necessary if the patient's sputum was AFB smear negative on initial presentation. However, for patients who were smear positive initially, continued treatment to complete the planned total number of doses is warranted. If the patient has received less than 80% of the planned total doses and the lapse is 3 months or more in duration, treatment should be restarted from the beginning. If the lapse is less than 3 months in duration, treatment should be continued to complete a full course.

At the time the patient is returned to treatment sputum cultures should be obtained and repeat drug susceptibility testing performed. If the cultures are still positive, the treatment regimen should be restarted. If sputum cultures are negative the patient could be treated as having culture-negative tuberculosis and given an additional 4 months of combination chemotherapy. Regardless of the timing and duration of the interruption, DOT should be used. If the patient was already being managed with DOT, additional measures will be necessary to ensure completion of therapy.

Consultation with an expert is recommended to assist in managing treatment interruptions.

References

1. Gross PA, Barrett TL, Dellinger EP, Krause PJ, Martone WJ, McGowan JE Jr, Sweet RL, Wenzel RP. Purpose of quality standards for infectious diseases. Clin Infect Dis 1994;18:421.
2. CDC. Reported tuberculosis in the United States, 2001. Atlanta, GA: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC, 2002. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/.
3. Mitchison DA, Nunn AJ. Influence of initial drug resistance on the response to short-course chemotherapy of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:423–430.
4. Bock NN, Sterling TR, Hamilton CD, Pachucki C, Wang YC, Conwell DS, Mosher A, Samuels M, Vernon AA, Tuberculosis Trials Consortium, CDC. A prospective, randomized, double-blind study of the tolerability of rifapentine 600, 900, and 1,200 mg plus isoniazid in the continuation phase of tuberculosis treatment. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2002;165:1526–1530.
5. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Five-year follow-up of a controlled trial of five 6-month regimens of chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1339–1342.
6. Zierski M. Prospects of retreatment of chronic resistant pulmonary tuberculosis: a critical review. Lung 1977;154:91.
7. Hong Kong Chest Service, British Medical Research Council. Controlled trial of 6-month and 9-month regimens of daily and intermittent streptomycin plus isoniazid plus pyrazinamide for pulmonary tuberculosis in Hong Kong. Am Rev Respir Dis 1977;115:727–35.
8. Bobrowitz ID. Ethambutol–isoniazid vs streptomycin–ethambutol–isoniazid in original treatment of cavitary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1974;109:548–553.
9. Gillespie SH, Kennedy N. Fluoroquinolones: a new treatment for tuberculosis? Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1998;2:265–271.
10. Alangaden GJ, Lerner SA. The clinical use of fluoroquinolones for the treatment of mycobacterial diseases. Clin Infect Dis 1997;1:89.
11. CDC. Core curriculum on tuberculosis: what the clinician should know, 4th edition. Atlanta, GA: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC, 2000. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/.
12. CDC. Update: Fatal and severe liver injuries associated with rifampin and pyrazinamide for latent tuberculosis infection, and revisions in American Thoracic Society/CDC recommendations—United States, 2001. MMWR 2001;50:733–735.
13. Jasmer RM, Saukkonen JJ, Blumberg HM, Daley CL, Bernardo J, Vittinghoff E, King MD, Kawamura LM, Hopewell PC. Short-course rifampin and pyrazinamide compared with isoniazid for latent tuberculosis infection: a multucenter clinical trial. Short-Course Rifampin and Pyrazinamide for Tuberculosis Infection (SCRIPT) Study Investigators. Ann Intern Med 2002;137:640–647.
14. American Thoracic Society/CDC. Targeted tuberculin testing and treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:S221–S247. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/.
15. CDC. Recommendations for prevention of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection and HCV chronic disease. MMWR 1998;47(No. RR-19):1–39.

16. Margolis HS, Alter MJ, Hadler SC. Hepatitis B: evolving epidemiology and implications for control. Semin Liver Dis 1991;11:84–92.
17. Mitchison DA. Assessment of new sterilizing drugs for treating pulmonary tuberculosis by culture at 2 months. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;147:1062–1063.
18. Tuberculosis Trials Consortium. Rifapentine and isoniazid once a week versus rifampin and isoniazid twice a week for treatment of drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis: a randomized clinical trial. Lancet 2002;360:528–534.
19. Zierski M, Bek E, Long MW, Snider DE Jr. Short-course (6-month) cooperative tuberculosis study in Poland: results 30 months after completion of treatment. Am Rev Respir Dis 1981;124:249–251.
20. Hong Kong Chest Service/Tuberculosis Research Centre, Madras/British Medical Research Council. A controlled clinical comparison of 6 and 8 months of antituberculosis chemotherapy in the treatment of patients with silicotuberculosis in Hong Kong. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:262–267.
21. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Controlled trial of 2, 4, and 6 months of pyrazinamide in 6-month, three-times-weekly regimens for smear-positive pulmonary tuberculosis, including an assessment of a combined preparation of isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:700–706.
22. Bureau of Tuberculosis Control. Clinical policies and protocols, 3rd edition. New York: Bureau of Tuberculosis Control, New York City Department of Health; 1999:55–57.

6. Practical Aspects of Treatment

6.1. Drug Administration

The first-line antituberculosis medications should be administered together as single dose rather than in divided doses. A single dose leads to higher, and potentially more effective, peak serum concentrations. Administering a single daily dose also facilitates using DOT. Ingestion with food delays or moderately decreases the absorption of antituberculosis drugs (*1*). However, given the wide therapeutic margin of the first-line agents, the effects of food are of little clinical significance. Thus, if patients have epigastric distress or nausea with the first-line drugs, dosing with food is recommended. Administration with food is preferable to splitting a dose or changing to a second-line drug. The absorption of INH can be substantially decreased when the drug is ingested with glucose or lactose. Because of this effect, the commercial preparation of INH elixir uses sorbitol for flavor, rather than glucose or lactose. However, sorbitol can cause diarrhea, limiting the acceptability of the commercial INH elixir. Administration of crushed INH tablets in a food with relatively low concentrations of glucose, such as applesauce, has not been formally evaluated, but has been used successfully by many providers.

Antacids have minimal effects on the absorption of the first-line antituberculosis drugs. With the exception of fluoroquinolones, there is little information regarding the effect of food and antacids on the second-line antituberculosis drugs. In the absence of data, it is preferable to administer the drugs on an empty stomach if they are tolerated. However, antacids and other medications containing divalent cations markedly decrease the absorption of the fluoroquinolones, an interaction that has been associated with failure of antibiotic therapy (*2,3*). Therefore, it is critical that any fluoroquinolone not be administered within 2 hours of a dose of antacids, the chewable tablet form of didanosine, sucralfate, iron, magnesium, calcium, zinc, or vitamins or dietary supplements (e.g., Ensure®, Sustical®) containing a significant amount of these cations.

Parenteral therapy is indicated for severely ill patients who cannot take oral therapy and may be useful for the uncommon patient for whom poor absorption has been documented. Preparations of INH, RIF, the aminoglycosides, capreomycin, and most fluoroquinolones are available for intravenous administration.

6.2. Fixed-Dose Combination Preparations

There are two fixed-dose combination preparations currently available for use in the United States, a combination of INH and RIF (Rifamate®) and a combination of INH, RIF, and PZA (Rifater®) (see Section 3: Drugs in Current Use). (A four-drug combination of INH, RIF, EMB, and PZA is available in some countries.) Two tablets of Rifamate® provide conventional daily doses of both INH (300 mg) and RIF (600 mg). The Rifater® tablet that is available in the United States contains INH (50 mg), RIF (120 mg), and PZA (300 mg). Six tablets of Rifater® would provide INH (300 mg) RIF (720 mg), and PZA (1,800 mg). The RIF dose is higher than is used typically in the United States because the RIF is less bioavailable in this formulation. These fixed-dose combinations have been formulated for use in daily therapy, although some programs use Rifamate® plus INH tablets for twice weekly treatment. It should be noted that the dose of PZA in Rifater® is such that additional PZA tablets will be required to provide an adequate dose for persons weighing more than 90 kg.

Although there is no evidence indicating that fixed-dose combination medications are superior to individual drugs, expert opinion suggests that these formulations should be used when DOT is given daily and when DOT is not possible. Moreover, they are strongly recommended in international recommendations of the WHO and IUATLD. The theoretical advantage of reducing the risk of inadvertent monotherapy, the ease of administration, and the potential for reducing medication errors make them preferable to individual medications in many instances. When prescribing a fixed-dose combination preparation, care must be taken because of the

similarity of the trade names of RIF (Rifadin®) and the fixed-dose combinations (Rifamate®, Rifater®).

6.3. Management of Common Adverse Effects

As is true with all medications, combination chemotherapy for tuberculosis is associated with a predictable incidence of adverse effects, some mild, some serious. A comprehensive list of reported adverse reactions and their frequency is described in Section 3: Drugs in Current Use.

Mild adverse effects can generally be managed with symptomatic therapy, whereas with more severe effects the offending drug or drugs must be discontinued. Although it is important to be attuned to the potential for adverse effects it is at least equally important that first-line drugs not be stopped without adequate justification.

The following is a summary, based largely on clinical experience and expert opinion, of the approaches that should be taken in managing the common adverse effects of tuberculosis treatment. Proper management of more serious adverse reactions often requires expert consultation.

6.3.1. Gastrointestinal upset: nausea, vomiting, poor appetite, abdominal pain

Gastrointestinal reactions are common, particularly in the first few weeks of therapy. Many of the antituberculosis drugs can cause gastrointestinal upset (*4*). In the presence of gastrointestinal symptoms serum AST and bilirubin should be measured. If the AST level is less than three times the upper limit of normal, the symptoms are assumed not to be due to hepatic toxicity. However, if the AST level is three or more times the upper limit of normal the symptoms should be assumed to represent hepatic toxicity, and the patient should be evaluated as described below.

The initial approach to gastrointestinal intolerance, not associated with hepatic toxicity, is to change the hour of drug administration and/or to administer the drugs with food. If patients are taking daily DOT, the timing of the drug administration should be altered, preferably to be closer to mealtime. Alternatively, food can be taken at the time of DOT administration. (In many programs food is offered as an incentive with DOT.) Patients receiving self-administered therapy can take the medications at bedtime. If gastrointestinal intolerance persists it may be best for all medications to be taken with meals.

6.3.2. Rash

All drugs used in treating tuberculosis can cause a rash. The response to a patient with a rash depends on its severity. The rash may be minor, affecting a limited area or being predominantly manifested as itching, in which case antihistamines should be given for symptomatic relief, but all antituberculosis medications can be continued. A petechial rash may suggest thrombocytopenia in patients taking RIF (*5*). The platelet count should be checked and, if low, RIF hypersensitivity should be presumed to be the cause. RIF should be stopped and the platelet count monitored until it returns to baseline; RIF should not be restarted. If there is a generalized erythematous rash, especially if it is associated with fever and/or mucous membrane involvement, all drugs should be stopped immediately. If the patient has severe tuberculosis, three new drugs (e.g., an aminoglycoside and two oral agents) should be started. When the rash is substantially improved the medications can be restarted one by one, at intervals of 2–3 days. RIF should be restarted first (because it is the least likely to cause rash, and it is the most important agent), followed by INH, and then EMB or PZA. If the rash recurs the last drug added should be stopped. If no rash appears after the first three drugs have been restarted, the fourth drug should not be restarted unless the rash was relatively mild and the fourth drug is considered essential for therapy.

6.3.3. Drug fever

Recurrence of fever in a patient who has been receiving therapy for several weeks should suggest drug fever, especially if the patient is showing microbiological and radiographic improvement. It should be noted, however, that fever from tuberculosis may persist for as long as 2 months after therapy has been initiated (*6*). Fever may also be a manifestation of a paradoxical reaction, especially in patients with HIV infection (see Section 8.1: HIV Infection) (*7*). The clinical hallmark of drug fever is that the patient looks and feels well despite having a high fever (often greater than 39°C). There is no specific pattern to the fever. Eosinophilia may or may not be present.

The first step in management of a possible drug fever is to ensure that there is no superinfection or worsening of tuberculosis. If these potential causes are excluded all drugs should be stopped. Drug-related fever usually will resolve within 24 hours. Patients with severe tuberculosis should be given at least three new drugs in the interim. Once the fever has resolved, the same protocol as described above for restarting drugs in the presence of a rash should be followed.

6.3.4. Hepatitis

(Management of patients with baseline abnormal liver function is described in Section 8.8: Hepatic Disease.) Three of the first-line antituberculosis drugs, INH, RIF, and PZA, can cause drug-induced liver injury (AST level three or more times the upper limit of normal in the presence of symptoms, or five or more times the upper limit of normal in the absence of

symptoms) (*8*). If the AST level is less than 5 times the upper limit of normal, toxicity can be considered mild, an AST level 5–10 times normal defines moderate toxicity, and an AST level greater than 10 times normal (i.e., greater than 500 IU) is severe (*9*). In addition to AST elevation, occasionally there are disproportionate increases in bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase. This pattern is more consistent with rifampin hepatotoxicity

It is important to note that an asymptomatic increase in AST concentration occurs in nearly 20% of patients treated with the standard four-drug regimen (*10*). In the absence of symptoms therapy should *not* be altered because of modest asymptomatic elevations of AST, but the frequency of clinical and laboratory monitoring should be increased. In most patients, asymptomatic aminotransferase elevations resolve spontaneously. However, if AST levels are more than five times the upper limit of normal (with or without symptoms) or more than three times normal in the presence of symptoms, hepatotoxic drugs should be stopped immediately and the patient evaluated carefully. Similarly, a significant increase in bilirubin and/or alkaline phosphatase is cause for a prompt evaluation. Serologic testing for hepatitis A, B, and C should be performed and the patient questioned carefully regarding symptoms suggestive of biliary tract disease and exposures to other potential hepatotoxins, particularly alcohol and hepatotoxic medications. Drug-induced hepatitis is usually a diagnosis of exclusion but in view of the frequency with which other possible causes are present in any given patient, determining the cause may be difficult.

Because the schedule for restarting antituberculosis medications is slower with hepatitis than for rash or drug fever it is generally prudent to give at least three nonhepatotoxic antituberculosis drugs until the specific cause of hepatotoxicity can be determined and an appropriate longer term regimen begun. The suspect antituberculosis medications should be restarted one at a time after the AST concentration returns to less than two times the upper limit of normal. (In patients with elevated baseline AST from preexisting liver disease, drugs should be restarted when the AST returns to near baseline levels.) Because RIF is much less likely to cause hepatotoxicity than is INH or PZA (Table 10) (*10*) and is the most effective agent, it should be restarted first. If there is no increase in AST after about 1 week, INH may be restarted. PZA can be started 1 week after INH if AST does not increase. If symptoms recur or AST increases the last drug added should be stopped. If RIF and INH are tolerated, and hepatitis was severe, PZA should be assumed to be responsible and should be discontinued. In this last circumstance, depending on the number of doses of PZA taken, severity of disease, and bacteriological status, therapy might be extended to 9 months.

6.4. Serum Drug Concentration Measurements

The first-line drugs (INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB) have relatively predictable pharmacokinetics (*11,12*) and are highly efficacious when given in standard doses as DOT (*13,14*). Rarely, patients may have poor absorption or altered metabolism of the first-line drugs, resulting in failure of therapy (*15,16*) Second-line agents have a much narrower therapeutic window (the range of concentrations having reliable activity against *M. tuberculosis* but rarely causing toxicity) than the first-line drugs, and the consequences of treatment failure of drug-resistant tuberculosis may be difficult to manage. These considerations suggest several clinical situations in which therapeutic drug monitoring may be helpful: 1) patients with treatment failure that is not explained by nonadherence or drug resistance, 2) persons with medical conditions that may result in abnormal pharmacokinetics of the first-line drugs, and 3) the management of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis with second-line drugs. Be aware, however, that there are many uncertainties about the use of therapeutic drug monitoring in tuberculosis treatment. An important limitation is the lack of sufficient data to formulate clinically validated therapeutic ranges for antituberculosis agents. One response to the lack of clinically derived therapeutic ranges for the rifamycins is to use the distribution of concentrations achieved in healthy volunteers as the therapeutic range. However, in practice this approach has been quite problematic. For example, serum concentrations of the first-line drugs among HIV-infected patients with active tuberculosis are frequently lower than those in healthy volunteers (*17,18*), but HIV-related tuberculosis responds well to standard tuberculosis treatment regimens (*19,20*).

The disadvantages of therapeutic drug monitoring are as follows: 1) the time necessary, from both patients and providers, to obtain and ship blood samples, and 2) the relatively high cost of measuring serum drug concentrations.

Until more data are available, it seems prudent to restrict therapeutic drug monitoring for the first-line drugs to patients who are having an inadequate response to DOT (that is not due to nonadherence or drug resistance) or evidence of severe gastrointestinal or metabolic abnormalities. Examples of such circumstances include severe gastroparesis, short-bowel syndrome, chronic diarrhea with malabsorption, and renal insufficiency. As described above, patients with HIV-related tuberculosis may have an increased incidence of malabsorption of antituberculosis drugs (although some studies have contrary findings) (*21,22*). Even if true, this tendency for lower drug concentrations among patients with HIV-related tuberculosis is not sufficient to warrant routine therapeutic drug monitoring in this population.

References

1. Burman W, Gallicano K, Peloquin C. Therapeutic implications of drug interactions in the treatment of HIV-related tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 1999;28:419–430.
2. Sahai J, Gallicano K, Oliveras L, Khaliq S, Hawley-Foss N, Garber G. Cations in didanosine tablet reduce ciprofloxacin bioavailability. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1993;53:292–297.
3. Lomaestro BM, Bailie GR. Effect of multiple staggered doses of calcium on the bioavailability of ciprofloxacin. Ann Pharmacother 1993;27:1325–1328.
4. CDC. Core curriculum on tuberculosis: what the clinician should know, 4th edition. Atlanta, GA: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC, 2000. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/.
5. Mehta YS, Jijina FF, Badakere SS, Pathare AV, Mohanty D. Rifampin-induced immune thrombocytopenia. Tuberc Lung Dis 1996;77:558–562.
6. Kiblawi SS, Jay SJ, Stonehill RB, Norton J. Fever response of patients on therapy for pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1981;123:20–24.
7. Chien JW, Johnson JL. Paradoxical reactions in HIV and pulmonary TB. Chest 1998;114:933–936.
8. Ormerod LP. Hepatotoxicity of antituberculosis drugs. Thorax 1996;51:111–113.
9. World Health Organization Collaborating Center for International Drug Monitoring. Adverse drug reaction terminology (ART), 1979. http://www.WHO-UMC.org (or e-mail: info@WHO-UMC.org).
10. Steele MA, Burk RF, DesPrez RM. Toxic hepatitis with isoniazid and rifampin: a meta-analysis. Chest 1991;99:465–471.
11. Acocella G, Nonis A, Perna G, Patane E, Gialdroni-Grassi G, Grassi C. Comparative bioavailability of isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide administered in free combination and in a fixed triple formulation designed for daily use in antituberculosis chemotherapy. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988;138:886–890.
12. Peloquin CA, Vernon A, Burman W, Benator D. Pharmacokinetics of rifapentine, rifampin, and isoniazid in TB patients [abstract]. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1999;159:A16.
13. Cohn DL, Catlin BJ, Peterson KL, Judson FN, Sbarbaro JA. A 62-dose, 6-month therapy for pulmonary and extrapulmonary tuberculosis: a twice-weekly, directly observed, and cost-effective regimen. Ann Intern Med 1990;112:407–415.
14. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Controlled trial of 4 three-times-weekly regimens and a daily regimen all given for 6 months for pulmonary tuberculosis. Second report. The results up to 24 months. Tubercle 1982;63:89–98.
15. Kimerling ME, Phillips P, Patterson P, Hall M, Robinson CA, Dunlap NE. Low serum antimycobacterial drug levels in non-HIV-infected tuberculosis patients. Chest 1998;113:1178–1183.
16. Berning SE, Huitt GA, Iseman MD, Peloquin CA. Malabsorption of antituberculosis medications by a patient with AIDS [letter]. N Engl J Med 1992;327:1817–1818.
17. Sahai J, Gallicano K, Swick L, Tailor S, Garber G, Seguin I, Oliveras L, Walker S, Rachlis A, Cameron DW. Reduced plasma concentrations of antituberculous drugs in patients with HIV infection. Ann Intern Med 1997;127:289–293.
18. Peloquin CA, Nitta AT, Burman WJ, Brudney KF, Miranda-Massari JR, McGuinness ME, Berning SE, Gerena GT. Low antituberculosis drug concentrations in patients with AIDS. Ann Pharmacother 1996;30:919–925.
19. Chaisson RE, Clermont HC, Holt EA, Cantave M, Johnson MP, Atkinson J, Davis H, Boulos R, Quinn TC, Halsey NA. Six-month supervised intermittent tuberculosis therapy in Haitian patients with and without HIV infection. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1996;154:1034–1038.
20. El-Sadr W, Perlman DC, Matts JP, Nelson ET, Cohn DL, Salomon N, et al. Evaluation of an intensive intermittent-induction regimen and short course duration of treatment for HIV-related pulmonary tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 1998;26:1148–1158.
21. Choudri SH, Hawken M, Gathau S, Minyiri GO, Watkins W, Sahai J, Sitar DS, Aoki FY, Long R. Pharmacokinetics of antimycobacterial drugs in patients with tuberculosis, AIDS, and diarrhea. Clin Infect Dis 1997;25:104–111.
22. Taylor J, Smith PJ. Does AIDS impair the absorption of antituberculosis agents? Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1998;2:670–675.

7. Drug Interactions

7.1. Interactions Affecting Antituberculosis Drugs

Drug–drug interactions can result in changes in the concentrations of one or both of the drugs involved. In the case of the antituberculosis drugs, there are relatively few interactions that substantially change the concentrations of the antituberculosis drugs; much more often the antituberculosis drugs cause clinically relevant changes in the concentrations of other drugs. The exceptions to this general rule are rifabutin and the fluoroquinolones.

Rifabutin is partially metabolized by cytochrome P450 (CYP) 3A. Inhibitors of CYP3A increase serum concentrations of rifabutin and one of its metabolites (25-*O*-desacetyl-rifabutin), sometimes to toxic levels. For example, administration of ritonavir, a potent CYP3A inhibitor, with the standard daily dose of rifabutin (300 mg) increases the serum concentrations of rifabutin (4-fold increase) and 25-*O*-desacetyl-rifabutin (35-fold increase) (*1*) and is associated with increased rates of leukopenia, arthralgias, skin discoloration, and uveitis (*2*), all recognized to be toxic effects of rifabutin or one of its metabolites (*3,4*). Conversely, administering rifabutin with a CYP3A inducer decreases its concentrations, perhaps to ineffective levels. For example, efavirenz, a potent antiretroviral drug, decreases rifabutin serum concentrations by approximately one-third (*5*).

Recommendations for making dose adjustments of rifabutin when it is given with commonly used CYP3A inhibitors and inducers are available (*6,7*). However, the complexity of these interactions and the rapidly changing nature of antiretroviral therapy strongly suggest that the management of cases of HIV-related tuberculosis should involve a physician with experience in this field.

Absorption of the fluoroquinolones is markedly decreased by ingestion with medications containing divalent cations (calcium, iron, zinc), including antacids (*8,9*); supplements or vitamins containing calcium, iron or zinc (*10*), sucralfate (*11*); and the chewable tablet formulation of didanosine (*12*). These drug interactions can be avoided by assuring that medications containing divalent cations are ingested at least 2 hours apart from doses of fluoroquinolones (*13*).

7.2. Effects of Antituberculosis Drugs on Other Drugs

7.2.1. Drug interactions due to rifamycins

The drugs used to treat tuberculosis affect the metabolism of many other drugs, and can result in a lack of efficacy (interactions with the rifamycins) or toxicity (interactions with isoniazid and the fluoroquinolones). Most of the clinically relevant drug–drug interactions involving the antituberculosis drugs are due to the effect of the rifamycins (rifampin, rifabutin, and rifapentine) on the metabolism of other drugs. All of the rifamycins are inducers of a variety of metabolic pathways, particularly those involving the various isozymes of the cytochrome P450 system (*14–18*). By inducing the activity of metabolic enzymes, rifamycin therapy results in a decrease in the serum concentrations of many drugs, sometimes to levels that are subtherapeutic. The rifamycins differ substantially in their potency as enzyme inducers; rifampin is the most potent, rifapentine is intermediate, and rifabutin is the least potent enzyme inducer (*19*).

The well-described, clinically relevant drug–drug interactions involving the rifamycins are presented in Table 12 (*1,5,15,20–88*). However, it is important to note that many possible interactions involving the rifamycins have not been investigated fully and additional clinically relevant interactions undoubtedly will be described. Therefore, it is important to check all concomitant medications for possible, as well as confirmed, drug–drug interactions with rifamycins.

Some of these drug–drug interactions can be managed with close clinical or laboratory monitoring and dose increases of the medication(s) affected by the rifamycins (Table 12). In other cases, the magnitude of the decrease in concentrations of a concomitant medication may be such that serum concentrations cannot be restored by a dose increase. If the dose of a medication is increased to compensate for the effect of a rifamycin, it is critical to remember that the dose of this drug will probably need to be decreased within the 2 weeks after the rifamycin is discontinued and its inductive effect resolves.

In some situations, rifabutin can sometimes be used in place of rifampin, if there is an unacceptable drug–drug interaction between rifampin and another drug, such as cyclosporine (*51*) and most of the HIV-1 protease inhibitors (*89*). All the rifamycins may cause unacceptable decreases in the serum concentrations of certain drugs, such as delavirdine (*26,27,90*), ketoconazole and itraconazole (*34,91*).

7.2.2. Drug interactions due to isoniazid

Isoniazid is a relatively potent inhibitor of several cytochrome P450 isozymes (CYP2C9, CYP2C19, and CYP2E1) (*92*), but has minimal effect on CYP3A (*20*). As an inhibitor, isoniazid can increase concentrations of some drugs to the point of toxicity. The clearest examples of toxicity due to the inhibitory activity of isoniazid are the anticonvulsants, phenytoin (*93,94*) and carbamazepine (*95,96*). Isoniazid also increases concentrations of benzodiazepines metabolized by oxidation, such as diazepam (*85*) and triazolam (*97*), but not those metabolized by conjugation, such as oxazepam (*97*). It is worth noting that rifampin has the opposite effect on the serum concentrations of many of these drugs. The available data demonstrate that the inductive effect of rifampin outweighs the inhibitory effect of isoniazid, so that the overall effect of combined therapy with rifampin and isoniazid is a decrease in the concentrations of drugs such as phenytoin (*59*) and diazepam (*85*).

Isoniazid may increase toxicity of other drugs—acetaminophen (*98*), valproate (*99*), serotonergic antidepressants (*100*), disulfiram (*101*), warfarin (*102*), and theophylline (*103*)—but these potential interactions have not been well studied.

7.2.3. Drug interactions due to fluoroquinolones

Ciprofloxacin (*104*) inhibits the metabolism of theophylline and can cause clinical theophylline toxicity (*105*). However, levofloxacin (*106*), gatifloxacin (*107*), and moxifloxacin (*108*) do not affect theophylline metabolism.

References

(Includes references cited in Table 12.)

1. Cato A, Cavanaugh J, Shi H, Hsu A, Leonard J, Granneman GR. The effect of multiple doses of ritonavir on the pharmacokinetics of rifabutin. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1998;63:414–421.
2. Sun E, Heath-Chiozzi M, Cameron DW, Hsu A, Granneman RG, Maurath CJ, Leonard JM. Concurrent ritonavir and rifabutin increases risk of rifabutin-associated adverse events [abstract Mo.B.171]. In: XI International Conference on AIDS, Vancouver, Canada, July 7–12, 1996;11:18.
3. Torseth J, Bhatia G, Harkonen S, Child C, Skinner M, Robinson WS, Blaschke TF, Merigan TC. Evaluation of the antiviral effect of rifabutin in AIDS-related complex. J Infect Dis 1989;159:1115–1118.
4. Griffith DE, Brown BA, Girard WM, Wallace RJ Jr. Adverse events associated with high-dose rifabutin in macrolide-containing regimens for the treatment of *Mycobacterium avium* lung disease. Clin Infect Dis 1995;21:594–598.

TABLE 12. Clinically significant drug–drug interactions involving the rifamycins*

Drug class	Drugs whose concentrations are substantially decreased by rifamycins (references)	Comments
Antiinfectives	HIV-1 protease inhibitors (saquinavir, indinavir, nelfinavir, amprenavir, ritonavir, lopinavir/ritonavir) (*1,20–25*)	Can be used with rifabutin. Ritonavir, 400–600 mg twice daily, probably can be used with rifampin. The combination of saquinavir and ritonavir can also be used with rifampin.
	Nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors Delavirdine (*26,27*) Nevirapine (*28*) Efavirenz (*29*)	Delavirdine should not be used with any rifamycin. Doses of nevirapine (*28*) and efavirenz (*29*) need to be increased if given with rifampin, no dose increase needed if given with rifabutin (*5*).
	Macrolide antibiotics (clarithromycin, erythromycin) (*30–32*)	Azithromycin has no significant interaction with rifamycins.
	Doxycycline (*33*)	May require use of a drug other than doxycycline.
	Azole antifungal agents (ketoconazole, itraconazole, voriconazole) (*34–38*)	Itraconazole, ketoconazole, and voriconazole concentrations may be subtherapeutic with any of the rifamycins. Fluconazole can be used with rifamycins, but the dose of fluconazole may have to be increased.
	Atovaquone (*39*)	Consider alternate form of *Pneumocystis carinii* treatment or prophylaxis.
	Chloramphenicol (*40*)	Consider an alternative antibiotic.
	Mefloquine (*41*)	Consider alternate form of malaria prophylaxis.
Hormone therapy	Ethinylestradiol, norethindrone (*42–44*)	Women of reproductive potential on oral contraceptives should be advised to add a barrier method of contraception when taking a rifamycin.
	Tamoxifen (*45*)	May require alternate therapy or use of a nonrifamycin-containing regimen.
	Levothyroxine (*46,47*)	Monitoring of serum TSH recommended; may require increased dose of levothyroxine.
Narcotics	Methadone (*48,49*)	Rifampin and rifapentine use may require methadone dose increase; rifabutin infrequently causes methadone withdrawal.
Anticoagulants	Warfarin (*50*)	Monitor prothrombin time; may require two- to threefold dose increase.
Immunosuppressive agents	Cyclosporine, tacrolimus (*51–53*)	Rifabutin may allow concomitant use of cyclosporine and a rifamycin; monitoring of cyclosporine serum concentrations may assist with dosing.
	Corticosteroids (*54–57*)	Monitor clinically; may require two- to threefold increase in corticosteroid dose (*58*).
Anticonvulsants	Phenytoin (*59*), lamotrigine (*60*)	Therapeutic drug monitoring recommended; may require anticonvulsant dose increase.
Cardiovascular agents	Verapamil (*61*), nifedipine (*62,63*), diltiazem (a similar interaction is also predicted for felodipine and nisoldipine)	Clinical monitoring recommended; may require change to an alternate cardiovascular agent.
	Propranolol (*64*), metoporol (*65*)	Clinical monitoring recommended; may require dose increase or change to an alternate cardiovascular drug.
	Enalapril (*66*), losartan (*67*)	Monitor clinically; may require a dose increase or use of an alternate cardiovascular drug.
	Digoxin (among patients with renal insufficiency) (*68*), digitoxin (*69*)	Therapeutic drug monitoring recommended; may require digoxin or digitoxin dose increase.
	Quinidine (*70,71*)	Therapeutic drug monitoring recommended; may require quinidine dose increase.
	Mexilitine (*72*), tocainide (*73*), propafenone (*15*)	Clinical monitoring recommended; may require change to an alternate cardiovascular drug.
Bronchodilators	Theophylline (*74*)	Therapeutic drug monitoring recommended; may require theophylline dose increase.
Sulfonylurea hypoglycemics	Tolbutamide, chlorpropamide, glyburide, glimepiride, repaglinide (*75–79*)	Monitor blood glucose; may require dose increase or change to an alternate hypoglycemic drug.
Hypolipidemics	Simvastatin (*80*), fluvastatin (*81*)	Monitor hypolipidemic effect; may require use of an alternate hypolipidemic drug.
Psychotropic drugs	Nortriptyline (*82*)	Therapeutic drug monitoring recommended; may require dose increase or change to alternate psychotropic drug.
	Haloperidol (*83*), quetiapine (*84*)	Monitor clinically; may require a dose increase or use of an alternate psychotropic drug.
	Benzodiazepines (e.g., diazepam [*85*], triazolam [*86*]), zolpidem (*87*), buspirone (*88*)	Monitor clinically; may require a dose increase or use of an alternate psychotropic drug.

* For reference citations refer to Section 7.2.

5. Benedeck IH, Fiske WD, White SJ, Stevenson D, Joseph JL, Kornhauser DM. Pharmacokinetic interaction between multiple doses of efavirenz and rifabutin in healthy volunteers. In: 36th Annual Meeting of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Denver, CO: Infectious Diseases Society of America; 1998.
6. CDC. Prevention and treatment of tuberculosis among patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus: principles of therapy and revised recommendations. MMWR 1998;47(No. RR-20):1–58.
7. CDC. Updated guidelines for the use of rifabutin or rifampin for the treatment and prevention of tuberculosis among HIV-infected patients taking protease inhibitors or nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. MMWR 2000;49:185–189.
8. Nix DE, Watson WA, Lener ME, Frost RW, Krol G, Goldstein H, Lettieri J, Schentag JJ. Effects of aluminum and magnesium antacids and ranitidine on the absorption of ciprofloxacin. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1989;46:700–705.
9. Frost RW, Lasseter KC, Noe AJ, Shamblen EC, Lettieri JT. Effects of aluminum hydroxide and calcium carbonate antacids on the bioavailability of ciprofloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1992;36:830–832.
10. Polk RE, Healy DP, Sahai J, Drwal L, Racht E. Effect of ferrous sulfate and multivitamins with zinc on absorption of ciprofloxacin in normal volunteers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1989;33:1841–1844.
11. Lehto P, Kivisto KT. Effect of sucralfate on absorption of norfloxacin and ofloxacin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1994;38:248–251.
12. Sahai J, Gallicano K, Oliveras L, Khaliq S, Hawley-Foss N, Garber G. Cations in didanosine tablet reduce ciprofloxacin bioavailability. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1993;53:292–297.
13. Lomaestro BM, Bailie GR. Effect of multiple staggered doses of calcium on the bioavailability of ciprofloxacin. Ann Pharmacother 1993;27:1325–1328.
14. Gharaibeh MN, Gillen LP, Osborne B, Schwartz JI, Waldman SA. Effect of multiple doses of rifampin on the [^{14}C *N*-methyl] erythromycin breath test in healthy male volunteers. J Clin Pharmacol 1998;38:492–495.
15. Dilger K, Greiner B, Fromm MF, Hofmann U, Kroemer HK, Eichelbaum M. Consequences of rifampicin treatment on propafenone disposition in extensive and poor metabolizers of CYP2D6. Pharmacogenetics 1999;9:551–559.
16. Bachmann KA, Jauregui L. Use of single sample clearance estimates of cytochrome P450 substrates to characterize human hepatic CYP status *in vivo*. Xenobiotica 1993;23:307–315.
17. Caraco Y, Sheller J, Wood AJ. Pharmacogenetic determination of codeine induction by rifampin: the impact on codeine's respiratory, psychomotor and meiotic effects. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 1997;281:330–336.
18. Greiner B, Eichelbaum M, Fritz P, Kreichgauer HP, von Richter O, Zundler J, Kroemer HK. The role of intestinal P-glycoprotein in the interaction of digoxin and rifampin. J Clin Invest 1999;104:147–153.
19. Li AP, Reith MK, Rasmussen A, Gorski JC, Hall SD, Xu L, Kaminski DL, Cheng LK. Primary human hepatocytes as a tool for the evaluation of structure–activity relationship in cytochrome P450 induction potential of xenobiotics: evaluation of rifampin, rifapentine, and rifabutin. Chem Biol Interact 1997;107:17–30.
20. Indinavir Pharmacokinetic Study Group. Indinavir (MK 639) drug interactions studies. In: XI International Conference on AIDS, Vancouver, Canada, July 7–12,1996:18.12.
21. Kerr B, Lee C, Yuen G, Anderson R, Daniels R, Greitenberger H, et al. Overview of in-vitro and in-vivo drug interaction studies of nelfinavir mesylate, a new HIV-1 protease inhibitor. In: Program and abstracts of the 4th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections, Washington, DC, January 22–26, 1997. Foundation for Retrovirology and Human Health; 1997;133.
22. Kerr BM, Daniels R, Clendeninn N. Pharmacokinetic interaction of nelfinavir with half-dose rifabutin [abstract]. Can J Infect Dis 1999;10(Suppl B):21B.
23. Moyle J, Buss NE, Goggin T, Snell P, Higgs C, Hawkins DA. Interaction between saquinavir soft-gel and rifabutin in patients infected with HIV. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2002;54:178–182.
24. Moreno S, Podzamczer D, Blazquez R, Tribarren JA, Ferror B, Reparez J, Pena JM, Cabrero E, Usan L. Treatment of tuberculosis in HIV-infected patients: safety and antiretroviral efficacy of the concomitant use of ritonavir and rifampin. AIDS 2001;15:1185–7.
25. Polk RE, Brophy DF, Israel DS, Patron R, Sadler BM, Chittick GE, Symonds WT, Lou Y, Kristoff D, Stein DS. Pharmacokinetic interaction between amprenavir and rifabutin or rifampin in healthy males. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2001;45:502–508.
26. Borin MT, Chambers JH, Carel BJ, Gagnon S, Freimuth WW. Pharmacokinetic study of the interaction between rifampin and delavirdine mesylate. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1997;61:544–553.
27. Borin MT, Chambers JH, Carel BJ, Freimuth WW, Aksentijevich S, Piergies AA. Pharmacokinetic study of the interaction between rifabutin and delavirdine mesylate in HIV-1 infected patients. Antiviral Res 1997;35:53–63.
28. Robinson P, Lamsom M, Gigliotti M, Myers M. Pharmacokinetic interaction between nevirapine and rifampin. International Conference on AIDS, Geneva, Switzerland 1998;1115.
29. Benedek IH, Joshi A, Flake WD, White SJ, Stevenson D, Bawerjee G, Kornhauser DM. Pharmacokinetic interaction between efavirenz and rifampin in healthy volunteers. 12th World AIDS Conference, Geneva, Switzerland, 1998;829.
30. Hafner R, Bethel J, Power M, Landry B, Banach M, Mole L, et al. Tolerance and pharmacokinetic interactions of rifabutin and clarithromycin in human immunodeficiency virus-infected volunteers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1998;42:631–639.
31. Wallace RJJ, Brown BA, Griffith DE, Girard W, Tanaka K. Reduced serum levels of clarithromycin in patients treated with multidrug regimens including rifampin or rifabutin for *Mycobacterium avium-M. intracellulare* infection. J Infect Dis 1995;171:747–750.
32. Apseloff G, Foulds G, LaBoy-Garol L, Willavize S, Vincent J. Comparison of azithromycin and clarithromycin in their interactions with rifabutin in healthy volunteers. J Clin Pharmacol 1998;38:830–835.
33. Colmenero JD, Fernandez-Gallardo LC, Agundez JA, Sedeno J, Benitez J, Valverde E. Possible implications of doxycycline–rifampin interaction for treatment of brucellosis. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1994;38:2798–2802.
34. Drayton J, Dickinson G, Rinaldi MG. Coadministration of rifampin and itraconazole leads to undetectable levels of serum itraconazole. Clin Infect Dis 1994;18:266.
35. Doble N, Shaw R, Rowland-Hill C, Lush M, Warnock DW, Keal EE. Pharmacokinetic study of the interation between rifampin and ketoconazole. J Antimicrob Chemother 1988;21:633–635.
36. Nicolau DP, Crowe HM, Nightingale CH, Quintiliani R. Rifampin–fluconazole interaction in critically ill patients. Ann Pharmacother 1995;29:994–996.

37. Jaruratanasirikul S, Sriwiriyajan S. Effect of rifampicin on the pharmacokinetics of itraconazole in normal volunteers and AIDS patients. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1998;54:155–158.
38. Jaruratanasirikul S, Kleepkaew A. Lack of effect of fluconazole on the pharmacokinetics of rifampicin in AIDS patients. J Antimicrob Chemother 1996;38:877–880.
39. Sadler BM, Caldwell P, Scott JD, Rogers M, Blum MR. Drug interaction between rifampin and atovaquone in HIV+ asymptomatic volunteers [poster A34]. In: 35th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy, San Francisco, CA, September 17–20, 1995.
40. Prober CG. Effect of rifampin on chloramphenicol levels (letter). N Engl J Med 1985;312:788–789.
41. Ridtitid W, Wongnawa M, Mahatthanatrakul W, Chaipol P, Sunbhanich M. Effect of rifampin on plasma concentrations of mefloquine in healthy volunteers. J Pharm Pharmacol 2000;52:1265–1269.
42. Barditch-Crovo P, Trapnell CB, Ette E, Zacur HA, Coresh J, Rocco LE, Hendrix CW, Flexner C. The effects of rifampin and rifabutin on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of a combination oral contraceptive. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1999;65:428–438.
43. Gupta KC, Ali MY. Failure of oral contraceptive with rifampicin. Med J Zambia 1980;15:23.
44. LeBel M, Masson E, Guilbert E, Colborn D, Paquet F, Allard S, Vallee F, Narang PK. Effects of rifabutin and rifampicin on the pharmacokinetics of ethinylestradiol and norethindrone. J Clin Pharmacol 1998;38:1042–1050.
45. Kivisto KT, Villikka K, Nyman L, Anttila M, Neuvonen PJ. Tamoxifen and toremifene concentrations in plasma are greatly decreased by rifampin. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1998;64:648–654.
46. Nolan SR, Self TH, Norwood JM. Interaction between rifampin and levothyroxine. South Med J 1999;92:529–531.
47. Christensen HR, Simonsen K, Hegedus L, Hansen BM, Dossing M, Kampmamn JP, Hansen JM. Influence of rifampicin on thyroid gland volume, thyroid hormones, and antipyrine metabolism. Acta Endocrinol (Copenh) 1989;121:406–410.
48. Kreek MJ, Garfield JW, Gutjahr CL, Giusti LM. Rifampin-induced methadone withdrawal. N Engl J Med 1976;294:1104–1106.
49. Brown LS, Sawyer RC, Li R, Cobb MN, Colborn DC, Narang PK. Lack of a pharmacologic interaction between rifabutin and methadone in HIV-infected former injecting drug users. Drug Alcohol Depend 1996;43:71–77.
50. Romankiewicz JA, Ehrman M. Rifampin and warfarin: a drug interaction. Ann Intern Med 1975;82:224–225.
51. Vandevelde C, Chang A, Andrews D, Riggs W, Jewesson P. Rifampin and ansamycin interactions with cyclosporine after renal transplantation. Pharmacotherapy 1991;11:88–89.
52. Hebert MF, Roberts JP, Prueksaritanont T, Benet LZ. Bioavailability of cyclosporine with concomitant rifampin administration is markedly less than predicted by hepatic enzyme induction. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1992;52:453–457.
53. Chenhsu RY, Loong CC, Chou MH, Lin MF, Yang WC. Renal allograft dysfunction associated with rifampin–tacrolimus interaction. Ann Pharmacother 2000;34:27–31.
54. Kyriazopoulou V, Parparousi O, Vagenakis AG. Rifampicin-induced adrenal crisis in addisonian patients receiving corticosteroid replacement therapy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1984;59:1204–1206.
55. Perucca E, Grimaldi R, Frigo GM, Sardi A, Monig H, Ohnhaus EE. Comparative effects of rifabutin and rifampicin on hepatic microsomal enzyme activity in normal subjects. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1988;34:595–599.
56. Lin FL. Rifampin-induced deterioration in steroid-dependent asthma. J Allergy Clin Immunol 1996;98:1125.
57. Carrie F, Roblot P, Bouquet S, Delon A, Roblot F, Becq-Giraudon B. Rifampin-induced nonresponsiveness of giant cell arteritis to prednisone treatment. Arch Intern Med 1994;154:1521–1524.
58. McAllister WA, Thompson PJ, Al-Habet SM, Rogers HJ. Rifampicin reduces effectiveness and bioavailability of prednisolone. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1983;286:923–925.
59. Kay L, Kampmann JP, Svendsen TL, Vergman B, Hansen JE, Skovsted L, Kristensen M. Influence of rifampin and isoniazid on the kinetics of phenytoin. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1985;20:323–326.
60. Ebert U, Thong NQ, Oertel R, Kirch W. Effects of rifampicin and cimetidine on pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of lamotrigine in healthy subjects. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 2000;56:299–304.
61. Barbarash RA, Bauman JL, Fischer JH, Kondos GT, Batenhorst RL. Near-total reduction in verapamil bioavailability by rifampin: electrocardiographic correlates. Chest 1988;94:954–959.
62. Holtbecker N, Fromm MF, Kroemer HK, Ohnhaus EE, Heidemann H. The nifedipine–rifampin interaction: evidence for induction of gut wall metabolism [see comments]. Drug Metab Dispos 1996;24:1121–1123.
63. Yoshimoto H, Takahashi M, Saima S. [Influence of rifampicin on antihypertensive effects of dihydropiridine calcium-channel blockers in four elderly patients]. Nippon Ronen Igakkai Zasshi 1996;33:692–696.
64. Herman RJ, Nakamura K, Wilkinson GR, Wood AJ. Induction of propranolol metabolism by rifampicin. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1983;16:565–569.
65. Bennett PN, John VA, Whitmarsh VB. Effect of rifampicin on metoprolol and antipyrine kinetics. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1982;13:387–391.
66. Kandiah D, Penny WJ, Fraser AG, Lewis MJ. A possible drug interaction between rifampicin and enalapril. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1988;35:431–432.
67. Williamson KM, Patterson JH, McQueen RH, Adams KF Jr, Pieper JA. Effects of erythromycin or rifampin on losartan pharmacokinetics in healthy volunteers. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1998;63:316–323.
68. Gault H, Longerich L, Dawe M, Fine A. Digoxin–rifampin interaction. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1984;35:750–754.
69. Poor DM, Self TH, Davis HL. Interaction of rifampin and digitoxin. Arch Intern Med 1983;143:599.
70. Damkier P, Hansen LL, Brosen K. Rifampicin treatment greatly increases the apparent oral clearance of quinidine. Pharmacol Toxicol 1999;85:257–262.
71. Ahmad D, Mathur P, Ahuja S, Henderson R, Carruthers G. Rifampicin–quinidine interaction. Br J Dis Chest 1979;73:409–411.
72. Pentikainen PJ, Koivula IH, Hiltunen HA. Effect of rifampicin treatment on the kinetics of mexiletine. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1982;23:261–266.
73. Rice TL, Patterson JH, Celestin C, Foster JR, Powell JR. Influence of rifampin on tocainide pharmacokinetics in humans. Clin Pharm 1989;8:200–205.
74. Gillum JG, Sesler JM, Bruzzese VL, Israel DS, Polk RE. Induction of theophylline clearance by rifampin and rifabutin in healthy male volunteers. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1996;40:1866–1869.
75. Self TH, Morris T. Interaction of rifampin and chlorpropamide. Chest 1980;77:800–801.

76. Zilly W, Breimer DD, Richter E. Induction of drug metabolism in man after rifampicin treatment measured by increased hexobarbital and tolbutamide clearance. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1975;9:219–227.
77. Surekha V, Peter JV, Jeyaseelan L, Cherian AM. Drug interaction: rifampicin and glibenclamide. Natl Med J India 1997;10:11–12.
78. Niemi M, Backman JT, Neuvonen M, Neuvonen PJ, Kivisto KT. Rifampin decreases the plasma concentrations and effects of repaglinide. Clin Pharmacol Ther 2000;68:495–500.
79. Niemi M, Kivisto KT, Backman JT, Neuvonen PJ. Effect of rifampicin on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of glimepiride. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2000;50:591–595.
80. Kyrklund C, Backman JT, Kivisto KT, Neuvonen M, Laitila J, Neuvonen PJ. Rifampin greatly reduces plasma simvastatin and simvastatin acid concentrations. Clin Pharmacol Ther 2000;68:592–597.
81. Scripture CD, Pieper JA. Clinical pharmacokinetics of fluvastatin. Clin Pharmacokinet 2001;40:263–281.
82. Self T, Corley CR, Nabhan S, Abell T. Case report: interaction of rifampin and nortriptyline. Am J Med Sci 1996;311:80–81.
83. Kim YH, Cha IJ, Shim JC, Shin JG, Yoon YR, Kim YK, et al. Effect of rifampin on the plasma concentration and the clinical effect of haloperidol concomitantly administered to schizophrenic patients. J Clin Psychopharmacol 1996;16:247–252.
84. Misra LK, Erpenbach JE, Hamlyn H, Fuller WC. Quetiapine: a new atypical antipsychotic. S D J Med 1998;51:189–193.
85. Ochs HR, Greenblatt DJ, Roberts GM, Dengler HJ. Diazepam interaction with antituberculosis drugs. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1981;29:671–678.
86. Yuan R, Flockhart DA, Balian JD. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic consequences of metabolism-based drug interactions with alprazolam, midazolam, and triazolam. J Clin Pharmacol 1999;39:1109–1125.
87. Villikka K, Kivisto KT, Luurila H, Neuvonen PJ. Rifampin reduces plasma concentrations and effects of zolpidem. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1997;62:629–634.
88. Kivisto KT, Lamberg TS, Neuvonen PJ. Interactions of buspirone with itraconazole and rifampicin: effects on the pharmacokinetics of the active 1-(2-pyrimidinyl)-piperazine metabolite of buspirone. Pharmacol Toxicol 1999;84:94–97.
89. Narita M, Stambaugh JJ, Hollender ES, Jones D, Pitchenik AE, Ashkin D. Use of rifabutin with protease inhibitors for human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients with tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 2000;30:779–783.
90. Cox SR, Herman BD, Batta DH, Carel BJ, Carberry PA. Delavirdine and rifabutin: pharmacokinetic evaluation in HIV-1 patients with concentration-targeting of delavirdine. In: 5th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections, February 1–5, Chicago, IL, 1998. p. 144.
91. Smith JA, Hardin TC, Patterson TF, Rinaldi MG, Graybill JR. Rifabutin decreases itraconazole plasma levels in patients with HIV-infection. In: 2nd National Conference on Human Retroviruses, Washington, DC, January 29–February 2, 1995;26.
92. Self TH, Chrisman CR, Baciewicz AM, Bronze MS. Isoniazid drug and food interactions. Am J Med Sci 1999;317:304–311.
93. Kutt H, Brennan R, Dehajia H, Verebely K. Dephenylhydantoin intoxiciation: a complication of isoniazid therapy. Am Rev Respir Dis 1970;101:377–383.
94. Miller RR, Porter J, Greenblatt DJ. Clinical importance of the interaction of phenytoin and isoniazid: a report from the Boston Collaborative Drug Surveillance Program. Chest 1979;75:356–358.
95. Block SH. Carbamazepine–isoniazid interaction. Pediatrics 1982;69:494–495.
96. Valsalan VC, Cooper GL. Carbamazepine intoxication caused by interaction with isoniazid. BMJ 1982;285:261–262.
97. Ochs HR, Greenblatt DJ, Knuchel M. Differential effect of isoniazid on triazolam oxidation and oxazepam conjugation. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1983;16:743–746.
98. Murphy R, Swartz R, Watkins PB. Severe acetaminophen toxicity in a patient receiving isoniazid. Ann Intern Med 1990;113:799–800.
99. Jonville AP, Gauchez AS, Autret E, Billard C, Barbier P, Nsabiyumva F, Breteau M. Interaction between isoniazid and valproate: a case of valproate overdosage [letter]. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1991;40:197–198.
100. Judd FK, Mijch AM, Cockram A, Norman TR. Isoniazid and antidepressants: is there cause for concern? Int Clin Psychopharmacol 1994;9:123–125.
101. Whittington HG, Grey L. Possible interaction between disulfiram and isoniazid. Am J Psychiatry 1969;125:1725–1729.
102. Rosenthal AR, Self TH, Baker ED, Linden RA. Interaction of isoniazid and warfarin. JAMA 1977;238:2177.
103. Torrent J, Izquierdo I, Cabezas R, Jane F. Theophylline–isoniazid interaction. DICP 1989;23:143–145.
104. Robson RA, Begg EJ, Atkinson HC, Saunders DA, Frampton CM. Comparative effects of ciprofloxacin and lomefloxacin on the oxidative metabolism of theophylline. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1990;29:491–493.
105. Raoof S, Wollschlager C, Khan FA. Ciprofloxacin increases serum levels of theophylline. Am J Med 1987;82:115–118.
106. Gisclon LG, Curtin CR, Fowler CL, Williams RR, Hafkin B, Natarajan J. Absence of a pharmacokinetic interaction between intravenous theophylline and orally administered levofloxacin. J Clin Pharmacol 1997;37:744–750.
107. Niki Y, Hashiguchi K, Miyashita N, Nakajima M, Matsushima T. Influence of gatifloxacin, a new quinolone antibacterial, on pharmacokinetics of theophylline. J Infect Chemother 1999;5:156–162.
108. Balfour JA, Wiseman LR. Moxifloxacin. Drugs 1999;57:363–373; 374 [discussion].

8. Treatment in Special Situations

8.1. HIV Infection

Treatment of tuberculosis in patients with HIV infection follows the same principles as treatment of HIV-uninfected patients. However, there are several important differences between patients with and without HIV infection. These differences include the potential for drug interactions, especially between the rifamycins and antiretroviral agents, paradoxical reactions that may be interpreted as clinical worsening, and the potential for the development of acquired resistance to rifamycins when treated with highly intermittent therapy.

8.1.1. Clinical trials of treatment for tuberculosis in HIV-infected patients

There have been seven prospective studies of 6-month regimens for the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis in patients with HIV infection for which recurrence data were reported. Four of the studies were randomized, controlled trials (*1–4*),

Tuberculosis and HIV Infection

The treatment of tuberculosis in persons with HIV infection is essentially the same as for patients without HIV infection. There are two important exceptions to this generalization: 1) Once weekly INH–rifapentine in the continuation phase should not be used in any HIV-infected patient; and 2) twice weekly INH–RIF or rifabutin should not be used for patients with $CD4^+$ lymphocyte counts less than 100/µl. Providers must be alert to the potential for interactions among many of the antiretroviral drugs and the rifamycins. Paradoxical reactions that mimic worsening of tuberculosis are more common in patients with HIV infection and may complicate therapy.

and three were observational in nature (*5,6*). These studies differed somewhat in design, patient population, eligibility criteria, frequency of dosing, treatment supervision, and outcome definitions; therefore, it is difficult to provide meaningful cross-study comparisons. All of the studies reported a good early clinical response to therapy and the time required for sputum culture conversion from positive to negative and treatment failure rates were similar to these indices of treatment efficacy in patients without HIV infection.

Recurrence rates have varied among studies, with most reporting rates of 5% or less (*2,3,5,6*). In one study from the Democratic Republic of Congo (formerly Zaire), in which the recurrence rate in the 6-month arm was 9% compared with 3% in the 12-month arm, nonadherence in the continuation phase and/or exogenous reinfection may have contributed to the higher recurrence rate (*1*). In a randomized trial of once weekly INH-rifapentine versus twice weekly INH–RIF in the continuation phase of therapy, 5 of 30 (17%) HIV-infected patients receiving treatment in the once weekly arm relapsed compared with 3 of 31 (10%) patients in the twice weekly INH–RIF arm (*4*). Four of the five relapsed patients in the once weekly group had resistance to rifampin alone compared with none in the standard treatment arm. Because of the small sample size in the standard treatment arm, it is difficult to interpret the relapse rate of 10%.

In an observational study of twice weekly INH–rifabutin among HIV-infected tuberculosis patients also receiving antiretroviral therapy, 7 of 156 patients failed treatment or relapsed (*7*). Although the life table rate of failure/relapse was low (4.6%), *M. tuberculosis* isolated from all five of these patients was resistant to RIF alone. The phenomenon of acquired rifampin monoresistance was also seen in a trial of largely twice weekly INH–RIF therapy, albeit at a lower rate (*3*). In all of these studies, acquired RIF resistance occurred only among patients with $CD4^+$ cell counts <100 cells/µl. Acquired rifampin resistance has not been seen in trials where RIF was given daily.

A consistent finding in the treatment studies has been a high mortality rate among HIV-seropositive patients. In most studies the cause of death is difficult to ascertain. Early mortality may be related to advanced tuberculosis, but deaths during the continuation phase of therapy are usually due to other AIDS-related conditions. Mortality during treatment among HIV-infected patients with tuberculosis has been associated with advanced HIV disease (*1,3,6,8*). However, the use of effective antiretroviral therapy during the treatment of tuberculosis in persons with HIV infection may improve treatment outcomes and, thus, is recommended, as described subsequently (*9*).

A major concern in treating tuberculosis in the setting of HIV infection is the interaction of RIF with antiretroviral agents (see Section 7: Drug Interactions, and Table 12). As described previously, rifabutin is highly active against *M. tuberculosis* but has less of an effect in inducing hepatic microsomal enzymes than RIF. Data from clinical trials suggest that rifabutin and RIF-based regimens are equally efficacious. Gonzalez-Montaner and colleagues (*10*) reported the first randomized clinical trial comparing rifabutin (150 and 300 mg) with RIF in a 6-month regimen in persons without HIV infection. The outcomes were highly favorable in both groups and there were few adverse reactions.

Investigators from South Africa reported a randomized, open-label trial comparing rifabutin with RIF in a standard four-drug regimen administered with DOT (*11*). Although patients did not have HIV testing performed, the HIV seroprevalence was reportedly low at the time of the study. In the continuation phase, the medications were given twice weekly. By 2 months after treatment was begun, 88% of the patients in the RIF arm and 92% of those given rifabutin had negative sputum cultures. The relapse rate was 3.8% in the RIF group versus 5.1% in the rifabutin group (p = NS).

Only one study examining the effectiveness of rifabutin included HIV-infected patients (*12*). A single blind randomized study of 50 HIV-infected patients in Uganda compared a fully supervised regimen of RIF versus rifabutin together with INH, EMB, and PZA. Time to sputum conversion was similar between groups when controlling for baseline characteristics. Relapse data were not available.

Investigators in Uganda have reported a higher mortality rate among HIV-infected patients treated with regimens that did not contain RIF. Wallis and associates (*13*) reported that a

non-RIF-containing regimen was associated with shortened survival compared with an RIF-based regimen. In addition to the higher mortality associated with non-RIF-based regimens, other studies have demonstrated unacceptably high recurrence rates in the setting of HIV infection (*14,15*). Thus, every effort should be made to use a rifamycin-based regimen for the entire course of therapy in persons with HIV infection.

8.1.2. Treatment recommendations

Recommendations for the treatment of tuberculosis in HIV-infected adults are, with two exceptions, identical to those for HIV-uninfected adults: a 6-month regimen consisting of an initial phase of INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB given for 2 months followed by INH and RIF for 4 months when the disease is caused by organisms that are known or presumed to be susceptible to the first-line agents. This regimen may be given by daily or intermittent administration as listed in Table 1 and described in Section 5.2: Recommended Regimens. However, on the basis of data showing an increased frequency of rifamycin resistance among patients having $CD4^+$ cell counts <100/µl, it is recommended that patients with advanced HIV disease be treated with daily or three times weekly therapy in the continuation phase (Rating AIII) (*16*). Twice weekly drug administration in the continuation phase should not be used in patients with $CD4^+$ cell counts <100/µl. Twice weekly therapy may be considered in patients with less advanced immunosuppression ($CD4^+$ cell counts ≥100/µl). Once weekly administration of INH–rifapentine in the continuation phase should not be used in any patient with HIV infection.

Six months should be considered the minimum duration of treatment for adults, even for patients with culture-negative tuberculosis. If there is evidence of a slow or suboptimal response (e.g., cultures are still positive after 2 months of therapy), prolongation of the continuation phase to 7 months (a total of 9 months treatment) should be strongly considered. DOT and other adherence-promoting strategies should be used in all patients with HIV-related tuberculosis. Although there are no data on which to base recommendations, the American Academy of Pediatrics recommends that for HIV-infected children the minimum duration of therapy be 9 months (*17*).

All patients with tuberculosis should be advised to undergo voluntary counseling and HIV testing. Efforts should be made to engage all patients with a new diagnosis of HIV infection in HIV care during their treatment for tuberculosis. Ideally, patients should be managed by physicians who are expert in the treatment of tuberculosis/HIV coinfection. If the HIV care provider and tuberculosis care provider are not the same person, communication between them is essential and should occur frequently throughout the course of treatment.

8.1.3. Safety and tolerability

The frequency of antituberculosis drug-related toxicity in patients with HIV infection has varied from study to study. In a retrospective study from San Francisco, 18% of HIV-seropositive patients with tuberculosis had a change of regimen because of adverse drug reactions (*18*). RIF was the drug implicated most commonly, producing an adverse reaction in 12% of the patients. In the Democratic Republic of Congo, 11% of the seropositive patients developed a rash but in none was the treatment interrupted (*1*). Paresthesia developed in 21% of the cases, suggesting the need for pyridoxine when treating tuberculosis in persons with HIV infection.

Other investigators have reported low rates of significant adverse reactions (*3,5,6,19*). In the three times weekly regimen studied in Haiti, there were no differences in adverse events between HIV-infected and uninfected patients (*6*). In HIV-infected patients it is often difficult to distinguish an adverse reaction to antituberculosis drugs from the effects of associated conditions or reactions to any of the many medications that are often being taken concurrently. Because of the difficulties in diagnosing a drug reaction and in determining the responsible agent, the first-line antituberculosis drugs (especially INH or RIF) should not be stopped permanently without strong evidence that the antituberculosis drug was the cause of the reaction. In such situations consultation with an expert in treating tuberculosis in persons with HIV infection is recommended.

In a study reported by Ungo and associates (*20*), it was demonstrated that the relative risk of developing drug-induced hepatoxicity in tuberculosis patients with hepatitis C virus or HIV infection was 5- and 4-fold, respectively, compared with a 14-fold relative risk in patients with both hepatitis C virus and HIV infections. This finding was not confirmed in a study from Baltimore, in which rates of transaminase elevation were not greater in patients with HIV and hepatitis C virus who were given INH (*21*). Current IDSA and USPHS guidelines recommend screening all HIV-infected patients for hepatitis C virus (*22*). Until more data are available it is probably prudent to provide more frequent clinical and laboratory monitoring, as described for patients with preexisting liver disease, for patients with HIV infection or hepatitis C virus infection who are being treated for tuberculosis.

8.1.4. Concurrent administration of antiretroviral agents and rifamycins

Most patients with tuberculosis have relatively advanced HIV disease and, thus, antiretroviral therapy is indicated (*23*). Antiretroviral therapy should not be withheld simply because the patient is being treated for tuberculosis, if it is otherwise

indicated. Nevertheless, it is not advisable to begin both antiretroviral therapy and combination chemotherapy for tuberculosis at nearly the same time. So doing may involve as many as eight new drugs with interactions and overlapping toxicities that would be difficult to evaluate. Although there are few data on which to base recommendations, expert opinion suggests that treatment for tuberculosis should be initiated first.

Although antiretroviral therapy has a dramatic effect in decreasing progression of HIV disease (decreasing $CD4^+$ cell counts, new opportunistic infections, or death), among patients with HIV-related tuberculosis, the use of antiretroviral therapy in the setting of tuberculosis therapy is complex. In those patients not already receiving antiretroviral therapy, early initiation of antiretroviral therapy may decrease HIV disease progression, but is also associated with a high incidence of side effects and paradoxical reactions, some severe enough to warrant discontinuation of both antiretroviral and antituberculosis drugs (*9*). In addition, starting so many new medications in a short time period may present a tremendous adherence challenge for patients adjusting to the diagnoses of both tuberculosis and AIDS. Delaying the initiation of antiretroviral therapy until 4–8 weeks after starting antituberculosis therapy has the potential advantages of being better able to ascribe a specific cause for a drug side effect, decreasing the severity of paradoxical reactions, and decreasing the adherence difficulties for the patient. Until there have been controlled studies evaluating the optimal time for starting antiretroviral therapy in patients with HIV infection and tuberculosis, this decision should be individualized, based on the patient's initial response to treatment for tuberculosis, occurrence of side effects, and ready availability of multidrug antiretroviral therapy. For patients with $CD4^+$ cell counts >350 cells/µl, the antiretroviral regimen could be initiated at any time after tuberculosis treatment was begun, based on current recommendations (*23*). For patients who are already receiving an antiretroviral regimen, treatment should generally be continued, although the regimen may need to be modified on the basis of the risk of drug–drug interactions, as described in Section 7: Drug Interactions.

Even though drug interactions are common, a rifamycin should not be excluded from the tuberculosis treatment regimen for fear of interactions with some antiretroviral agents. The exclusion of a rifamycin from the treatment regimen is likely to delay sputum conversion, will prolong the duration of therapy, and possibly result in a poorer outcome (*24*). As noted in Section 7, Drug Interactions, rifabutin has fewer interactions than RIF and should be used if these categories of antiretroviral agents are being administered.

The categories of antiretroviral agents available currently are nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NtRTIs), nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs), and protease inhibitors (PIs). The NRTIs and NtRTIs do not have clinically significant drug interactions with the standard antituberculosis medications; thus, drugs in these categories can be used together with rifamycins without any dose adjustment being necessary. However, the PIs and NNRTIs, depending on the specific drug, may either inhibit or induce cytochrome P450 isoenzymes (CYP450). Thus, these drugs may alter the serum concentration of rifabutin, as described in Section 7.1: Interactions Affecting Antituberculosis Drugs.

When rifabutin is combined with antiretroviral agents, its dose and the dose of the antiretroviral agents may require adjustment. A report described the successful use of rifabutin with an antiretroviral regimen containing PIs (*25*). All 25 patients became culture negative by 2 months and no relapses were reported after a median follow-up of 13 months. Moreover, the circulating HIV RNA levels decreased significantly, with 20 of 25 patients achieving viral loads of less than 500 copies/ml. Thus, it appears that both tuberculosis and HIV can be treated successfully with concurrent use of a rifabutin-based regimen and potent combinations of antiretroviral agents.

Previous guidelines from CDC specifically stated that RIF was contraindicated in patients who were taking any PI or NNRTI (*26*). However, new data indicate that RIF can be used for the treatment of tuberculosis with certain combinations of antiretroviral agents (*27,28*). As recommended by CDC (*27*), rifampin can be used with a regimen of efavirenz and two NRTIs, with ritonavir and one or more NRTIs, with ritonavir and saquinavir (either hard-gel or soft-gel capsule), and with a triple nucleoside regimen. As new antiretroviral agents and more pharmacokinetic data become available, these recommendations are likely to be modified. Because these recommendations are frequently revised, obtaining the most up-to-date information from the CDC website, http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/, is advised. Updated information on antiretroviral drugs and drug interactions, compiled by Medscape, can be found at http://www.medscape.com/updates/quickguide.

When starting NNRTIs or PIs for tuberculosis patients receiving RIF, a 2-week "washout" period is generally recommended between the last dose of RIF and the first dose of PIs or NNRTIs to allow for reduction of the enzyme-inducing activity of RIF. During this time, rifabutin may be started to ensure that the tuberculosis treatment regimen is adequate. For patients already receiving antiretroviral agents at the time

treatment for tuberculosis is begun, an assessment of the antiretroviral regimen should be undertaken and, if necessary, changes made to ensure optimum treatment of the HIV infection during tuberculosis therapy. Conversely, the determination of whether to use RIF and the dose of the rifamycin must take into account the antiretroviral regimen.

8.1.5. Paradoxical reaction

On occasion, patients have a temporary exacerbation of symptoms, signs, or radiographic manifestations of tuberculosis (paradoxical reaction) after beginning antituberculosis treatment. Worsening of this sort occurs in patients without HIV infection, especially with lymphadenitis, but it is more common among HIV-infected patients. These reactions presumably develop as a consequence of reconstitution of immune responsiveness brought about by antiretroviral therapy or, perhaps, by treatment of the tuberculosis itself. Narita and colleagues (*29*) reported that among HIV-infected patients who were taking antiretroviral agents, 36% developed paradoxical worsening after beginning treatment for tuberculosis compared with 7% of those who were not taking antiretroviral drugs. In contrast, Wendel and colleagues (*30*) reported that only 7% of HIV-infected patients with tuberculosis developed paradoxical worsening and the reactions were not associated with antiretroviral therapy. Signs of a paradoxical reaction may include high fevers, increase in size and inflammation of involved lymph nodes, new lymphadenopathy, expanding central nervous system lesions, worsening of pulmonary parenchymal infiltrations, and increasing pleural effusions. Such findings should be attributed to a paradoxical reaction only after a thorough evaluation has excluded other possible causes, especially tuberculosis treatment failure.

A paradoxical reaction that is not severe should be treated symptomatically without a change in antituberculosis or antiretroviral therapy. Although approaches to the management of severe reactions, such as high fever, airway compromise from enlarging lymph nodes, enlarging serosal fluid collections, and sepsis syndrome, have not been studied, expert opinion suggests that prednisone or methylprednisolone be started at a dose of about 1 mg/kg and gradually reduced after 1 to 2 weeks.

References

1. Perriens JH, St. Louis ME, Mukadi YB, Brown C, Prignot J, Pouthier F, Portaels F, Willame JC, Mandala JK, Kaboto M, et al. Pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV-infected patients in Zaire: a controlled trial of treatment for either 6 or 12 months. N Engl J Med 1995;332:779–784.
2. Kennedy N, Berger L, Curram J, Fox R, Gutmann J, Kisyombe GM, Ngowi FI, Ramsay ARC, Saruni AOS, Sam N, Tillotson G, Uiso LO, Yates M, Gillespie SH. Randomized controlled trial of a drug regimen that includes ciprofloxacin for the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 1996;22:827–833.
3. El-Sadr WM, Perlman DC, Matts JP, Nelson ET, Cohn DL, Salomon N, Olibrice M, et al. Evaluation of an intensive intermittent-induction regimen and duration of short-course treatment for human immunodeficiency virus-related pulmonary tuberculosis. Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS (CPCRA) and the AIDS Clinical Trials Group (ACTG). Clin Infect Dis 1998;26:1148–1158.
4. Vernon, A, Burman W, Benator D, Khan A, Bozeman L. Acquired rifamycin monoresistance in patients with HIV-related tuberculosis treated with once-weekly rifapentine and isoniazid. Tuberculosis Trials Consortium. Lancet 1999;353:1843–1847.
5. Kassim S, Sassan-Morokro M, Ackah A, Abouya LY, Digbeu H, Yesso G, et al. Two year follow-up of persons with HIV-1 and HIV-2 associated pulmonary tuberculosis treated with short course chemotherapy in West Africa. AIDS 1995;9:1185–1191.
6. Chaisson RE, Clermont HC, Holt EA, Cantave M, et al. JHU-CDS Research Team. Six-months supervised intermittent tuberculosis therapy in Haitian patients with and without HIV infection. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1996;154:1034–1038.
7. CDC. Notice to readers: acquired rifamycin resistance in persons with advanced HIV disease being treated for active tuberculosis with intermittent rifamycin-based regimens. MMWR 2002;51:214–215.
8. Murray J, Sonnenberg P, Shearer SC, Godfrey-Faussett P. Human immunodeficiency virus and the outcome of treatment for new and recurrent pulmonary tuberculosis in African patients. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1999;159:733–740.
9. Dean GL, Edwards SG, Ives NJ, Matthews G, Fox EF, Navaratne L, et al. Treatment of tuberculosis in HIV-infected persons in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. AIDS 2002;16:75–83.
10. Gonzalez-Montaner LJ, Natal S, Yonchaiyud P, Olliaro P. Rifabutin for the treatment of newly-diagnosed pulmonary tuberculosis: a multinational, randomized, comparative study versus rifampicin. Tuber Lung Dis 1994;75:341–347.
11. McGregor MM, Olliaro P, Womarans L, Mabuza B, Bredell M, Felten MK, Fourie PB. Efficacy and safety of rifabutin in the treatment of patients with newly diagnosed pulmonary tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1996;154:1462–1467.
12. Schwander S, Rusch-Gerdes S, Mateega A, Lutalo T, Tugume S, Kityo C, Rubaramira R, Mugyenyi P, Okwera A, Mugerwa R. A pilot study of antituberculosis combinations comparing rifabutin in the treatment of patients with newly diagnosed pulmonary tuberculosis. Tuber Lung Dis 1995;76:210–218.
13. Wallis RS, Helfand MS, Whalen CC, Johnson JL, Mugerwa RD, Vjecha M, Okwera A, Ellner JJ. Immune activation, allergic drug toxicity and mortality in HIV–positive tuberculosis. Tuber Lung Dis 1996;77:516–523.
14. Hawken M, Nunn P, Gathua S, Brindle R, Godfrey-Faussett P, Githui W, et al. Increased recurrence of tuberculosis in HIV-1-infected patients in Kenya. Lancet 1993;342:332–338.
15. Perriens JH, Colebunders RL, Karahunga C, Willame J-C, Jeugmans J, Kaboto M, et al. Increased mortality and tuberculosis treatment failure rate among human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) seropositive compared with HIV seronegative patients with pulmonary tuberculosis in Kinshasa, Zaire. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;144:750–755.
16. CDC. Acquired rifamycin resistance in persons with advanced HIV disease being treated for active tuberculosis with intermittent rifamycin-based regimens. MMWR 2002;51:214–215.
17. American Academy of Pediatrics. Tuberculosis. In: Pickering LJ, editor. Red book report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 25th edition. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2000:593–613.

18. Small PM, Schecter GF, Goodman PC, Sande MA, Chaisson RE, Hopewell PC. Treatment of tuberculosis in patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med 1991;324:289–294.
19. Jones BE, Otaya M, Antoniskis D, Sian S, Wang F, Mercado A, Davidson PT, Barnes PF. A prospective evaluation of antituberculosis therapy in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:1499–1502.
20. Ungo JR, Jones D, Ashkin D, Hollender ES, Bernstein D, Albanese AP, Pitchenik AE. Antituberculosis drug-induced hepatotoxicity. The role of hepatitis C virus and the human immunodeficiency virus. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1998;157:1871–1876.
21. Sadaphal P, Astemborski J Graham NM, Sheely L, BondsM, Madison A, Vlahov D, Thomas DL, Sterling TR. Isoniazid preventive therapy, hepatitis C virus infection, and hepatotoxicity among injection drug users infected with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* Clin Infect Dis 2001;33:1687–1691.
22. United States Public Health Service (USPHS), Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA). USPHS/IDSA guidelines for the prevention of opportunistic infections in persons with human immunodeficiency virus. November 28, 2001. Available at http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/default_db2.asp?id=69
23. Yeni PG, Hammer SM, Carpenter CCJ, Cooper DA, Fischl MA, Gatell JM, Gazzard BG, Hirsch MS, Jacobsen DM, Katzenstein DA, et al. Antiretroviral treatment for adult HIV infection in 2002: updated recommendations of the International AIDS Society—USA panel. JAMA 2002;288:222–235.
24. Okwera A, Whalen C, Byekwaso F, Vjecha J, Johnson J, Huebner R, Mugerwa R, Ellner J. Randomized trial of thiacetazone and rifampicin-containing regimens for pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV infected Ugandans. Makere University–Case Western Reserve University Research Collaboration. Lancet 1994;344:1323–1328.
25. Narita M, Stambaugh JJ, Hollender ES, Jones D, Pitchenik AE, Ashkin D. Use of rifabutin with protease inhibitors for human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients with tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 2000;30:779–783.
26. CDC. Prevention and treatment of tuberculosis among patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus: principles of therapy and revised recommendations. MMWR 1998;47:1–58.
27. CDC. Updated guidelines for the use of rifabutin or rifampin for the treatment and prevention of tuberculosis among HIV-infected patients taking protease inhibitors or nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. MMWR 2000;49:185–200.
28. Burman WJ, Jones BE. Treament of HIV-related tuberculosis in the era of effective antiretroviral therapy. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2001;164:7–12.
29. Narita M, Ashkin D, Hollender ES, Pitchenik AE. Paradoxical worsening of tuberculosis following antiretroviral therapy in patients with AIDS. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1998;158:157–161.
30. Wendel KA, Alwood KS, Gachuhi R, Chaisson RE, Bishai WR, Sterling TR. Paradoxical worsening of tuberculosis in HIV-infected persons. Chest 2001;120:193–197.

8.2. Children and Adolescents

Children most commonly develop tuberculosis as a complication of the initial infection with *M. tuberculosis* (primary tuberculosis). Radiographically, primary tuberculosis is characterized by intrathoracic adenopathy, mid- and lower lung zone infiltrates, and the absence of cavitation. However, children, occasionally, and adolescents, more frequently, develop adult-type tuberculosis (upper lobe infiltration and cavitation associated with sputum production). The lesions of primary tuberculosis have a smaller number of *M. tuberculosis* organisms than those of adult-type pulmonary tuberculosis; thus, treatment failure, relapse, and development of secondary resistance are rare phenomena among children.

Because it is more difficult to isolate *M. tuberculosis* from a child with pulmonary tuberculosis than from an adult, it is frequently necessary to rely on the results of culture and susceptibility tests of specimens from the person presumed to be the source of the infection in the child to guide the choice of drugs for the child. In children in whom drug resistance is suspected or for whom no source case isolate is available, attempts to isolate organisms via three early morning gastric aspirations (optimally during hospitalization), bronchoalveolar lavage, or tissue biopsy must be considered.

Because tuberculosis in infants and children younger than 4 years of age is more likely to disseminate, treatment should be started as soon as the diagnosis is suspected. Asymptomatic children with a positive PPD-tuberculin skin test and an abnormal chest radiograph (atelectasis, parenchymal infiltrate, or hilar adenopathy) should receive combination chemotherapy, usually with INH, RIF, and PZA as initial therapy.

Several controlled and observational trials of 6-month therapy in children with pulmonary tuberculosis caused by organisms known or presumed to be susceptible to the first-line drugs have been published (*1–9*). Six months of therapy with INH and RIF has been shown to be effective for hilar adenopathy and pulmonary disease caused by drug-susceptible organisms (*5,6*). However, most studies used 6 months of daily treatment with INH and RIF, supplemented during the first 2 weeks to 2 months with PZA. This three-drug combination has a success rate of greater than 95% and a rate of adverse effects of less than 2%. Two studies used twice or three times weekly therapy from the beginning with good results (*1,7*).

Many experts prefer to treat children with three (rather than four) drugs in the initial phase because the bacillary population is low, because many infants and children cannot tolerate the pill burden required with four oral drugs, and because of the difficulty in performing visual acuity tests in young children who are being treated with EMB. In children suspected or known to have been infected with an *M. tuberculosis* strain that is fully susceptible, the initial phase should consist of INH, RIF, and PZA. If the susceptibility of the presumed infecting strain is not known and the likelihood of failure is low (primary tuberculosis), some experts prefer to use three drugs.

However, children and adolescents with adult-type pulmonary tuberculosis, as defined above, should be treated with the four-drug initial phase regimen, unless the infecting strain is known to be susceptible (*10*). When epidemiologic circumstances (Table 6) suggest an increased risk of drug-resistant organisms being present, EMB can be used safely in a dose of about 15–20 mg/kg per day, even in children too young for routine eye testing. Older children should have monthly evaluations of visual acuity and color discrimination while taking EMB. SM, kanamycin, or amikacin can be used as the fourth drug, when necessary.

The usual doses for daily and twice weekly treatment in children are listed in Section 3, Drugs in Current Use, and shown in Table 3. Three times weekly therapy is not recommended for children. Pyridoxine is recommended for infants, children, and adolescents who are being treated with INH and who have nutritional deficiencies, symptomatic HIV infection, or who are breastfeeding.

DOT should be used for all children with tuberculosis. The lack of pediatric dosage forms of most antituberculosis medications necessitates using crushed pills and suspensions. Even when drugs are given under DOT, tolerance of the medications must be monitored closely. Parents should not be relied on to supervise DOT.

Because of the difficulties in isolating *M. tuberculosis* from children, bacteriological examinations are less useful in evaluating the response to treatment and clinical and radiographic examinations are of relatively greater importance. However, hilar adenopathy and resultant atelectasis may require 2–3 years to resolve. Thus, a persisting abnormality on chest radiographs is not necessarily a criterion for extending continuing therapy. Recognition of treatment failure or relapse in a child is subject to the same difficulties as making a diagnosis. Thus, clinical and radiographic worsening may not be accompanied by positive AFB smears or mycobacterial cultures. A decision to modify the drug regimen should not be made lightly, but often must be made on clinical grounds only.

In general, extrapulmonary tuberculosis in children can be treated with the same regimens as pulmonary disease. Exceptions may be disseminated disease, and meningitis, for which there are inadequate data to support 6-month therapy. A fourth drug is recommended in the initial phase when there is disseminated tuberculosis. The recommended duration is 9–12 months.

The optimal treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis in children and adolescents with HIV infection is unknown. The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends that initial therapy should always include at least three drugs (INH and RIF, plus PZA for the first 2 months), and the total duration of therapy should be at least 9 months (*11*).

References

1. Te Water Naude JM, Donald PR, Hussey GD, Kibel MA, Louw A, Perkins DR, Schaaf HS. Twice weekly vs. daily chemotherapy for childhood tuberculosis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2000;19:405–410.
2. Tsakalidis D, Pratsidou P, Hitoglou-Makedou A, Tzouvelekis G, Sofroniadis I. Intensive short course chemotherapy for treatment of Greek children with tuberculosis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1992;11:1036–1042.
3. Kumar L, Dhand R, Singhi PO, Rao KL, Katariya S. A randomized trial of fully intermittent vs. daily followed by intermittent short course chemotherapy for childhood tuberculosis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1990;9:802–806.
4. Biddulph J. Short course chemotherapy for childhood tuberculosis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1990;9:794–801.
5. Reis FJC, Bedran MBM, Moura JAR, Assis I, Rodrigues ME. Six-month isoniazid-rifampin treatment for pulmonary tuberculosis in children. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;142:996–999.
6. Jacobs RF, Abernathy RS. The treatment of tuberculosis in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1985;4:513–517.
7. Varudkar B. Short course chemotherapy for tuberculosis in children. Indian J Pediatr 1985;52:593–597.
8. Ibanez Quevedo S, Ross Bravo G. Quimioterapia abreviada de 6 meses en tuberculosis pulmonar infantil. Rev Chil Pediatr 1980;51:249–252.
9. Al-Dossary FS, Ong LT, Correa AG, Starke JR. Treatment of childhood tuberculosis using a 6-month, directly observed regimen with only 2 weeks of daily therapy. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2002;21:91–97.
10. Trebucq A. Should ethambutol be recommended for routine treatment of tuberculosis in children? A review of the literature. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1997;1:12–15.
11. American Academy of Pediatrics. Tuberculosis. In: Pickering LJ, editor. Red book report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 25th edition. Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2000:593–613.

8.3. Extrapulmonary Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis can involve virtually any organ or tissue in the body. Nonpulmonary sites tend to be more common among children and persons with impaired immunity. To establish the diagnosis of extrapulmonary tuberculosis, appropriate specimens including pleural fluid; pericardial or peritoneal fluid; pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal biopsy specimens; lymph node tissue; and bone marrow, bone, blood, urine, brain, or cerebrospinal fluid should be obtained for AFB staining, mycobacterial culture, and drug susceptibility testing (*1*). Tissue specimens should also be examined microscopically, after routine and AFB staining, but the absence of AFB and of granulomas or even failure to culture *M. tuberculosis* does not exclude the diagnosis of tuberculosis. Bacteriological evaluation of the response to treatment in extrapulmonary tuberculosis is often limited by the difficulty in obtaining follow-up specimens. Thus, response often must be judged on the basis of clinical and radiographic findings.

The basic principles that underlie the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis also apply to extrapulmonary forms of the disease. Although many fewer treatment studies have examined treatment of extrapulmonary tuberculosis, compared with pulmonary disease, increasing evidence, including some

randomized controlled trials, suggests that 6- to 9-month regimens that include INH and RIF are effective (*2–16*). Therefore, among patients with extrapulmonary tuberculosis, a 6- to 9-month regimen (2 months of INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB followed by 4–7 months of INH and RIF) is recommended as initial therapy unless the organisms are known or strongly suspected of being resistant to the first-line drugs. If PZA cannot be used in the initial phase, the continuation phase must be increased to 7 months, as described for pulmonary tuberculosis.

The exception to the recommendation for a 6- to 9-month regimen is tuberculous meningitis, for which the optimal length of therapy has not been established, but some experts recommend 9–12 months.

Although in extrapulmonary tuberculosis there have not been controlled trials of the various patterns of intermittent drug administration listed in Table 2, expert opinion suggests that all could be used, with the exception of INH–rifapentine once weekly in the continuation phase. Given the lack of experience with this regimen, it is not recommended currently for treating extrapulmonary tuberculosis.

Corticosteroid treatment is a useful adjunct in treating some forms of extrapulmonary tuberculosis, specifically meningitis and pericarditis caused by drug-susceptible organisms. Evidence-based recommendations on the duration of treatment for extrapulmonary tuberculosis and the use of corticosteriods are shown in Table 13.

8.3.1. Lymph node tuberculosis

A 6-month regimen as described in Section 5, Recommended Treatment Regimens, and Table 2 is recommended for initial treatment of all patients with tuberculous lymphadenitis caused by drug-susceptible organisms (*2–6*). Affected lymph nodes may enlarge while patients are receiving appropriate therapy or after the end of treatment without any evidence of bacteriological relapse (*3,5,17,18*). On occasion, new nodes can appear during or after treatment as well. Therapeutic lymph node excision is not indicated except in unusual circumstances. For large lymph nodes that are fluctuant and appear to be about to drain spontaneously, aspiration or incision and drainage appears to be beneficial, although this approach has not been examined systematically (Rating BIII). It should be noted that the majority of cases of lymphatic mycobacterial disease in children born in the United States are caused by nontuberculous mycobacteria.

8.3.2. Bone and joint tuberculosis

Several studies have examined treatment of bone and joint tuberculosis and have shown that 6- to 9-month regimens containing RIF are at least as effective as 18-month regimens that do not contain RIF (*13–15*) Because of the difficulties in assessing response, however, some experts tend to favor the 9-month duration. A randomized trial performed primarily among ambulatory patients by the Medical Research Council Working Party on Tuberculosis of the Spine (*13*) demonstrated no additional benefit of surgical debridement or radical operation (resection of the spinal focus and bone grafting) in combination with chemotherapy compared with chemotherapy alone. Myelopathy with or without functional impairment most often responds to chemotherapy. In two Medical Research Council studies conducted in Korea, 24 of 30 patients in one study (*14*) and 74 of 85 patients in an earlier study (*19*) had complete resolution of myelopathy or complete functional recovery when treated medically. In some circumstances, however, surgery appears to be beneficial and may be indicated. Such situations include failure to respond to chemotherapy with evidence of ongoing infection, the relief of cord compression in patients with persistence or recurrence of neurologic deficits, or instability of the spine.

8.3.3. Pericardial tuberculosis

For patients with pericardial tuberculosis, a 6-month regimen is recommended. Corticosteroids are recommended as adjunctive therapy for tuberculous pericarditis during the first 11 weeks of antituberculosis therapy. In a randomized, double-blind, controlled trial, patients in the later effusive–constrictive phase who received prednisolone had a

TABLE 13. Evidence-based* guidelines for the treatment of extrapulmonary tuberculosis and adjunctive use of corticosteriods†

Site	Length of therapy (mo)	Rating (duration)	Corticosteroids‡	Rating (corticosteroids)
Lymph node	6	AI	Not recommended	DIII
Bone and joint	6–9	AI	Not recommended	DIII
Pleural disease	6	AII	Not recommended	DI
Pericarditis	6	AII	Strongly recommended	AI
CNS tuberculosis including meningitis	9–12	BII	Strongly recommended	AI
Disseminated disease	6	AII	Not recommended	DIII
Genitourinary	6	AII	Not recommended	DIII
Peritoneal	6	AII	Not recommended	DIII

* For rating system, see Table 1.
† Duration of therapy for extrapulmonary tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms is not known.
‡ Corticosteroid preparations vary among studies. See Section 8.3 for specific recommendations.

significantly more rapid clinical resolution compared with patients given placebo. Prednisolone-treated patients also had a lower mortality (2 of 53 [4%] versus 7 of 61 [11%]) and needed pericardiectomy less frequently (11 of 53 [21%] versus 18 of 61 [30%]), but the differences did not reach statistical significance (*8*). Prednisolone did not reduce the risk of constrictive pericarditis. In a second prospective, double-blind, randomized trial of adjunctive prednisolone therapy involving patients with effusive pericarditis (i.e., more acute disease), prednisolone reduced the need for repeated pericardiocentesis (7 of 76 [9%] versus 17 of 74 [23%]; $p < 0.05$) and was associated with a significantly lower mortality (2 of 76 [3%] died among those who received prednisolone compared with 10 of 74 [14%] among those not given prednisolone; $p < 0.05$) (*9*). As before, there was no statistically significant impact on progression to constriction or in the need for pericardiectomy. An additional small randomized trial by Hakim and associates (*20*) performed in HIV-infected patients with tuberculous pericarditis also demonstrated that prednisolone therapy was associated with a reduced risk of mortality.

On the basis of these studies, it is recommended that daily adjunctive prednisolone or prednisone treatment be given to adults and children with tuberculous pericarditis. For adults the prednisone dose is 60 mg/day (or the equivalent dose of prednisolone) given for 4 weeks, followed by 30 mg/day for 4 weeks, 15 mg/day for 2 weeks, and finally 5 mg/day for week 11 (the final week). Children should be treated with doses proportionate to their weight, beginning with about 1 mg/kg body weight and decreasing the dose as described for adults.

8.3.4. Pleural tuberculosis

A 6-month regimen is also recommended for treating pleural tuberculosis. A number of studies have examined the role of corticosteroid therapy for tuberculous pleural effusions (*21*), but only two have been prospective, double blind, and randomized (*7,22*). In both of these studies, prednisone (or prednisolone) administration did not reduce the development of residual pleural thickening. Lee and associates (*22*) found that patients with pleural tuberculosis who received prednisone had a significantly more rapid resolution of symptoms such as fever, chest pain, and dyspnea than patients given placebo. Patients who received prednisone had a more rapid radiographic resolution of the effusions. In the study by Wyser and colleagues (*7*), all patients had complete drainage of the effusion performed at the time of the diagnostic procedure; patients were then allocated at random to receive adjunctive oral prednisone or placebo for 6 weeks. The complete drainage led to a rapid resolution of symptoms, and the added benefit of corticosteroids on symptoms was minimal.

Tuberculous empyema, a chronic, active infection of the pleural space containing a large number of tubercle bacilli, usually occurs when a cavity ruptures into the pleural space. Treatment consists of drainage (often requiring a surgical procedure) and antituberculous chemotherapy. Surgery, when needed, should be undertaken by experienced thoracic surgeons (*23*). The optimum duration of treatment for this unusual form of tuberculosis has not been established.

8.3.5. Tuberculous meningitis

Before the advent of effective antituberculosis chemotherapy, tuberculous meningitis was uniformly fatal. Tuberculous meningitis remains a potentially devastating disease that is associated with a high morbidity and mortality, despite prompt initiation of adequate chemotherapy (*24–29*). HIV-infected patients appear to be at increased risk for developing tuberculous meningitis but the clinical features and outcomes of the disease are similar to those in patients without HIV infection (*24–26,29*). Patients presenting with more severe neurologic impairment such as drowsiness, obtundation, or coma have a greater risk of neurologic sequelae and a higher mortality. Chemotherapy should be initiated with INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB in an initial 2-month phase. INH and RIF, as well as the aminoglycosides, capreomycin, and the fluoroquinolones are available in parenteral forms for patients with altered mental status who may not be able to take oral medications.

After 2 months of four-drug therapy for meningitis caused by susceptible strains, PZA and EMB may be discontinued, and INH and RIF continued for an additional 7–10 months, although the optimal duration of chemotherapy is not defined, and there are no data from randomized, controlled trials to serve as the basis of recommendations. Repeated lumbar punctures should be considered to monitor changes in CSF cell count, glucose, and protein, especially in the early course of therapy.

Differences in regimens among patient groups and in the use of corticosteroid therapy have made meta-analysis of published treatment trials impossible (*30*). Some authors have advocated longer courses of therapy, up to 2 years (*28,31*), whereas others have suggested that short-course RIF-based regimens for 6 to 9 months may be adequate therapy (*10,32,33*). It has been reported that some patients being treated for tuberculous meningitis develop tuberculomas during therapy, perhaps as a form of paradoxical reaction; however, this does not necessarily indicate treatment failure.

A number of investigators have examined the role of adjunctive corticosteroid therapy in the treatment of tuberculous meningitis (*21,34–41*), but many of these are limited by small sample size or use of a regimen that did not include RIF. There are no large, prospective, randomized, controlled trials

of adjunctive corticosteroid use for tuberculous meningitis in which an RIF-based regimen has been used. Six of eight controlled trials noted a benefit of corticosteroid therapy in terms of survival, frequency of sequelae, or both. In the study conducted by Girgis and coworkers (*34*), the greatest benefit was for patients with Stage II disease (lethargic) on presentation (4 of 27 [15%] of those who received dexamethasone died versus 14 of 35 [40%] in the control group; p <0.02). For patients presenting with coma (Stage III), there was no significant difference in survival between those who received dexamethasone and control patients (28 of 44 [64%] mortality for the dexamethasone group versus 35 of 46 [76%] for control subjects). However, the small sample size may have precluded finding an effect. Likewise, there were too few patients with Stage I disease (alert) on entry to determine the effectiveness of dexamethasone for this less severely ill group.

On the basis of the available data, albeit limited, adjunctive corticosteroid therapy with dexamethasone is recommended for all patients, particularly those with a decreased level of consciousness, with tuberculous meningitis. The recommended regimen is dexamethasone in an initial dose of 8 mg/day for children weighing less than 25 kg and 12 mg/day for children weighing 25 kg or more and for adults. The initial dose is given for 3 weeks and then decreased gradually during the following 3 weeks.

8.3.6. Disseminated tuberculosis

A 6-month regimen is recommended for tuberculosis at multiple sites and for miliary tuberculosis, although there are limited data from controlled clinical trials addressing this issue. (The AAP recommends 9 months of treatment for children with disseminated tuberculosis.) Expert opinion suggests that corticosteroid therapy may be useful for treating respiratory failure caused by disseminated tuberculosis but there are no data to support its use.

8.3.7. Genitourinary tuberculosis

Renal tuberculosis is treated primarily with medical therapy (*12,42–46*), and a 6-month regimen is recommended. If ureteral obstruction occurs, procedures to relieve the obstruction are indicated. In cases of hydronephrosis and progressive renal insufficiency due to obstruction, renal drainage by stenting or nephrostomy is recommended (*42*). The use of corticosteriods in addition to stenting for the treatment of ureteric stenosis is discussed in the urologic literature but the efficacy of steroids in this setting is unclear. Nephrectomy is not usually indicated for the treatment of uncomplicated renal tuberculosis but should be considered when there is a nonfunctioning or poorly functioning kidney, particularly if hypertension or continuous flank pain is present. Tuberculosis of either the female or male genital tract responds well to standard chemotherapy, and surgery is needed only for residual large tubo-ovarian abscesses.

A positive urine culture for *M. tuberculosis* occurs relatively commonly as an incidental finding among patients with pulmonary or disseminated disease, especially those with HIV infection. The positive culture may occur in the absence of any abnormalities on urinalysis and does not necessarily represent genitourinary tract involvement.

8.3.8. Abdominal tuberculosis

A 6-month regimen is recommended for patients with peritoneal or intestinal tuberculosis (*47,48*). There are insufficient data to recommend adjunctive corticosteroid therapy in the treatment of tuberculous peritonitis (*21*). In a small study of peritoneal tuberculosis alternate patients received adjunctive corticosteroid therapy for 4 months (total of 23 steroid recipients) (*49*). Fibrotic complications were noted in 4 of 24 in the control group and in none of those in the steroid group (23 patients), but the difference was not statistically significant.

8.3.9. Other sites of involvement

As noted above, tuberculosis can involve any organ or tissue. In treating tuberculosis in sites other than those mentioned, the basic principles of therapy apply, but experts should be consulted for specific advice concerning individual patients.

References

1. American Thoracic Society, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Diagnostic standards and classificationof tuberculosis in adults and children. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:1376–1395. Available at http://www.thoracic.org/adobe/statements/tbadult1-20.pdf.
2. Yuen APW, Wong SHW, Tam CM, Chan SL, Wei WI, Lau SK. Prospective randomized study of the thrice weekly six-month and nine-month chemotherapy for cervical tuberculous lymphadenopathy. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 1997;116:189–192.
3. British Thoracic Society Research Committee. Six-months versus nine-months chemotherapy for tuberculosis of lymph nodes: preliminary results. Respir Med 1992;86:15–19.
4. Jawahar MS, Sivasubramanian S, Vijayan VK, Ramakrishnan CV, Paramasivan CN, Selvakumar V, Paul S. Short course chemotherapy for tuberculous lymphadenitis in children. BMJ 1990;301:359–362.
5. Campbell IA, Ormerod LP, Friend PA, Jenkins R, Prescott J. Six months versus nine months chemotherapy for tuberculosis of lymph nodes: final results. Respir Med 1993;87:621–623.
6. Cheung WL, Siu KF, Ng A. Six-month combination chemotherapy for cervical tuberculous lymphadenitis. J R Coll Surg Edinb 1992;35:293–295.
7. Wyser C, Walzl G, Smedema JP, Swart F, van Schalkwyk M, van de Wal BW. Corticosteroids in the treatment of tuberculous pleurisy: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized study. Chest 1996;110:333–338.
8. Strang JI, Kakaza HH, Gibson DG, Girling DJ, Nunn AJ, Fox W. Controlled trial of prednisolone as adjuvant in treatment of tuberculous constrictive pericarditis in Transkei. Lancet 1987;ii:1418–1422.

9. Strang JI, Kakaza HH, Gibson DG, Allen BW, Mitchison DA, Evans DJ, Girling DJ, Nunn AJ, Fox W. Controlled clinical trial of complete open surgical drainage and of prednisolone in treatment of tuberculous pericardial effusion in Transkei. Lancet 1988;2:759–764.
10. Donald PR, Schoeman JF, Van Zyl LE, De Villiers JN, Pretorius M, Springer P. Intensive short course chemotherapy in the management of tuberculous meningitis. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1998;ii:704–711.
11. Rajeswari R, Balasubramanian R, Venkatesan P, Sivasubramanian S, Soundarapandian S, Shanmugasundaram TK, Prabhakar R. Short-course chemotherapy in the treatment of Pott's paraplegia: report on five year follow-up. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1997;1:152–158.
12. Dutt KA. Short-course chemotherapy for extrapulmonary tuberculosis: nine years experience. Ann Intern Med 1986;401:7–12.
13. Medical Research Council Working Party on Tuberculosis of the Spine. Five-year assessment of controlled trials of short-course chemotherapy regimens of 6, 9 or 18 months' duration for spinal tuberculosis in patients ambulatory from the start or undergoing radical surgery. Int Orthop 1999;23:73–81.
14. Medical Research Council Working Party on Tuberculosis of the Spine. Controlled trial of short-course regimens of chemotherapy in the ambulatory treatment of spinal tuberculosis: results at three years of a study in Korea. J Bone Joint Surg Br 1993;75:240–248.
15. Medical Research Council Working Party on Tuberculosis of the Spine. A controlled trial of six-month and nine-month regimens of chemotherapy in patients undergoing radical surgery for tuberculosis of the spine in Hong Kong. Tubercle 1986;67:243–259.
16. British Thoracic Society Research Committee. Short course chemotherapy for tuberculosis of lymph nodes: a controlled trial. BMJ 1985;290:1106–1108.
17. Campbell IA, Dyson AJ. Lymph node tuberculosis: a comparison of various methods of treatment. Tubercle 1977;58:171–179.
18. Campbell IA, Dyson AJ. Lymph node tuberculosis: a comparison of treatments 18 months after completion of chemotherapy. Tubercle 1979;60:95–98.
19. Pattison PRM. Pott's paraplegia: an account of the treatment of 89 consecutive patients. Paraplegia 1986;24:77–91.
20. Hakim JG, Ternouth I, Mushangi E, Siziya S, Robertson V, Malin A. Double blind randomised placebo controlled trial of adjunctive prednisolone in the treatment of effusive tuberculous pericarditis in HIV seropositive patients. Heart 2000;84:183–188.
21. Dooley DP, Carpenter JL, Rademacher S. Adjunctive corticosteroid therapy for tuberculosis: a critical reappraisal of the literature. Clin Infect Dis 1997;25:872–877.
22. Lee CH, Wang WJ, Lan RS, Tsai YH, Chiang YC. Corticosteroids in the treatment of tuberculous pleurisy: a double-blind, placebo controlled, randomized study. Chest 1988;94:1256–1259.
23. Sahn SA, Iseman MD. Tuberculous empyema. Semin Respir Infect 1999;14:82–87.
24. Dube MP, Holtom PD, Larsen RA. Tuberculous meningitis in patients with and without human immunodeficiency virus infection. Am J Med 1992;93:520–524.
25. Berenguer J, Moreno S, Laguna F, Vicente T, Adrados M, Ortega A, Gonzalez-LaHoz J, Bouza E. Tuberculous meningitis in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. N Engl J Med 1992;326:668–672.
26. Porkert MT, Sotir M, Moore PP, Blumberg HM. Tuberculous meningitis at a large inner-city medical center. Am J Med Sci 1997;313:325–331.
27. Yechoor VK, Shandera WX, Rodriguez P, Cate TR. Tuberculous meningitis among adults with and without HIV infection: experience in an urban public hospital. Arch Intern Med 1996;156:1710–1716.
28. Girgis NI, Sultan Y, Farid Z, Mansour MM, Erian MW, Hanna LS, Mateczun AJ. Tuberculosis meningitis, Abbassia Fever Hospital-Naval Medical Research Unit No. 3: Cairo, Egypt, from 1976 to 1996. J Trop Med Hyg 1998;58:28–34.
29. Karstaedt AS, Valtchanova S, Barriere R, Crewe-Brown HH. Tuberculous meningitis in South African urban adults. Q J Med 1988;91:743–747.
30. Thwaites G, Chau TTH, Mai NTH, Brobniewski F, McAdam K, Farrar J. Tuberculous meningitis. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2000;68:289–299.
31. Goel A, Pandya S, Satoskar A. Whither short-course chemotherapy for tuberculous meningitis? Neurosurgery 1990;27:418–421.
32. Jacobs RF, Sunakorn P, Chotpitayasunonah T, Pope S, Kelleher K. Intensive short course chemotherapy for tuberculous meningitis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1992;11:194–198.
33. Phuapradit P, Vejjajiva A. Treatment tuberculous meningitis: role of short-course chemotherapy. Q J Med 1987;62:249–258.
34. Girgis NI, Farid Z, Kilpatrick ME, Sultan Y, Mikhail IA. Dexamethasone adjunctive treatment for tuberculous meningitis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1991;10:179–183.
35. Girgis NI, Farid Z, Hanna LS, Yassin MW, Wallace CK. The use of dexamethasone in preventing ocular complications in tuberculous meningitis. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 1983;77:658–659.
36. Kumarvelu S, Prasad K, Khosla A, Behari M, Ahuja GK. Randomized controlled trial of dexamethasone in tuberculous meningitis. Tuber Lung Dis 1994;75:203–207.
37. Lepper MH, Spies HW. The present status of the treatment of tuberculosis of the central nervous system. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1963;106:106–123.
38. Escobar JA, Belsey MA, Duenas A, Medinea P. Mortality from tuberculous meningitis reduced by steroid therapy. Pediatrics 1975;56:1050–1055.
39. O'Toole RD, Thornton GF, Mukherjee MK, Nath RL. Dexamethasone in tuberculous meningitis: relationship of cerebrospinal fluid effects to therapeutic efficacy. Ann Intern Med 1969;70:39–48.
40. Ashby M, Grant H. Tuberculous meningitis treatment with cortisone. Lancet 1955;i:65–66.
41. Voljavec BF, Corpe RF. The influence of corticosteriod hormones in the treatment of tuberculous meningitis in Negroes. Am Rev Respir Dis 1960;81:539–545.
42. Carl P, Stark L. Indications for surgical management of genitourinary tuberculosis. World J Surg 1997;21:505–510.
43. Skutil V, Varsa J, Obsitnik M. Six-month chemotherapy for urogenital tuberculosis. Eur Urol 1985;11:170–176.
44. Gow JG. Genitourinary tuberculosis: a study of the disease in one unit over a period of 24 years. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 1971;49:50–70.
45. Christensen WI. Genitourinary tuberculosis: review of 102 cases. Medicine (Baltimore) 1974;53:377–390.
46. Simon HB, Weinstein AJ, Pasternak MS, Swartz MN, Kunz LJ. Genitourinary tuberculosis: clinical features in a general hospital population. Am J Med 1977;63:410–420.
47. Bastani B, Shariatzadeh MR, Dehdashti F. Tuberculous peritonitis: report of 30 cases and review of the literature. Q J Med 1985;56:549–557.
48. Demir K, Okten A, Kaymakoglu S, Dincer D, Besisik F, Cevikbas U, Ozdil S, Bostas G, Mungan Z, Cakaloglu Y. Tuberculous peritonitis: reports of 26 cases, detailing diagnostic and therapeutic problems. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2001;13:581–585.

49. Singh MM, Bhargava AN, Jain KP. Tuberculous peritonitis: an evaluation of pathogenetic mechanisms, diagnostic procedures and therapeutic measures. N Engl J Med 1969;281:1091–1094.

8.4. Culture-Negative Pulmonary Tuberculosis in Adults

Failure to isolate *M. tuberculosis* from appropriately collected specimens in persons who, because of clinical or radiographic findings, are suspected of having pulmonary tuberculosis does not exclude a diagnosis of active tuberculosis. For the United States as a whole, about 17% of the reported new cases of pulmonary tuberculosis have negative cultures (*1*). Low bacillary populations, temporal variations in the number of bacilli being expelled, and errors in specimen processing all may result in failure to isolate organisms from patients who have active tuberculosis. It should be emphasized that alternative diagnoses must be considered carefully and appropriate diagnostic studies undertaken in patients who have what appears to be culture-negative tuberculosis. At a minimum, patients suspected of having pulmonary tuberculosis should have three sputum specimens (using sputum induction with hypertonic saline if necessary) for AFB smears and cultures for mycobacteria as part of the diagnostic evaluation. Depending on the clinical features and differential diagnosis, other diagnostic testing, such as bronchoscopy with bronchoalveolar lavage and biopsy, should be considered before making a presumptive diagnosis of culture-negative tuberculosis.

Patients who, on the basis of careful clinical and radiographic evaluation, are thought to have pulmonary tuberculosis should have treatment initiated with INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB even when the initial sputum smears are negative. If *M. tuberculosis* is isolated in culture, treatment for active disease should be continued. Patients who have negative cultures but who still are presumed to have pulmonary tuberculosis should have a thorough follow-up clinical and radiographic evaluation at the time 2 months of therapy has been completed to determine whether there has been a response that can be attributed to antituberculosis treatment. If there is either clinical or radiographic improvement and no other etiology is identified, treatment should be continued for active tuberculosis. A 4-month, INH and RIF regimen for culture-negative tuberculosis has been demonstrated to be successful with only 1.2% relapses during an average follow-up of 44 months (*2*). However, because the results of cultures may not be known for 3–8 weeks and because of the possibility of drug resistance, initiation of two-drug therapy with INH and RIF alone is not recommended, but the continuation phase can be shortened to 2 months using INH and RIF (Figure 2).

On occasion, patients who are being evaluated for pulmonary tuberculosis will be found to have positive AFB smears but negative cultures. There are several potential explanations for this occurrence, including the possibilities that the acid-fast organisms are nontuberculous and difficult to culture, that they are nonviable tubercle bacilli, and that they are the result of laboratory error. The approach taken in such cases should be individualized on the basis of clinical and radiographic findings. If suspicion of tuberculosis is high and the patient has positive AFB smears, even with negative cultures, he/she should be treated as if the culture is positive, using one of the recommended regimens.

References

1. CDC. Reported tuberculosis in the United States, 2000. Atlanta, GA: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC, August 2001. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/
2. Dutt AK, Moers D, Stead WW. Smear- and culture-negative pulmonary tuberculosis: four-month short-course chemotherapy. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;139:867–870.

8.5. Radiographic Evidence of Prior Tuberculosis: Inactive Tuberculosis

Persons with a positive tuberculin PPD skin test who have radiographic findings consistent with prior pulmonary tuberculosis (ATS/CDC Class 4) (*1*) and who have not been treated are at increased risk for the subsequent development of active tuberculosis (*2–4*). The radiographic findings that constitute evidence of prior tuberculosis are apical fibronodular infiltrations, often with volume loss. Case rates among such persons in one study were about 2.5 times those of persons infected with *M. tuberculosis* who did not have chest radiographic abnormalities (*3*). Persons with radiographic findings of healed primary tuberculosis (e.g., calcified solitary pulmonary nodules, calcified hilar lymph nodes, and pleural thickening) are not at increased risk for tuberculosis compared with other persons with latent tuberculosis infection.

Patients should not be classified as having radiographic evidence of prior tuberculosis if another disease is found to account for the radiographic findings. The activity of tuberculosis cannot be determined from a single chest radiograph, and unless there are previous radiographs showing that the abnormality has not changed, it is recommended that sputum examination, using sputum induction if necessary, be performed to assess the possibility of active tuberculosis. Once active tuberculosis has been excluded by sputum culture, these persons are high-priority candidates for treatment of latent tuberculosis infection (*5*).

The optimum treatment for patients with latent tuberculosis infection and abnormal chest radiographs consistent with prior tuberculosis has been examined in several studies. A placebo-controlled trial conducted by the IUATLD (*2*) compared the efficacy of 3, 6, and 12 months of INH in preventing

active tuberculosis for persons with latent tuberculosis infection who had chest radiographs showing fibrotic lesions consistent with inactive tuberculosis. Among those receiving INH for at least 6 months, the incidence of tuberculosis was significantly reduced compared with those given placebo. In patients with fibrotic lesions greater than 2 cm in diameter INH given for 12 months was significantly better than 6 months (89 versus 67% reduction). A reanalysis of data from a community-based study of persons with abnormal radiographs felt to represent inactive tuberculosis showed that the efficacy of INH decreased significantly if less than 9 months of the drug was taken, but that further protection was not conferred if the duration was extended from 9 to 12 months (*6*). On the basis of these data, guidelines for treatment of latent tuberculosis infection recommend 9 months of INH for persons with abnormal chest radiographs consistent with prior tuberculosis (*5*). Additional treatment regimens are RIF (with or without INH) for 4 months, and RIF and PZA for 2 months (for persons who are unlikely to complete a longer course and who can be monitored carefully) (*5*) (Table 14). A study comparing the cost-effectiveness of INH and RIF with INH alone in treating this category of patient showed that 4 months of INH and RIF was cost saving compared with INH alone, and the cost savings increased as the prevalence of infection with strains resistant to INH increased (*7*).

Instances of severe and fatal liver disease have been reported in patients taking RIF and PZA for treatment of latent tuberculosis infection (*8*). In addition, the frequency of hepatotoxicity has been shown to be greater with RIF–PZA than with INH alone (7.7% Grade 3 or 4 hepatotoxicity with RIF–PZA compared with 1% for INH; p = 0.001) (*9*). In view of these data, the regimen should be used with caution and with careful monitoring, measuring serum AST and bilirubin at baseline and after 2, 4, and 6 weeks of treatment. RIF–PZA is not recommended for patients with underlying liver disease or a history of alcoholism, or for those who have had hepatotoxicity from INH. The regimen should be reserved for patients who are not likely to complete a longer course of treatment and who can be monitored carefully.

TABLE 14. Summary of evidence* for treatment of persons with radiographic evidence of prior tuberculosis and negative sputum cultures not treated previously

Treatment regimen	Rating/evidence	
	HIV negative	HIV positive
INH for 9 mo	AII	AII
RIF with or without INH for 4 mo	BII	BIII
RIF and PZA for 2 mo	CIII	BI

Definition of abbreviations: INH = isoniazid; PZA = pyrazinamide; RIF = rifampin.
* For rating system, see Table 1.

References

1. American Thoracic Society, CDC. Diagnostic standards and classification of tuberculosis in adults and children. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:1376–1395. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/
2. International Union Against Tuberculosis Committee on Prophylaxis. The efficacy of varying durations of isoniazid preventive therapy for tuberculosis: five years of follow-up in the IUAT Trial. Bull World Health Organ 1982;60:555–564.
3. Grzybowski S, Fishaut H, Rowe J, Brown A. Tuberculosis among patients with various radiologic abnormalities, followed by chest clinic service. Am Rev Respir Dis 1971;104:605–608.
4. Comstock GW, Woolpert SF. Preventive treatment of untreated, nonactive tuberculosis in an Eskimo population. Arch Environ Health 1972;25:333–337.
5. American Thoracic Society, CDC. Targeted tuberculin testing and treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:S221–S247. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/
6. Comstock GW. How much isoniazid is needed for prevention of tuberculosis among immunocompetent adults? Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1999;3:847–850.
7. Jasmer RM, Snyder DC, Chin DP, Hopewell PC, Cuthbert SC, Paz EA, Daley CL. Twelve months of isoniazid compared with four months of isoniazid and rifampin for persons with radiographic evidence of previous tuberculosis: an outcome and cost-effectiveness analysis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;162:1648–1652.
8. CDC. Update: fatal and severe liver injuries associated with rifampin and pyrazinamide for latent tuberculosis infection, and revisions in American Thoracic Society/CDC recommendations. MMWR 2001;50:733–735.
9. Jasmer RM, Saukkonen JJ, Blumberg HM, Daley CL, Bernardo J, Vittinghoff E, King MD, Kawamura LM, Hopewell PC. Short course rifampin and pyrazinamide compared with isoniazid for latent tuberculosis infection: a multicenter clinical trial. Ann Intern Med 2002;137:640–647.

8.6. Pregnancy and Breastfeeding

Untreated tuberculosis represents a far greater hazard to a pregnant woman and her fetus than does treatment of the disease. Infants born to women with untreated tuberculosis may be of lower birth weight than those born to women without tuberculosis and, rarely, the infant may acquire congenital tuberculosis (*1–3*). Thus, treatment of a pregnant woman with suspected tuberculosis should be started if the probability of tuberculosis is moderate to high. The initial treatment regimen should consist of INH, RIF, and EMB. SM should *not* be substituted for EMB. Although PZA is recommended for routine use in pregnant women by the WHO (*4*) and the IUATLD (*5*), the drug has not been recommended for general use in pregnant women in the United States because of insufficient data to determine safety. However, some public health jurisdictions in the United States have used PZA in pregnant women without reported adverse events (*1*). If PZA is not included in the initial treatment regimen, the minimum duration of therapy is 9 months. Pyridoxine, 25 mg/day, should be given to pregnant women who are receiving INH.

INH, RIF, and EMB cross the placenta, but none has been shown to have teratogenic effects (*6*). SM, the only antituberculosis drug documented to have harmful effects on the human fetus, interferes with development of the ear and may cause congenital deafness. In 40 pregnancies among women being treated with SM, 17% of the babies had eighth nerve damage with deficits ranging from mild hearing loss to bilateral deafness (*6,7*). Kanamycin, amikacin, and capreomycin presumably share this toxic potential; however, there is little specific information on the fetal effects of these three drugs. PAS was used commonly with INH in the past and there was no indication of teratogenicity among babies whose mothers had received these two drugs (*2*). There are not enough data to determine the risk of cycloserine or ethionamide, although one report described nonspecific teratogenic effects attributed to ethionamide (*8*). The fluoroquinolones have been associated with arthropathies in young animals; therefore, they should be avoided if possible in pregnant women (*6*).

In general, administration of antituberculosis drugs is not an indication for termination of pregnancy (*2*). However, in women who are being treated for drug-resistant tuberculosis, counseling concerning the risk to the fetus should be provided because of the known and unknown risks of the second-line agents.

Breastfeeding should not be discouraged for women being treated with first-line agents, because the small concentrations of these drugs in breast milk do not produce toxic effects in the nursing infant (*9*). Conversely, drugs in breast milk should not be considered to serve as effective treatment for active tuberculosis or latent tuberculosis infection in a nursing infant. Supplementary pyridoxine is recommended for the nursing mother receiving INH. The administration of the fluoroquinolones during breastfeeding is not recommended, although, as of 1998, there have been no reported cases of adverse reactions in infants breast fed by women taking these drugs (*6*).

References

1. Davidson PT. Managing tuberculosis during pregnancy. Lancet 1995;346:199–200.
2. Snider DE, Layde PM, Johnson MW, Lyle MA. Treatment of tuberculosis during pregnancy. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;122:65–79.
3. Jana N, Vasishta K, Jindal SK, Khunnu B, Ghosh K. Perinatal outcome in pregnancies complicated by pulmonary tuberculosis. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 1994;44:119–124.
4. World Health Organization. Treatment of tuberculosis: guidelines for national programmes, 2nd edition. WHO/TB/97.220. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 1997. Available at http://www.who.int/gtb/publications/ttgnp/PDF/tb97_220.pdf
5. Enarson DA, Rieder HL, Arnodottir T, Trebucq A. Tuberculosis guide for low income countries, 4th edition. Paris: International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Diseases; 1996.
6. Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Yaffe SJ, editors. Drugs in pregnancy and lactation, 5th edition. Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins; 1998.
7. Varpela E, Hietalalahti J, Aro M. Streptomycin and dihidrostreptomycin during pregnancy and their effect on the child's inner ear. Scand J Respir Dis 1969;50:101–109.
8. Potworowska M, Sianozecko E, Szuflodowica R. Ethionamide treatment and pregnancy. Pol Med J 1966;5:1153–1158.
9. Snider DE, Powell KE. Should women taking antituberculosis drugs breast-feed? Arch Intern Med 1984;144:589–590.

8.7. Renal Insufficiency and End-stage Renal Disease

Renal insufficiency complicates the management of tuberculosis because some antituberculosis medications are cleared by the kidneys. Management may be further complicated by the removal of some antituberculosis agents via hemodialysis. Thus, some alteration in dosing antituberculosis medications is commonly necessary in patients with renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease (ESRD) receiving hemodialysis (Table 15). Decreasing the dose of selected antituberculosis drugs may not be the best method of treating tuberculosis because, although toxicity may be avoided, the peak serum concentrations may be too low. Therefore, instead of decreasing the dose of the antituberculosis agent, increasing the dosing interval is recommended (*1*). The general approach described in Table 15 involves either estimating or measuring creatinine clearance. Administration of drugs that are cleared by the kidneys to patients having a creatinine clearance of less than 30 ml/minute and those receiving hemodialysis are managed in the same manner, with an increase in dosing interval (C. Peloquin, personal communication). There are insufficient data to guide dosing recommendations for patients having a reduced creatinine clearance but not less than 30 ml/minute. In such patients standard doses should be used, but measurement of serum concentrations should be considered to avoid toxicity.

RIF and INH are metabolized by the liver, so conventional dosing may be used in the setting of renal insufficiency (*1–5*). PZA is also metabolized by the liver but its metabolites (pyrazinoic acid and 5-hydroxy-pyrazinoic acid) may accumulate in patients with renal insufficiency (*3,6*). EMB is about 80% cleared by the kidneys and may accumulate in patients with renal insufficiency (*7*). A longer interval between doses with three times a week administration is recommended for PZA and EMB (*3,7*). INH, EMB, and PZA (as well as its metabolites) are cleared by hemodialysis to some degree, but only PZA and presumably its metabolites are dialyzed to a significant degree (*3*). RIF is not cleared by hemodialysis because of its high molecular weight, wide distribution into tissues, high degree of protein binding, and rapid hepatic metabolism (*3*). Therefore, supplemental dosing is not necessary for INH, RIF, or EMB. If PZA is given after

TABLE 15. Dosing recommendations for adult patients with reduced renal function and for adult patients receiving hemodialysis

Drug	Change in frequency?	Recommended dose and frequency for patients with creatinine clearance <30 ml/min or for patients receiving hemodialysis
Isoniazid	No change	300 mg once daily, or 900 mg three times per week
Rifampin	No change	600 mg once daily, or 600 mg three times per week
Pyrazinamide	Yes	25–35 mg/kg per dose three times per week (not daily)
Ethambutol	Yes	15–25 mg/kg per dose three times per week (not daily)
Levofloxacin	Yes	750–1,000 mg per dose three times per week (not daily)
Cycloserine	Yes	250 mg once daily, or 500 mg/dose three times per week*
Ethionamide	No change	250-500 mg/dose daily
p-Aminosalicylic acid	No change	4 g/dose, twice daily
Streptomycin	Yes	12–15 mg/kg per dose two or three times per week (not daily)
Capreomycin	Yes	12–15 mg/kg per dose two or three times per week (not daily)
Kanamycin	Yes	12–15 mg/kg per dose two or three times per week (not daily)
Amikacin	Yes	12–15 mg/kg per dose two or three times per week (not daily)

Standard doses are given unless there is intolerance.
The medications should be given after hemodialysis on the day of hemodialysis.
Monitoring of serum drug concentrations should be considered to ensure adequate drug absorption, without excessive accumulation, and to assist in avoiding toxicity.
Data currently are not available for patients receiving peritoneal dialysis. Until data become available, begin with doses recommended for patients receiving hemodialysis and verify adequacy of dosing, using serum concentration monitoring.
* The appropriateness of 250-mg daily doses has not been established. There should be careful monitoring for evidence of neurotoxicity (see Section 3).

hemodialysis, supplemental dosing is not required. In general, antituberculosis drugs should be given after hemodialysis to avoid any loss of the drugs during hemodialysis, and to facilitate DOT.

Doses of streptomycin, kanamycin, amikacin, and capreomycin must be adjusted in patients with renal failure because the kidneys excrete essentially all of these drugs. Approximately 40% of the dose is removed with hemodialysis when these drugs are given just before hemodialysis (*8*). Far less drug is likely to be removed once the drugs have had time to distribute throughout the body, and some accumulation of the drugs should be anticipated. As with EMB and PZA, the dosing interval should be increased. In general, the dose should not be reduced because the drugs exhibit concentration-dependent bactericidal action (*9*), and smaller doses may reduce drug efficacy. Ethionamide is not cleared by the kidneys, nor is the drug removed with hemodialysis, so no dose adjustment is necessary (*10*). PAS is modestly cleared by hemodialysis (6.3%) but its metabolite, acetyl-PAS, is substantially removed by hemodialysis; twice daily dosing (4 g) should be adequate if the granule formulation is used (Jacobus Pharmaceuticals) (*10*). Cycloserine is excreted primarily by the kidney, and is cleared by hemodialysis (56%). Thus, an increase in the dosing interval is necessary to avoid accumulation between hemodialysis sessions, and the drug should be given after hemodialysis to avoid underdosing (*10*). The fluoroquinolones undergo some degree of renal clearance that varies from drug to drug. For example, levofloxacin undergoes greater renal clearance than moxifloxacin (*11*). It should be noted that the fluoroquinolone dosing recommendations for end-stage renal disease provided by the manufacturers were developed for treating pyogenic bacterial infections. These recommendations may not be applicable to the treatment of tuberculosis in patients with end-stage renal disease.

As noted above, administration of all antituberculosis drugs immediately after hemodialysis will facilitate DOT (three times per week) and avoid premature removal of the drugs (*2*). It is important to monitor serum drug concentrations in persons with renal insufficiency who are taking cycloserine, EMB, or any of the injectable agents to minimize dose-related toxicity, while providing effective doses. Clinicians also should be aware that patients with end-stage renal disease may have additional clinical conditions, such as diabetes mellitus with gastroparesis, that may affect the absorption of the antituberculosis drugs, or they may be taking concurrent medications that interact with these drugs. Under these circumstances a careful clinical and pharmacologic assessment is necessary, and, in selected cases, serum drug concentration measurements may be used to assist in determining the optimum dose of the antituberculosis drugs (*9*). Finally, data currently do not exist for patients receiving peritoneal dialysis. Because the drug removal mechanisms differ between hemodialysis and peritoneal dialysis, it cannot be assumed that all of the recommendations in Table 15 will apply to peritoneal dialysis. Such patients may require close monitoring, including measurements of the serum concentrations of the antituberculosis drugs.

References

1. Peloquin CA. Antituberculosis drugs: pharmacokinetics. In: Heifets L, editor. Drug susceptibility in the chemotherapy of mycobacterial infections. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1991:59–88.

2. Ellard GA. Chemotherapy of tuberculosis for patients with renal impairment. Nephron 1993;64:169–181.
3. Malone RS, Fish DN, Spiegel DM, Childs JM, Peloquin CA. The effect of hemodialysis on isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1999;159:1580–1584.
4. Bowersox DW, Winterbauer RH, Stewart GL, Orme B, Barron E. Isoniazid dosage in patients with renal failure. N Engl J Med 1973;289:84–87.
5. Acocella G. Clinical pharmacokinetics of rifampicin. Clin Pharmacol 1978;13:108–127.
6. Ellard GA. Absorption, metabolism, and excretion of pyrazinamide in man. Tubercle 1969;50:144–158.
7. Strauss I, Erhardt F. Ethambutol absorption, excretion and dosage in patients with renal tuberculosis. Chemotherapy 1970;15:148–157.
8. Matzke GR, Halstenson CE, Keane WF. Hemodialysis elimination rates and clearance of gentamicin and tobramycin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1984;25:128–130.
9. Peloquin CA. Using therapeutic drug monitoring to dose the antimycobacterial drugs. Clin Chest Med 1997;18:79–87.
10. Malone RS, Fish DN, Spiegel DM, Childs JM, Peloquin CA. The effect of hemodialysis on cycloserine, ethionamide, para-aminosalicylate, and clofazimine. Chest 1999;116:984–990.
11. Fish DN, Chow AT. The clinical pharmacokinetics of levofloxacin. Clin Pharmacokinet 1997;32:101–119.

8.8. Hepatic Disease

The treatment of tuberculosis in patients with unstable or advanced liver disease is problematic for several reasons. First, the likelihood of drug-induced hepatitis may be greater. Second, the implications of drug-induced hepatitis for patients with marginal hepatic reserve are potentially serious, even life-threatening. Finally, fluctuations in the biochemical indicators of liver function (with/without symptoms) related to the preexisting liver disease confound monitoring for drug-induced hepatitis. Thus, clinicians may consider regimens with fewer potentially hepatotoxic agents in patients with advanced or unstable liver disease, and expert consultation is advisable in treating such patients. It should be noted that tuberculosis itself may involve the liver, causing abnormal liver function; thus, not all abnormalities in liver function tests noted at baseline should be attributed to causes other than tuberculosis. The hepatic abnormalities caused by tuberculosis will improve with effective treatment.

Possible treatment regimens in the setting of liver disease include the following.

8.8.1. Treatment without INH

As described in Section 5.2, Alternative Regimens, analysis of data from several studies conducted by the BMRC in patients with smear-positive pulmonary tuberculosis demonstrated high levels of efficacy with 6-month regimens despite in vitro resistance to INH so long as the initial phase contained four drugs and RIF was used throughout the 6 months (*1*). Subsequent studies by the Hong Kong Chest Service and the BMRC suggested that results were improved when PZA was used throughout the 6 months (*2*). Thus, it is reasonable to employ an initial phase regimen of RIF, PZA, and EMB followed by a continuation phase of RIF, EMB, and PZA (Rating BII). Although this regimen has two potentially hepatotoxic medications, it has the advantage of retaining the 6-month duration.

8.8.2. Treatment without PZA

Although the frequency of PZA-induced hepatitis is slightly less than occurs with INH or RIF, the liver injury induced by this drug may be severe and prolonged (*3*). Therefore, one might elect to employ a regimen with an initial phase of INH, RIF, and EMB for 2 months followed by a continuation phase of INH and RIF for 7 months, for a total of 9 months (Table 2, Regimen 4).

8.8.3. Regimens with only one potentially hepatotoxic drug

For patients with advanced liver disease, a regimen with only one potential hepatotoxic drug might be selected. Generally, RIF should be retained. Additional agents in such regimens could include EMB, a fluoroquinolone, cycloserine, and injectable agents. The duration of treatment with such regimens should be 12–18 months, depending on the extent of the disease and the response (Rating CIII). Consultation is advised in such situations.

8.8.4. Regimens with no potentially hepatotoxic drugs

In the setting of severe unstable liver disease, a regimen with no hepatotoxic agents might be necessary. Such a regimen might include SM, EMB, a fluoroquinolone, and another second-line oral drug. There are no data that provide guidance as to the choice of agents or the duration of treatment or that indicate the effectiveness of such a regimen. Expert opinion suggests that a regimen of this sort should be given for 18–24 months (Rating CIII). Consultation should always be obtained before embarking on such a treatment plan.

References

1. Mitchison DA, Nunn AJ. Influence of initial drug resistance on the response to short-course chemotherapy of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:423–430.
2. Hong Kong Chest Service, British Medical Research Council. Five-year follow-up of a controlled trial of five 6-month regimens of chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1339–1342.
3. United States Public Health Service. Hepatic toxicity of pyrazinamide used with isoniazid in tuberculous patients. United States Public Health Service Tuberculosis Therapy Trial. Am Rev Respir Dis 1959;80:371–387.

8.9. Other Associated Disorders

Tuberculosis commonly occurs in association with other diseases or conditions. An associated disorder may alter immune responsiveness, thereby causing a predisposition to tuberculosis, or simply may be a disorder that occurs frequently in the same social and cultural milieu as tuberculosis. Examples of the former class of disorders include HIV infection, hematologic or reticuloendothelial malignancies, immunosuppressive therapy, chronic renal failure, poorly controlled, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, and malnutrition. Silicosis, by impairing pulmonary macrophage function, is a unique example of local immune dysfunction.

The latter group of disorders includes chronic alcoholism and its secondary effects, other substance abuse, and psychiatric illnesses, among others. All of these conditions may influence the organization, supervision, and outcome of therapy (discussed in Section 2: Organization and Supervision of Treatment). The response of immunocompromised patients to treatment may not be as good as would be expected in a person with normal immunity, although in patients with HIV infection the response to treatment is not impaired Nevertheless, therapeutic decisions for the immunocompromised host should be more individualized, taking into account the severity of tuberculosis and the response to treatment. When possible, steps should be taken to correct the immune deficiency. In patients with silicotuberculosis there are data demonstrating that the rate of cure is improved if the continuation phase is extended for at least 2 months (*1,2*).

References

1. Hong Kong Chest Service, Tuberculosis Research Centre, Madras/British Medical Research Council. A control trial of 6 and 8 months of antituberculosis chemotherapy in the treatment of patients with silicotuberculosis in Hong Kong. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:262–267.
2. Lin T-P, Suo J, Lee C-N, Lee J-J, Yang S-P. Short course chemotherapy of pulmonary tuberculosis in pneumoconiotic patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:808–810.

9. Management of Relapse, Treatment Failure, and Drug Resistance

9.1. Relapse

Relapse refers to the circumstance in which a patient becomes and remains culture-negative while receiving antituberculosis drugs but, at some point after completion of therapy, either becomes culture-positive again or experiences clinical or radiographic deterioration consistent with active tuberculosis. In such patients vigorous efforts should be made to establish a diagnosis and to obtain microbiological confirmation of the relapse to enable testing for drug resistance. True relapses are due to failure of chemotherapy to sterilize the host tissues, thereby enabling endogenous recrudescence of the original infection. In some hyperendemic settings, however, exogenous reinfection with a new strain of *M. tuberculosis* may be responsible for the apparent relapse (*1*).

Microbiological Confirmation of Relapse Should be Pursued Vigorously.

Relapses may occur with either drug-resistant or drug-susceptible strains of *M. tuberculosis*. To confirm that a true relapse has occurred and to obtain drug susceptibility tests, microbiological confirmation of relapse should be pursued vigorously.

Patients who are most likely to have true relapses are those with extensive tuberculosis whose sputum cultures remain positive after 2 months of chemotherapy (*2–4*). Most patients relapse within the first 6–12 months after completion of therapy. In nearly all patients with tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms who were treated with rifamycin-containing regimens using DOT, relapses occur with susceptible organisms (*5,6*). However, in patients who received self-administered therapy or a nonrifamycin regimen and who have a relapse, the risk of acquired drug resistance is substantial. In addition, if initial drug susceptibility testing was not performed and the patient fails or relapses with a rifamycin-containing regimen given by DOT, there is a high likelihood that the organisms were resistant from the outset.

Among patients who received self-administered therapy, the risk of erratic drug administration leading to relapse with resistant organisms is greater. In view of these considerations, the selection of empirical treatment regimens for patients with relapses should be based on the prior treatment scheme. For patients with tuberculosis that was caused by drug-susceptible organisms, who were treated by DOT, and who have relapses, retreatment using the standard four-drug initial phase regimen may be appropriate, at least until the results of susceptibility tests are known. For patients who did not receive DOT or are known to have had irregular treatment in the past, it is prudent to infer a higher risk of acquired drug resistance and begin an expanded regimen (see below). The expanded regimen is indicated especially in patients with impaired immunity, limited respiratory reserve, central nervous system involvement, or other life-threatening circumstances, that is, cases in which treatment with an inadequate regimen could have severe consequences.

For the relatively few patients in whom epidemiologic circumstances provide a strong suspicion of exogenous reinfection as the cause of apparent relapse, the choice of a regimen is influenced by the drug susceptibility pattern of the presumed

source case. If the presumed source case is known to have tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms, resumption of a standard four-drug initial phase may be indicated. However, if the likely source case is known to have drug-resistant organisms, an empirically expanded regimen based on the resistance profile of the putative source case may be suitable.

There are no clinical trials to guide the choice of agents to include in expanded empirical regimens for presumed drug resistance; however, expert opinion indicates that such regimens should generally employ INH, RIF, and PZA plus an additional three agents, based on the probability of in vitro susceptibility. Usual agents would include EMB, a fluoroquinolone, and an injectable agent such as SM (if not used previously, and the initial isolate was susceptible) amikacin, kanamycin or capreomycin, with or without other drugs.

9.2. Treatment Failure

Treatment failure is defined as continued or recurrently positive cultures in a patient receiving appropriate chemotherapy. Among patients with drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis, even with extensive lung cavitation, 90–95% will be culture-negative after 3 months of treatment with a regimen that contains INH and RIF. During this time the vast majority of patients show clinical improvement, including defervescence, reduced cough, and weight gain. Thus, patients with persistently positive cultures after 3 months of chemotherapy, with or without on-going symptoms, should be evaluated carefully to attempt to identify the cause of the delayed response. Patients whose sputum cultures remain positive after 4 months of treatment are considered to have failed treatment.

Never Add a Single Drug To a Failing Regimen

Treatment failure is defined by continued or recurrent positive cultures after 4 months of treatment in patients in whom medication ingestion was assured. Patients with treatment failure should be assumed, until proven otherwise, to have drug-resistant organisms and be treated with multiple agents that they have not received before. A single drug should never be added to a failing regimen. So doing risks development of resistance to the new drug, further complicating management.

There are multiple potential reasons for treatment failure. If the patient is not receiving DOT, the most likely explanation for persistently positive cultures is nonadherence to the drug regimen. Among patients receiving DOT, cryptic nonadherence (spitting out or deliberately regurgitating pills) or failure of the health care system to reliably deliver the drugs may be the cause. Other potential reasons include unrecognized drug resistance (Was initial drug-susceptibility testing done? Was it reported accurately?), malabsorption (prior resectional surgery of the stomach or small intestine, taking tuberculosis medication with antacids or other drugs/substances that might bind or interfere with drug absorption (see Section 6.1: Drug Administration, and Section 7.1: Interactions Affecting Antituberculosis Drugs), or simply an extreme biologic variation (For unclear reasons, rare "normal" patients may experience very protracted disease including persistently positive cultures or prolonged symptoms in the face of chemotherapy that would be expected to be effective). Laboratory error should also be considered as a possible reason for a positive culture in a patient who is doing well. Recent reports document cross contamination or mislabeling of specimens as a source for some of these unexpectedly positive cultures (*7,8*).

Clinicians should be alert, as well, to the possibility of transient clinical or radiographic worsening (paradoxical reactions), despite appropriate therapy that would eventually result in cure. Examples of this include ongoing inflammation at sites of lymphadenitis, worsened abnormalities on chest radiographs after several months of treatment, or the new appearance of pleural effusions during therapy for pulmonary tuberculosis (*9–11*). Such paradoxical worsening during treatment occurs more commonly but not exclusively in persons with HIV infection (*12–14*) (see Section 8.1: HIV Infection).

For patients who meet criteria for treatment failure, the possible reasons listed above should be addressed promptly. If clinicians are not familiar with the management of drug-resistant tuberculosis, prompt referral to, or consultation with a specialty center is indicated. If treatment failure is presumed to be due to drug resistance and the patient does not have severe tuberculosis, one may either initiate an empirical retreatment regimen or wait for drug susceptibility results from a recent isolate. If the patient is seriously ill or has a positive sputum AFB smear, an empirical regimen that would be anticipated to be effective should be started immediately and continued until susceptibility tests are available to guide therapy. For patients who have failed treatment, mycobacterial isolates should be sent promptly to a reference laboratory for susceptibility testing for both first- and second-line drugs.

A fundamental principle in managing patients who have failed treatment is that a single new drug should never be added to a failing regimen; so doing may lead to acquired resistance to the added drug. In such cases, it is generally prudent to add at least three new drugs to which susceptibility could logically

be inferred to lessen the probability of further acquired resistance. As noted previously there are no clinical trials to guide the choice of an empirical regimen; however, expert opinion indicates that empirical retreatment regimens might include a fluoroquinolone such as levofloxacin, an injectable agent such as SM (if not used previously and the isolate was susceptible initially), amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin, and an oral agent such as PAS, cycloserine, or ethionamide (Rating AIII). When drug susceptibility results are available, the regimen should be adjusted according to the results.

9.3. Management of Tuberculosis Caused by Drug-Resistant Organisms

Tubercle bacilli are continually undergoing spontaneous mutations that create resistance to individual antituberculosis drugs. However, the frequency of these single mutations is sufficiently low that with appropriate combination chemotherapy that is reliably ingested, clinically significant resistance will not develop (see Section 4.1: Combination Chemotherapy) (*15*). Most commonly the development of acquired drug resistance occurs when there is a large bacillary population, such as in pulmonary cavities, when an inadequate drug regimen is prescribed (inappropriate drugs, insufficient dosage) or when there is a combined failure of both the patient and the provider to ensure that an adequate regimen is taken (*16*). Rarely, malabsorption of one or more antituberculosis drugs may account for acquired resistance. Drug resistance is much more likely to occur in cavitary pulmonary tuberculosis because of the immense number of rapidly multiplying bacilli in the cavity(ies) (*17*). During extended or repeated treatment, resistance to multiple agents may evolve. Patients with acquired drug resistance may transmit their strains to others who, if they develop tuberculosis, will have primary drug resistance.

Request Consultation

Treatment of tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms should be done by or in close consultation with an expert in the management of these difficult situations. Second-line regimens often represent the patient's last best hope for being cured. Inappropriate management can, thus, have life-threatening consequences.

Drug resistance in a patient with newly diagnosed tuberculosis may be suspected on the basis of historical (previous treatment) or epidemiologic information (contact with a known drug-resistant case or coming from a region in which drug resistance is common) (*18,19*). In such situations it is prudent to employ an empirically expanded regimen, as described previously, especially if the patient is seriously ill (Table 16). Drug resistance can be proven only by drug-susceptibility testing performed in a competent laboratory (Table17). The steps taken when resistance is shown to be present are of critical importance. Patients harboring strains of *M. tuberculosis* resistant to both INH and RIF (MDR) are at high risk for treatment failure and further acquired resistance; they must be referred immediately to a specialist or consultation obtained from specialized treatment centers. Patients with strains resistant to RIF alone have a better prognosis than MDR cases, but also are at increased risk for failure and additional resistance. Thus, their management should also be subject to special scrutiny.

Definitive randomized or controlled studies have not been performed among patients with the various patterns of drug resistance. In the absence of ideal evidence, practices in the treatment of patients are based on a mixture of general principles, extrapolations and expert opinion. The WHO and IUATLD have formulated standard algorithmic regimens for the management of treatment failure or chronic cases, largely based on the principles listed below, as well as on expert opinion (*20,21*). This approach is best suited to regions without in vitro susceptibility testing capacity and access to the full array of retreatment medications, but it is not appropriate for industrialized nations with more ample resources (*22,23*).

Guidelines for management of patients with tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms are based on the following guidelines, all of which are rated A III:

- A single new drug should never be added to a failing regimen.
- When initiating or revising therapy, always attempt to employ at least three previously unused drugs to which there is in vitro susceptibility. One of these should be an injectable agent.
- Do not limit the regimen to three agents if other previously unused drugs that are likely to be active are available. In patients with MDR organisms in whom there is resistance to first-line agents in addition to INH and RIF, regimens employing four to six medications appear to be associated with better results (*24–26*).
- Patients should receive either hospital-based or domiciliary DOT. The implications of treatment failure and further acquired resistance are such that these cases should receive highest priority for DOT.
- Intermittent therapy should not be used in treating tuberculosis caused by drug-resistant organisms, except perhaps for injectable agents after an initial period (usually 2–3 months) of daily therapy.

TABLE 16. Potential regimens for the management of patients with drug-resistant pulmonary tuberculosis

Pattern of drug resistance	Suggested regimen	Duration of treatment (mo)	Comments
INH (± SM)	RIF, PZA, EMB (an FQN may strengthen the regimen for patients with extensive disease)	6	In BMRC trials, 6-mo regimens have yielded ≥95% success rates despite resistance to INH if four drugs were used in the initial phase and RIF plus EMB or SM was used throughout.* Additional studies suggested that results were best if PZA was also used throughout the 6 mo (Rating BII).† Fluoroquinolones were not employed in BMRC studies, but may strengthen the regimen for patients with more extensive disease (Rating BIII). INH should be stopped in cases of INH resistance (see text for additional discussion).
INH and RIF (± SM)	FQN, PZA, EMB, IA, ± alternative agent	18–24	In such cases, extended treatment is needed to lessen the risk of relapse. In cases with extensive disease, the use of an additional agent (alternative agents) may be prudent to lessen the risk of failure and additional acquired drug resistance. Resectional surgery may be appropriate (see text).
INH, RIF (± SM), and EMB or PZA	FQN (EMB or PZA if active), IA, and two alternative agents	24	Use the first-line agents to which there is susceptibility. Add two or more alternative agents in case of extensive disease. Surgery should be considered (see text).
RIF	INH, EMB, FQN, supplemented with PZA for the first 2 months (an IA may be included for the first 2–3 months for patients with extensive disease)	12–18	Daily and three times weekly regimens of INH, PZA, and SM given for 9 mo were effective in a BMRC trial‡ (Rating BI). However, extended use of an injectable agent may not be feasible. It is not known if EMB would be as effective as SM in these regimens. An all-oral regimen for 12–18 mo should be effective (Rating BIII). But for more extensive disease and/or to shorten duration (e.g., to 12 months), an injectable agent may be added in the initial 2 mo of therapy (Rating BIII).

Definition of abbreviations: BMRC = British Medical Research Council; EMB = ethambutol; FQN = fluoroquinolone; IA = injectable agent; INH = isoniazid; PZA = pyrazinamide; RIF = rifampin; SM = streptomycin.
FQN = Fluoroquinolone; most experience involves ofloxacin, levofloxacin, or ciprofloxacin.
IA = Injectable agent; may include aminoglycosides (streptomycin, amikacin, or kanamycin) or the polypeptide capreomycin.
Alternative agents = Ethionamide, cycloserine, *p*-aminosalicylic acid, clarithromycin, amoxicillin-clavulanate, linezolid.
* **Source:** Mitchison DA, Nunn AJ. Influence of initial drug resistance on the response to short-course chemotherapy of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:423–430.
† **Source:** Hong Kong Chest Service, British Medical Research Council. Five-year follow-up of a controlled trial of five 6 month regimens of chemotherapy for tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1339–1342.
‡ **Source:** Hong Kong Chest Service, British Medical Research Council. Controlled trial of 6-month and 9-month regimens of daily and intermittent streptomycin plus isoniazid plus pyrazinamide for pulmonary tuberculosis in Hong Kong. Am Rev Respir Dis 1977;115:727–735.

- The use of drugs to which there is demonstrated in vitro resistance is not encouraged because there is little or no efficacy of these drugs (assuming the test results are accurate), and usually, alternative medications are available. However, the clinical significance and effectiveness of the use of INH in the setting of low-level INH resistance is unclear (see Section 9.5). It should be noted that the use of INH was associated with better survival rates in patients with the strain-W variety of MDR *M. tuberculosis* that was susceptible to higher concentrations of INH (*27*).
- Resistance to RIF is associated in nearly all instances with cross-resistance to rifabutin and rifapentine (*28*). Rare strains with RIF resistance retain susceptibility to rifabutin; this is associated with uncommon mutations of the RNA-polymerase locus in the bacillus (*29*). However, unless in vitro susceptibility to rifabutin is demonstrated, this agent should not be employed in cases with RIF resistance. Cross-resistance between RIF and rifapentine appears almost universal (*28*).
- There is no cross-resistance between SM and the other injectable agents: amikacin, kanamycin, and capreomycin (although resistance to all may occur as independent events); however, cross-resistance between amikacin and kanamycin is universal (*24*). Simultaneous use of two injectable agents is not recommended due to the absence of proof of efficacy and potential amplification of drug toxicity.
- Determination of resistance to PZA is technically problematic and, thus, is not made in many laboratories. However, resistance to PZA is uncommon in the absence of resistance to other first-line drugs (*30*). If monoresistance to PZA is observed, consideration must be given to the possibility that the etiologic agent is *M. bovis*, not *M. tuberculosis* (*M. bovis* is genotypically resistant to PZA

TABLE 17. Recommended drug concentrations* for susceptibility testing

Drug	Proportion method		Broth-based systems			
	7H10 Agar	7H11 Agar	Radiometric (BACTEC)	ESP Myco	MGIT	BacT/ALERT MB†
First-line drugs						
Isoniazid	0.2‡	0.2‡	0.1‡	0.1‡	0.1	0.09
Isoniazid (high)	1.0	1.0	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4
Rifampin§	1.0‡	1.0	2.0‡	1.0‡	1.0	0.9
Ethambutol	5.0‡	7.5	2.5‡	5.0‡	5.0	2.3
Pyrazinamide	NR	NR	100.0‡	—	100.0	200.0
Second-line drugs						
Streptomycin	2.0‡	2.0	2.0‡	—	1.0	0.9
Streptomycin (high)	10.0	10.0	6.0	—	4.0	—
Ethambutol (high)¶	10.0	10.0	7.5	—	7.5	—
Capreomycin	10.0	10.0				
Ethionamide	5.0	10.0				
Kanamycin#	5.0	6.0				
Ofloxacin	2.0	2.0				
p-Aminosalicylic acid	2.0	8.0				
Rifabutin**	0.5	0.5				

Definition of abbreviations: ESP Myco = ESP (Extra Sensing Power) Culture System II; BacT/ALERT MB = BacT/ALERT MB susceptibility kit; MGIT = mycobacterial growth indicator tube; NR = not recommended.

Source: Adapted from Woods GL. Susceptibility testing for mycobacteria. Clin Infect Dis 2000;31:1209–1215; National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS). Susceptibility testing of mycobacteria, *Nocardia*, and other aerobic actinomycetes, 2nd edition. Tentative standard M24-T2. Wayne, PA: National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards; 2000. Available at http://www.nccls.org/microbiology.htm

* Concentration in micrograms per milliliter.
† BacT/ALERT MB is not currently FDA approved for susceptibility tests.
‡ Critical concentration of the drug in this medium.
§ Rifampin is the class agent for rifapentene.
¶ Isolates of *M. tuberculosis* that are resistant to rifampin or resistant to any two primary drugs should be tested for susceptibility to the secondary drugs. In addition, the NCCLS recommends a higher concentration of ethambutol (i.e., 10 mg/ml in both 7H10 and 7H11 agar) should be tested.
# Kanamycin is the class agent for amikacin.
** Some investigators also test a higher concentration (usually 1.0 or 2.0 mg/ml) of rifabutin.

and is not distinguished from *M. tuberculosis* by nucleic acid hybridization–probe assays that are commonly used for identification).

Table 16 contains regimens suggested for use in patients with various patterns of drug-resistant tuberculosis.

9.4. Role of Surgery in MDR Tuberculosis

The role of resectional surgery in the management of patients with extensive pulmonary MDR tuberculosis has not been established in randomized studies. In one series, patients with severe drug resistance (on average, having resistance to more than 5 drugs) appeared to benefit from the resection of cavitary or badly damaged lung tissue when compared with historical controls (*31*). In contrast, other clinicians have reported patients with drug resistance having similar cure rates without surgery (*25,32*). The disparity in these reports may be due to long-standing disease with extensive fibrosis in the former group. If surgery is to be done, it should be performed by an experienced surgeon after the patient has received several months of intensive chemotherapy. Even with successful resection, 12–24 additional months of chemotherapy, using drugs to which there is demonstrated susceptibility, should be given.

References

1. van Rie A, Warren R, Richardson M, Victor TC, Gie RP, Enarson DA, Beyers N, van Helden PD. Exogenous reinfection as a cause of recurrent tuberculosis after curative treatment. N Engl J Med 1999;341:1174–1179.
2. Catanzaro A, Horsburgh R. TBTC Study 22: risk factors for relapse with once-weekly isoniazid/rifapentine (HP) in HIV-negative TB patients. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:A252.
3. Tam CM, Chan SL, Kam KM, Goodall RL, Mitchison DA. Rifapentine and isoniazid in the continuation phase of treating pulmonary tuberculosis: final report. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 2002;6:3–10.
4. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Five-year follow-up of a controlled trial of five 6-month regimens of chemotherapy for tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1339–1342.
5. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical research Council. Controlled trial of 2,4, and 6-months of pyrazinamide in 6-month, three-times weekly regimens for smear-positive pulmonary tuberculosis, including an assessment of a combined preparation of isoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide: results at 30 months. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:700–706.
6. Mitchison DA. Role of individual drugs in the chemotherapy of tuberculosis. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 2000;4:796–806.
7. Burman WJ, Stone BL, Reves RR, Wilson ML, Yang Z, El-Hajj H, Bates JH, Cave MD. The incidence of false-positive cultures for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1997;155:321–326.
8. Braden CR, Templeton GL, Stead WW, Bates JH, Cave MD, Valway SE. Retrospective detection of laboratory cross-contamination of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* cultures with use of DNA fingerprint analysis. Clin Infect Dis 1997;24:35–40.

9. Carter JE, Mates S. Sudden enlargement of a deep cervical lymph node during and after treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Chest 1994;106:1896–1898.
10. Onwubalili JK, Scott GM, Smith H. Acute respiratory distress related to chemotherapy of advanced pulmonary tuberculosis: a study of two cases and review of the literature. Q J Med 1986;230:599–610.
11. Matthay RA, Neff TA, Iseman MD. Tuberculous pleural effusions developing during chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1974;109:469–472.
12. Narita M, Ashkin D, Hollender ES, Pitchenik AE. Paradoxical worsening of tuberculosis following antiretroviral therapy in patients with AIDS. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1998;158:157–161.
13. Crump JA, Tyrer MJ, Lloyd-Owen SJ, Han LY, Lipman MC, Johnson MA. Miliary tuberculosis with paradoxical expansion of intracranial tuberculomas complicating human immunodeficiency virus infection in a patient receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy. Clin Infect Dis 1998;26:1008–1009.
14. Wendel KA, Alwood KS, Gachuhi R, Chaisson RE, Bishai WR, Sterling TR. Paradoxical worsening of tuberculosis in HIV-infected persons. Chest 2001;120:193–197.
15. David HL, Newman CM. Some observations on the genetics of isoniazid resistance in the tubercle bacilli. Am Rev Respir Dis 1971;104:508–515.
16. Mahmoudi A, Iseman MD. Pitfalls in the care of patients with tuberculosis: common errors and their association with the acquisition of drug resistance. JAMA 1993;270:65–68.
17. Canetti G. The J. Burns Amberson Lecture: present aspects of bacterial resistance in tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1965;92:687–703.
18. Espinal MA, Laszlo A, Simonsen L, Boulahbal F, Kim SJ, Reniero A, et al. Global trends in resistance to antituberculosis drugs. World Health Organization-International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease Working Group on Anti-Tuberculosis Drug Resistance Surveillance. N Engl J Med 2001;344:1294–1303.
19. Dye C, Espinal MA, Watt CJ, Mbiaga C, Williams BG. Worldwide incidence of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. J Infect Dis 2002;185:1197–1202.
20. World Health Organization. Treatment of tuberculosis: guidelines for national programmes. Geneva: World Health Organization; 1996. WHO/TB/96.199. Available at http://www.who.int/gtb/publications.
21. Enarson DA, Rieder HL, Arnadottir T, Trébucq A. Management of tuberculosis: a guide for low income countries. International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. 5th edition. 2000. Available at http://www.iuatld.org/assets/images/Management-of-TB.
22. Espinal MA, Kim SJ, Suarez PG, Kam KM, Khomenko AG, Migliori GB, Baez J, Kochi A, Dye C, Raviglione MC. Standard short-course chemotherapy for drug-resistant tuberculosis: treatment outcome in six countries. JAMA 2000;283:2537–2545.
23. García-García M, Ponce-de-León A, Jiménez-Corona ME, Jiménez-Corona A, Palacios-Martinez M, Balandrano-Campos S, et al. Clinical consequences and transmissibility of drug-resistant tuberculosis in southern Mexico. Arch Intern Med 2000;160:630–636.
24. Goble M, Iseman MD, Madsen LA, Waite D, Ackerson L, Horsburgh CR Jr. Treatment of 171 patients with pulmonary tuberculosis resistant to isoniazid and rifampin. N Engl J Med 1993;328:527–532.
25. Park SK, Kim CT, Song SD. Outcome of chemotherapy in 107 patients with pulmonary tuberculosis resistant to isoniazid and rifampin. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1998;2:877–884.
26. Geerligs WA, van Altena R, de Lange WCM, van Soolingen D, van der Werf TS. Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis: long-term treatment outcome in the Netherlands. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 2000;4:758–764.
27. Frieden TR, Sherman LF, Maw KL, Fujiwara PI, Crawford JT, Nivin B, et al. A multi-institutional outbreak of highly drug-resistant tuberculosis: epidemiology and clinical outcomes. JAMA 1996;276:1229–1235.
28. Moghazeh SL, Pan X, Arain T, Stover CK, Musser JM, Kreiswirth BN. Comparative antimicrobial activities of rifampin, rifapentine, and KRM-1648 against a collection of rifampin-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates with known rpoB mutations. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1996;40:2655–2657.
29. Bodmer T, Zürcher G, Imboden I, Telenti A. Molecular basis of rifabutin susceptibility in rifampicin-resistant *M. tuberculosis.* J Antimicrob Chemother 1995;35:345–348.
30. Moore M, Onorato IM, McCray E, Castro KG. Trends in drug-resistant tuberculosis in the United States, 1993–1996. JAMA 1997;278:833–837.
31. Pomerantz BJ, Cleveland JC Jr, Olson HK, Pomerantz M. Pulmonary resection for multi-drug resistant tuberculosis. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 2001;121:448–453.
32. Farmer PE, Bayona J, Shin S, Becerra M, et al. Preliminary results of community-based MDRTB treatment in Lima, Peru. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1998;2(11 Suppl. 2):S371.

9.5 Laboratory Considerations in Determining Drug Resistance

Susceptibility testing of *M. tuberculosis* is critical for appropriate patient management and should be performed on an initial isolate from all patients from whom *M. tuberculosis* is recovered (*1*). Public health laboratories routinely will perform susceptibility testing on initial isolates but, often, private laboratories do not perform such testing unless specifically requested to do so by the physician. As noted previously, susceptibility testing should be repeated if the patient still has a positive culture result after 3 months of therapy or again develops positive cultures after a period of negative cultures (*2*). Antimicrobial susceptibility testing should be performed using a standard methodology, such as that recommended by the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (*3*). The second edition of a tentative standard (M24-T2) for sus-

Obtaining Drug Susceptibility Tests

Drug susceptibility testing for INH, RIF and EMB should be performed on an initial isolate of *M. tuberculosis* from all patients. Susceptibility testing for first-line and second line drugs should be performed for all patients with possible treatment failure or relapse. Most public health laboratories will perform initial susceptibility tests without a specific request, but this may not be true for private laboratories. Testing for susceptibility to the second-line drugs should be performed only in reference laboratories.

ceptibility testing of mycobacteria was published by the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards in 2000 (*3*).

Susceptibility of *M. tuberculosis* is determined by evaluating the ability of an isolate to grow on agar or in broth containing a single "critical" concentration of a drug (*2*). The agar proportion method has been proposed as the reference method for all antituberculosis drugs except pyrazinamide, in which case the BACTEC broth-based methodology is the reference method (*3*). With the agar proportion method, resistance is defined as growth on the drug-containing plate that is more than 1% of the growth on the non–drug-containing plate (*4*). Because the agar method requires up to 6 weeks to yield results, it is recommended that initial susceptibility testing of *M. tuberculosis* isolates to first-line antituberculosis drugs be performed using more rapid broth-based methods (e.g., BACTEC and others). The goal, as stated by CDC, is to have culture and susceptibility results (to first-line drugs) available within 28 days of receipt of a clinical specimen (*5*). The critical concentrations recommended by the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards for agar proportion method and "equivalent" concentrations for broth-based testing methods are shown in Table 17 (*2,3*).

The National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards recommends that susceptibility testing be performed for INH (two concentrations) and RIF and EMB (one concentration each) using a broth-based method on all initial *M. tuberculosis* isolates. Pyrazinamide testing may be done if there is a sufficiently high prevalence of PZA resistance. It is also recommended that the full panel of drugs (including second-line drugs) be tested when there is resistance to RIF alone or to two or more drugs. Testing of second-line drugs is performed using the agar proportion method, generally by public health laboratories. Secondary antituberculous drugs used for testing are capreomycin, ethionamide, kanamycin (which also predicts amikacin susceptibility), ofloxacin (used to assess fluoroquinolone activity), PAS, rifabutin, and SM (*3*). For second-line drug testing, a second concentration of EMB is also recommended. Susceptibility testing for cycloserine is not recommended because of the technical problems associated with the test.

References

1. American Thoracic Society and CDC. Diagnostic standards and classification of tuberculosis in adults and children. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:1376–1395.
2. Woods GL. Susceptibility testing for mycobacteria. Clin Infect Dis 2000;31:1209–1215.
3. National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS). Susceptibility testing of mycobacteria, *Nocardia*, and other aerobic actinomycetes. 2nd ed. Tentative standard M24–T2. Wayne, PA: National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards; 2000. Available at http://www.nccls.org/microbiology.htm.
4. Kent PT, Kubica GP. Antituberculosis chemotherapy and drug susceptibility testing. In: Kent PT, Kubica GP. Public health mycobacteriology: a guide for the level III laboratory. Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control; 1985:159–184.
5. Tenover FC, Crawford JT, Huebner RE, Geiter LJ, Horsburgh CR Jr, Good RC. The resurgence of tuberculosis: is your laboratory ready? J Clin Microbiol 1993;31:767–770.

10. Treatment Of Tuberculosis in Low-Income Countries: Recommendations and Guidelines of the WHO and the IUATLD

This brief summary of the differences between the recommendations for treatment of tuberculosis in high-income, low-incidence countries and low-income, high incidence countries is presented to provide an international context for the ATS/CDC/IDSA guidelines. As tuberculosis in low-incidence countries, such as the United States, becomes more and more a reflection of the situation in high-incidence countries, it is important that health care providers in low-incidence countries have an understanding of the differences in the approaches used and the reasons for these differences so as to be better equipped to treat the increasing proportion of patients from high-incidence countries (*1*). As noted at the outset of this document, the ATS/CDC/IDSA recommendations cannot be assumed to be applicable under all epidemiologic and economic circumstances. The incidence of tuberculosis and the resources with which to confront it to an important extent determine the approaches used.

A number of differences exist between these new ATS/CDC/IDSA recommendations, and the current tuberculosis treatment recommendations of WHO (*2*) and IUATLD (*3*), the two major sets of international guidelines. Rather than being recommendations per se, the IUATLD document presents a distillation of IUATLD practice, validated in the field. The WHO and the IUATLD documents target, in general, countries in which mycobacterial culture and susceptibility testing and radiographic examinations are not widely available. These organizations recommend a tuberculosis control strategy called "DOTS" (Directly Observed Treatment, Short-Course) in which direct observation of therapy ("DOT" in the current statement) is only one of five key elements (*4*). The boxed insert lists the elements of DOTS strategy.

Selected important differences among the recommendations are summarized below. Some of the differences arise from variations in strategies, based on availability of resources, whereas others, such as the use of twice weekly regimens, arise from different interpretations of common elements, for example, whether DOT is used throughout the entire course of therapy or is limited to the initial phase.

10.1. Microbiological Tests for Diagnosis and Evaluation of Response

The WHO and the IUATLD recommend diagnosis and classification of cases and assessment of response based on sputum AFB smears. The AFB smear is emphasized because access to reliable culture facilities is limited in many countries. In addition, the AFB smear identifies patients who are most likely to transmit the organism. Susceptibility testing for new patients is not recommended because of cost, limited applicability and lack of facilities. However, susceptibility testing is recommended by the WHO for patients who fail (sputum smear–positive in month 5 of treatment or later during the course of treatment) the initial treatment regimen, and for those who fail a supervised retreatment regimen. Regarding follow-up, it is recommended by the WHO and the IUATLD that patients who have initial positive smears have repeat smears examined at 2 months, 5 months, and at completion of treatment (either 6 or 8 months). The IUATLD recommends that for patients who have positive smears at 2 months, the initial phase should be extended for 1 month.

Five Components of the DOTS Strategy

- Government commitment to sustained TB control activities.
- Case detection by sputum smear microscopy among symptomatic patients self-reporting to health services.
- Standardized treatment regimen of 6–8 months for at least all confirmed sputum smear positive cases, with directly observed treatment (DOT) for at least the initial 2 months.
- A regular, uninterrupted supply of all essential antituberculosis drugs.
- A standardized recording and reporting system that allows assessment of treatment results for each patient and of the TB control program overall.

10.2. Use of Chest Radiographs in Diagnosis and Follow-Up of Patients Being Treated

In many parts of the world radiographs are not readily available. Moreover, because the highest priority for treatment is the highly infectious sputum smear–positive patient, there is concern that treatment based on radiographic findings alone is an inefficient use of resources. Thus, chest radiography is recommended by both the WHO and the IUATLD only for patients with negative sputum smears and is not recommended at all for follow-up.

10.3. Initial Treatment Regimens

The WHO recommends a single initial phase of daily INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB (or SM) for 2 months followed by a continuation phase of either daily or three times a week INH and RIF, all given by DOT, for 4 months or daily INH and EMB for 6 months (self-administered). The WHO specifically discourages programs from using twice weekly regimens, the reason being that there is a lesser margin of safety if a dose or doses are missed.

The IUATLD recommends a 2-month initial phase of INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB given by DOT, followed by a 6-month continuation phase of daily INH and thiacetazone, self-administered. For patients with HIV infection the IUATLD recommends EMB in place of thiaocetazone. The IUATLD also recommends a 12-month regimen with a 2-month initial phase of INH, SM, and thioacetazone given daily and a 10-month continuation phase of daily INH and thioacetazone. This regimen is intended to be used for patients who have negative smears or when the 8-month regimen is not available.

The rationale for the 8-month regimen recommendation is that it is felt that RIF should always be given by DOT; yet, many programs cannot afford to provide the supervision required by DOT for the full 6 months of treatment. The 8-month regimen is less efficacious in patients with drug-susceptible tuberculosis, but use of this regimen will likely preserve RIF for use in retreatment regimens. In addition to the issue of supervision, the 8-month regimen's continuation phase of INH and EMB costs about 27% less than a 4-month continuation phase of daily INH and RIF.

10.4. Approach to Previously Treated Patients

The WHO and the IUATLD recommend a standardized regimen for patients who have relapsed, had interrupted treatment, or have failed treatment. (The approach to this last group of patients is currently under discussion at the WHO.) The regimen consists of an initial phase of INH, RIF, PZA, EMB, and SM given daily for 2 months and then 1 month of daily INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB. The continuation phase consists of 5 months of daily INH, RIF, and EMB.

Patients who have failed supervised retreatment are considered "chronic" cases and are highly likely to have tuberculosis caused by MDR organisms. Susceptibility testing and a tailored regimen using second-line drugs based on the test results are recommended by the WHO, if testing and second-line drugs are available (*5*). The IUATLD recommendations do not address the issue.

The issue of chronic cases is an area of considerable controversy (*6*). In countries with sufficient resources, such as the

United States, individualized retreatment regimens, based on drug susceptibility patterns, as described in Section 9, Management of Relapse, Treatment Failure, and Drug Resistance, are recommended. However, in countries without the capacity to obtain susceptibility tests, individualized regimens cannot be prescribed. Nevertheless, at least one group has demonstrated that in a high-incidence, low-income country (Peru) treatment with individualized regimens is feasible and effective (*7*).

10.5. Monitoring of Outcomes of Therapy

Both the WHO and the IUATLD recommend a formal system for monitoring outcomes of treatment that classifies all cases into one of six categories (cured, completed without proof of cure, failed, died, defaulted, or transferred out). The assessment of cure is based on clinical response and on sputum AFB smear (or culture when available) at completion of treatment. The analysis of these outcomes is by temporal cohorts and enables identification of programmatic shortcomings.

10.6. Recommended Doses of Antituberculosis Drugs

The WHO recommends 10 mg/kg as the dose for three times weekly INH, whereas the ATS/CDC/IDSA recommend 15 mg/kg (Table 3). There is no difference in the daily doses recommended for adults (5 mg/kg per day to a maximum of 300 mg/day), but the ATS/CDC/IDSA recommend a higher dose for children (10–15 mg/kg per day), based primarily on the expert opinion of pediatricians. The IUATLD recommendations are based on the number of pills required for three weight ranges resulting in a dose of about 5 mg/kg up to 300 mg/day.

The clinical trials of the BMRC that established the efficacy of three times weekly regimens all used an INH dose of 15 mg/kg. The 10-mg/kg INH dose for thrice-weekly regimens was extrapolated by the WHO and the IUATLD (with assistance from global experts), and was chosen to maintain the weekly amount of INH approximately equal to that of the daily or twice weekly regimens.

10.7. Drugs/Preparations Not Available in the United States

Thioacetazone, which formerly was commonly used, is still available in most parts of the world, but is used less frequently. However, thioacetazone remains listed as an "essential" first-line drug by the WHO and is a component of the recommended IUATLD first-line regimen. Combination preparations not available in the United States but listed by the WHO include the following: INH (150 mg) and EMB (400 mg); INH (100 mg) and thioacetazone (50 mg); and INH (75 mg), RIF (150 mg), PZA (400 mg), and EMB (275 mg). The IUATLD recommends using only combination preparations of INH and RIF or INH and thiacetazone.

10.8. Treating Pregnant Women

Both the WHO and the IUATLD include PZA in the regimen for treating pregnant women, in the absence of data indicating that there are adverse consequences.

10.9. Management of Common Adverse Reactions

Neither baseline nor follow-up testing is recommended by the WHO and the IUATLD. It is recommended that patients be taught to recognize the symptoms associated with drug toxicity and to report them promptly.

References

1. CDC. Reported tuberculosis in the United States, 2001. Atlanta, GA: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC; 2002. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/nchstp/tb/.
2. World Health Organization. Treatment of tuberculosis: guidelines for national programmes, 2nd edition. WHO/TB/97.220. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 1997.
3. International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. Management of tuberculosis: a guide for low income countries, 5th edition. 2000. Available at http://www.iuatld.org/pdf/en/guides_publications/management_of_tb.pdf
4. World Health Organization. What is DOTS? A guide to understanding the WHO-recommended TB control strategy known as DOTS. WHO/CDS/CPC/TB/99.270. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 1999. Available at http://www.who.int/gtb/dots.
5. World Health Organization. An Expanded DOTS framework for effective tuberculosis control. WHO/CDS/TB/2002.297. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2002. Available at http://www.who.int/gtb/dots.
6. Farmer P. DOTS and DOTS-plus: not the only answer. Ann N Y Acad Sci 2001;953:165–84.
7. Mitnick C, Bayona J, Palacios E, Shin S, Furin J, Alcantara F, Sanchez E, Barria M, Becerra M, Fawzi MC, Kapiga S, Neuberg D, Maguire JH, Kim JY, Farmer P. Community-based therapy for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis in Lima, Peru. N Engl J Med 2003;348:119–128.

11. Research Agenda for Tuberculosis Treatment

11.1. New Antituberculosis Drugs

New antituberculosis drugs are needed for three reasons: to shorten or otherwise simplify treatment of tuberculosis caused by drug-susceptible organisms, to improve the treatment of patients with MDR tuberculosis, and to provide more effective and efficient treatment of latent tuberculosis infection (LTBI) (*1*). Although treatment regimens for drug-susceptible tuberculosis are effective, they must be administered for a minimum of 6 months to achieve optimal results.

Nonadherence to this relatively lengthy course of treatment remains a major problem. To address the problem of nonadherence, DOT (as a component of the DOTS strategy) is recommended as a standard of care worldwide. However, the administrative and financial burden of providing DOT for all patients is considerable. Thus, new drugs that would permit significant shortening of treatment are urgently needed, as are drugs that could enable effective treatment to be given at dosing intervals of 1 week or more.

Rates of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis are alarmingly high in several countries (*2*), and even in countries, such as the United States, where the rates are low and decreasing, the occasional case presents an often extremely difficult treatment problem (see Section 9: Management of Relapse, Treatment Failure, and Drug Resistance). Current treatment regimens for drug-resistant tuberculosis utilize drugs that are less effective, more toxic, and more expensive than those used for standard treatment. Moreover, these treatment regimens often have to be given for 18–24 months. Although new drugs that are effective against resistant organisms would alone not solve the problem of drug resistance, their judicious use would greatly improve the treatment for many patients.

Finally, the United States and several other low-incidence countries have embarked on plans to eliminate tuberculosis. An important component of an elimination strategy is the identification and treatment of persons with LTBI who are at high risk of developing tuberculosis (*3*). In the United States the most commonly used LTBI treatment regimen is INH given for 9 months; however, poor adherence to this regimen imposes a major limitation on its effectiveness. A shorter LTBI treatment regimen with RIF and PZA appears to be effective, but reports have indicated that toxicity may be unacceptably high (*4*). Thus, new drugs to provide for safe and effective "short-course" LTBI treatment are a major need.

No truly novel compounds that are likely to have a significant impact on tuberculosis treatment are presently available for clinical study. However, further work to optimize the effectiveness of once weekly rifapentine regimens and investigate the role of newer fluoroquinolones in the treatment of drug-susceptible tuberculosis is warranted. As noted above, once weekly rifapentine–INH is recommended only in the continuation phase for HIV-negative patients with noncavitary pulmonary tuberculosis who have negative sputum smears at completion of 2 months of treatment. Two approaches to improve intermittent rifapentine regimens have been suggested by experimental studies: increasing the rifapentine dosage (*5*), and adding moxifloxacin as a companion drug to provide better protection against the development of drug resistance and enhance the sterilizing activity of the regimen (*6*). Other data from a clinical trial of ofloxacin suggest that fluoroquinolones have the potential to significantly shorten treatment (*7*). Of the newer fluoroquinolones with more potent activity against *M. tuberculosis*, moxifloxacin appears to be the most promising.

Other compounds that might become available for clinical evaluation in the future include the nitroimidazopyrans that are chemically related to metronidazole, for which activity against dormant *M. tuberculosis* has been suggested; oxazolidinones such as linezolid; and drugs that target isocitrate lyase, an enzyme that may be necessary for the establishment of latent tuberculosis infection (*8*). The nitroimidazopyran compound PA-824 has bactericidal activity comparable to that of INH and appears to act as well on bacilli maintained in an anaerobic environment (*9*). However, additional preclinical evaluation of PA-824 is needed before clinical studies could begin. Although linezolid, a drug that is marketed for the treatment of selected acute bacterial infections, does have demonstrated activity against *M. tuberculosis*, other compounds in that class may be more suited for the treatment of tuberculosis (*10*).

11.2. Other Interventions To Improve the Efficacy of Treatment

A number of other approaches have been suggested that might lead to improved treatment outcome, including alternative drug delivery systems and a variety of methods of immunomodulation and immunotherapy. Experimental studies have demonstrated that effective serum concentrations of INH and PZA can be provided through incorporation of drug into slow-release, biodegradable polymers that are implanted subcutaneously (*11*). However, there has been little apparent commercial interest in pursuing this approach. Liposomal encapsulation of antituberculosis drugs has been suggested as an approach to direct drug to the proposed site of infection (i.e., the macrophage) providing for more effective and better tolerated therapy, as well as for more widely spaced treatment. Similarly, incorporation of drug into inhalable microparticles may reduce dose requirements, minimize toxicity, and deliver drug to infected alveolar macrophages. Although experimental studies have suggested that these approaches might be effective, little clinical work has been done in these areas (*11,12*).

Because of possible detrimental effects of the cytokine, tumor necrosis factor-α, in HIV-associated tuberculosis, there has been some interest in the use of drugs, such as thalidomide and pentoxifylline, that block tumor necrosis factor-α production. Studies have shown that administration of thalidomide improves weight gain in both HIV-positive and HIV-negative tuberculosis patients (*13*). Pentoxifylline has been associated with reductions in circulating HIV viral load in

patients with tuberculosis (*14*). However, the potential side effects of these drugs may outweigh possible benefits. A more promising intervention is the administration of "protective" cytokines, such as aerosolized interferon-γ and subcutaneous interleukin-2, that have shown activity as adjuncts to chemotherapy in patients with multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (*15,16*). Another method of immunomodulation, the use of heat-killed preparations of *M. vaccae* as a therapeutic vaccine, has not shown clinically significant benefits when carefully evaluated in randomized clinical trials (*17*). Nonetheless, there continues to be interest in this approach, especially for patients with advanced drug-resistant tuberculosis. Other vaccines that have been shown to lead to expression of protective cytokines have shown more promise in experimental studies (*18*). Finally, a study suggested that the administration of Vitamin A and zinc to patients with pulmonary tuberculosis is associated with an increased rate of sputum conversion and improvement in chest radiographs (*19*). Further assessment of nutritional supplements in tuberculosis treatment may be indicated.

11.2.1. Better methods to identify and manage high- and low-risk patients

As noted above, sputum culture positivity at 2 months appears to be a marker for an increased risk of relapse for patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. Surrogate markers that could be measured earlier in therapy and have a greater sensitivity and specificity for a poor outcome could better select high risk patients for more intensive or longer therapy, thus minimizing the likelihood of relapse. Studies of several molecular markers in the sputum have shown promise and deserve further evaluation (*20*). Conversely, markers that reliably identify patients at lower risk of an adverse treatment outcome would be helpful to select patients for less intense or shorter treatment. Whether or not low-risk patients can be treated with shorter regimens using currently available drugs is a topic of considerable importance.

11.2.2. Health services research to facilitate treatment administration and improve treatment outcome

Although DOT (as a component of DOTS) is widely advocated as a universal standard of care for tuberculosis treatment, many tuberculosis control programs do not have the resources to provide DOT for all patients. Moreover, some programs have achieved excellent results by targeting DOT to patients known or suspected of being at increased risk for nonadherence. Further evaluation of alternatives to universal DOT is needed.

Finally, although limited work has been done in the area of behavioral studies of tuberculosis patients and providers, an ambitious research agenda established in the mid-1990s has not been implemented and should be revisited (21).

References

1. O'Brien RJ, Nunn PP. The need for new drugs against tuberculosis: obstacles, opportunities, and next steps. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2001;163:1055–1058.
2. Espinal MA, Laszlo A, Simonsen L, Boulahbal F, Kim SJ, Reniero A, Hoffner S, Rieder HL, Binkin N, Dye C, Williams R, Raviglione MC. Global trends in resistance to antituberculosis drugs. World Health Organization-International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease Working Group on Anti-Tuberculosis Drug Resistance Surveillance. N Engl J Med 2001;344:1294–303.
3. American Thoracic Society, CDC. Targeted tuberculin testing and treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:S221–S247. Available at http://www.cdc.gov.nchstp.tb/
4. CDC. Update: fatal and severe liver injuries associated with rifampin and pyrazinamide for latent tuberculosis infection, and revisions in American Thoracic Society/CDC recommendations. MMWR 2001; 50:733–735.
5. Daniel N, Lounis N, Ji B, O'Brien RJ, Vernon A, Geiter LJ, Szpytma M, Truffot-Pernot C, Hejblum G, Grosset J. Antituberculosis activity of once-weekly rifapentine-containing regimens in mice: long-term effectiveness with 6- and 8-month treatment regimens. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000;161:1572–1577.
6. Lounis N, Bentoucha A, Truffot-Pernot C, Ji B, O'Brien RJ, Vernon A, Roscigno G, Grosset J. Effectiveness of once-weekly rifapentine and moxifloxacin regimens against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in mice. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2001;45:3482–3486.
7. Tuberculosis Research Centre. Shortening short course chemotherapy: a randomised clinical trial for the treatment of smear positive pulmonary tuberculosis with regimens using ofloxacin in the intensive phase. Indian J Tuber 2002;49:27–38.
8. McKinney JD, Honer zu Bentrup K, Munoz-Elias EJ, Miczak A, Chen B, Chan WT, Swenson D, Sacchettini JC, Jacobs WR Jr, Russell DG. Persistence of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in macrophages and mice requires the glyoxylate shunt enzyme isocitrate lyase. Nature 2000;406:683–685.
9. Stover CK, Warrener P, VanDevanter DR, Sherman DR, Arain TM, Langhorne MH, et al. A small-molecule nitroimidazopyran drug candidate for the treatment of tuberculosis. Nature 2000;405:962–966.
10. Cynamon MH, Klemens SP, Sharpe CA, Chase S. Activities of several novel oxazolidinones against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in a murine model. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1999;43:1189–1191.
11. Gangadharam PR, Geeta N, Hsu YY, Wise DL. Chemotherapy of tuberculosis in mice using single implants of isoniazid and pyrazinamide. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis 1999;3:515–520.
12. Sharma R, Saxena D, Dwivedi AK, Misra A. Inhalable microparticles containing drug combinations to target alveolar macrophages for treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Pharm Res 2001;18:1405–1410.
13. Tramontana JM, Utaipat U, Molloy A, Akarasewi P, Burroughs M, Makonkawkeyoon S, Johnson B, Klausner JD, Rom W, Kaplan G. Thalidomide treatment reduces tumor necrosis factor α production and enhances weight gain in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. Mol Med 1995;1:384–397.

14. Wallis RS, Nsubuga P, Whalen C, Mugerwa RD, Okwera A, Oette D, Jackson JB, Johnson JL, Ellner JJ. Pentoxifylline therapy in human immunodeficiency virus-seropositive persons with tuberculosis: a randomized, controlled trial. J Infect Dis 1996;174:727–733.
15. Condos R, Rom WN, Schluger NW. Treatment of multidrug-resistant pulmonary tuberculosis with interferon-γ via aerosol. Lancet 1997;349:1513–1515.
16. Johnson B, Bekker LG, Ress S, Kaplan G. Recombinant interleukin 2 adjunctive therapy in multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Novartis Found Symp 1998;217:99–106.
17. Durban Immunotherapy Trial Group. Immunotherapy with *Mycobacterium vaccae* in patients with newly diagnosed pulmonary tuberculosis: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 1999;354:116–119.
18. Moreira AL, Tsenova L, Murray PJ, Freeman S, Bergtold A, Chiriboga L, Kaplan G. Aerosol infection of mice with recombinant BCG secreting murine IFN-γ partially reconstitutes local protective immunity. Microb Pathog 2000;29:175–185.
19. Karyadi E, West CE, Schultink W, Nelwan RH, Gross R, Amin Z, Dolmans WM, Schlebusch H, van Der Meer JW. A double-blind, placebo-controlled study of vitamin A and zinc supplementation in persons with tuberculosis in Indonesia: effects on clinical response and nutritional status. Am J Clin Nutr 2002;75:720–727.
20. Desjardin LE, Perkins MD, Wolski K, Haun S, Teixeira L, Chen Y, et al. Measurement of sputum *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* messenger RNA as a surrogate for response to chemotherapy. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1999;160:203–210.
21. CDC. Improving tuberculosis treatment and control: an agenda for behavioral, social, and health services research. In: Proceedings of tuberculosis and behavior: national workshop on research for the 21st century, Bethesda, MD, August 28–30, 1994. Atlanta, GA: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC; 1995.

Acknowledgment

The Committee thanks Elisha Malanga of the American Thoracic Society for excellent administrative support. The Committee also thanks the members of an ad hoc review panel convened by the Division of Tuberculosis Elimination, National Center for HIV, STD, and TB Prevention, CDC, for their thorough review and helpful comments. The members of this panel were as follows: Naomi Bock, M.D., James Burns, M.D., Mike Holcombe, M.P.P.A., James Lamberti, M.D., Evelyn Lancaster, R.N., Kathleen Moser, M.D., M.P.H., James McDaniel, M.D., F.A.C.P., Sonal Munsiff, M.D., Margaret Oxtoby, M.D., Carol Pozsik, R.N., M.P.H., Susan Ray, M.D., Jon Tillinghast, M.D., M.P.H., Victor Tomlinson, Jr., M.D., and Charles Wallace, Ph.D.

Joint Committee of the American Thoracic Society (ATS), the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA), and CDC

Membership List*

Co-chairs: Henry M. Blumberg, M.D., IDSA; Philip C. Hopewell, M.D., ATS; Richard J. O'Brien, M.D., CDC.

Members: William J. Burman, M.D.; Richard E. Chaisson, M.D.; Charles L. Daley, M.D.; Wafaa El Sadr, M.D., M.P.H.; Sue C. Etkind, B.S.N., M.S.; Lloyd N. Friedman, M.D.; Paula Fujiwara, M.D., M.P.H.; Malgosia Grzemska, M.D.; Michael D. Iseman, M.D.; Robert M. Jasmer, M.D.; Venkatarama R. Koppaka, M.D., Ph.D.; Richard I. Menzies, M.D.; Randall R. Reves, M.D.; Lee B. Reichman, M.D., M.P.H.; Patricia M. Simone, M.D.; Jeffrey R. Starke, M.D.; Andrew A. Vernon, M.D., M.H.S.

*Charles Peloquin, Pharm.D., also made substantial contributions to the document.